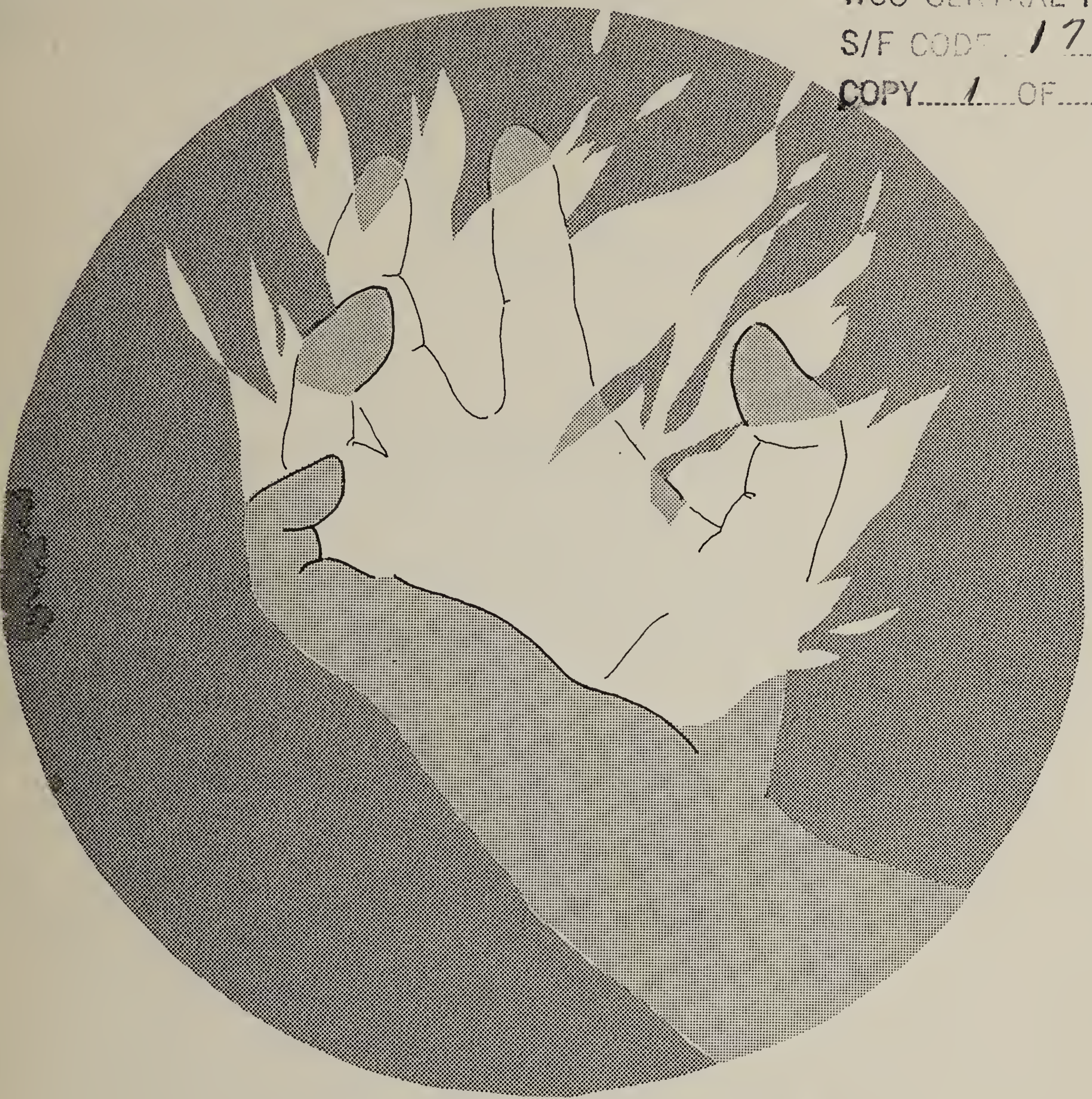
C.F. 1792

BLM LIBRARY
88066861

environmental impact statement
working draft

WSO CENTRAL FILES
S/F CODE 1792
COPY 1 OF 1



fire management program on national resource lands

u s department of the interior
bureau of land management

IN REPLY REFER TO

United States Department of the Interior
BUREAU OF LAND MANAGEMENT
DENVER SERVICE CENTER
DENVER FEDERAL CENTER, BUILDING 50
DENVER, COLORADO 80225

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The Bureau of Land Management wishes to express its appreciation to John McGuire, Chief of the Forest Service and Dr. Edward Komarek, Director, Tall Timbers Research Station for their support and contributions to the compilation of the Fire Management Program EIS.

Acknowledgment is made to many resource and fire managers who have contributed to this work. Others to whom we are particularly indebted are:

Mr. Owen Cramer
Mr. Robert Mutch
Mr. Roger Robinson

CONSERVE
AMERICA'S
ENERGY

Save Energy and You Serve America!

#5160048 ID 88066861

QH
545
.F5
L362
1975
c.2

Table of Contents

PART I
DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSAL

Page

A. Purpose and Scope . . . . I- 1
  1. Introduction . . . . I- 1
  2. Purpose . . . . I- 3
  3. Scope . . . . I- 4
B. Background and History . . . . I- 6
  1. Introduction . . . . I- 6
  2. Fire Problem . . . . I- 7
C. Program Planning and Direction I-12
  1. Decisionmaking Process I-12
  2. Fire Planning System I-13
  3. Authority and Policy Directives I-14
  4. Interrelationships with Other Agency Fire Management Actions or Proposed Actions I-16
D. Description of the Fire Management Program I-18
  1. The Proposed Program I-18
  2. Past Program and Proposal Differences I-19
  3. Fire Management Activities I-21
    a. Presuppression and Prevention I-21
      (1) Prevention I-21
        (a) Hazard Reduction I-21
          Firebreak I-22
          Area Fuel Reduction I-23
        (b) Information and Education I-23
        (c) Investigation I-24
      (2) Planning I-24
      (3) Detection I-24
    b. Suppression I-25
      (1) Fireline Construction I-26
        (a) Fire Retardant Chemicals I-26
        (b) Burnout and Backfire I-26
      (2) Human Presence I-27
        (a) Fire Camps I-27
        (b) Fire Suppression Equipment I-27
        (c) Aircraft I-27
        (d) Fire Crews I-27
    c. Postsuppression I-28
      (1) Suppression Damage I-28
      (2) Burned Areas I-29
    d. Prescribed Fire I-31
E. References I-34

BLM Library
Denver Federal Center
Bldg. 50, OC-521
P.O. Box 25047
Denver, CO 80225

Table of Contents

PART II
DESCRIPTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

Page

A. Introduction . . . . II- 1
B. Environmental Characteristics Common to all Biomes . . . . . . II- 6
  1. Ecological Interrelationships . . . . II- 6
    a. Nutrient Cycle . . . . II- 6
    b. Energy Flow . . . . II- 7
    c. Hydrologic Cycle . . . . II- 7
  2. The Role of Fire in the Environment II-10
    a. Fire as an Influence on the Physical-Chemical Environment II-11
    b. Fire as a Regulator of Dry-Matter Accumulation . . . II-12
    c. Fire as a Controller of Plant Species and Communities II-12
    d. Fire as the Determinant of Wildlife Habitat Patterns, Populations II-13
  3. Climate in Relation to Wildfire Severity II-14
  4. Air Quality as Affected by Fire II-17
C. Description of Individual Biomes II-20
  1. Grassland Biome II-20
    a. Non-Living Components II-26
      (1) Topography II-26
      (2) Soils II-26
      (3) Minerals II-27
      (4) Water II-28
      (5) Climate II-29
    b. Living Components II-33
      (1) Vegetation II-33
      (2) Animals II-35
        (a) Terrestrial Wildlife II-35
        (b) Aquatic Wildlife II-37
        (c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife II-38
        (d) Domestic Livestock II-38
        (e) Wild Horses and Burros II-38
        (f) Human II-39
    c. Ecological Interrelationships II-41
    d. Human Interest Values II-44
      (1) Land Uses II-44
      (2) Aesthetics II-45
      (3) Geological II-46
      (4) Archeological II-47
      (5) Historical II-49
      (6) Cultural II-50
  2. Desert Biome II-51
    a. Non-Living Components II-55
      (1) Topography II-55

Page

(2) Soils . . . . II- 55
(3) Minerals . . . . II- 56
(4) Water . . . . II- 57
(5) Climate . . . . II- 58
b. Living Components . . . . II- 61
(1) Vegetation . . . . II- 61
(2) Animals . . . . II- 62
(a) Terrestrial Wildlife . . . . II- 62
(b) Aquatic Wildlife . . . . II- 64
(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife . . . . II- 64
(d) Domestic Livestock . . . . II- 65
(e) Wild Horses and Burros . . . . II- 66
(f) Human . . . . II- 66
c. Ecological Interrelationships . . . . II- 68
d. Human Interest Values . . . . II- 70
(1) Land Uses . . . . II- 70
(2) Aesthetics . . . . II- 72
(3) Geological . . . . II- 74
(4) Archeological . . . . II- 74
(5) Historical . . . . II- 75
(6) Cultural . . . . II- 76
3. Woodland-Bushland Biome . . . . II- 76
a. Non-Living Components . . . . II- 81
(1) Topography . . . . II- 81
(2) Soils . . . . II- 81
(3) Minerals . . . . II- 81
(4) Water . . . . II- 82
(5) Climate . . . . II- 83
b. Living Components . . . . II- 86
(1) Vegetation . . . . II- 86
(2) Animals . . . . II- 88
(a) Terrestrial Wildlife . . . . II- 88
(b) Aquatic Wildlife . . . . II- 90
(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife . . . . II- 90
(d) Domestic Livestock . . . . II- 90
(e) Wild Horses and Burros . . . . II- 91
(f) Human . . . . II- 91
c. Ecological Interrelationships . . . . II- 92
d. Human Interest Values . . . . II- 94
(1) Land Uses . . . . II- 94
(2) Aesthetics . . . . II- 96
(3) Geological . . . . II- 96
(4) Archeological . . . . II- 97
(5) Historical . . . . II- 97
(6) Cultural . . . . II- 98
4. Coniferous Forest Biome . . . . II- 98
a. Non-Living Components II-104
(1) Topography II-104
(2) Soils II-104

Page

(3) Minerals II-106
(4) Water II-106
(5) Climate II-107
b. Living Components II-113
(1) Vegetation II-113
(2) Animals II-114
(a) Terrestrial Wildlife II-114
(b) Aquatic Wildlife II-118
(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife II-119
(d) Domestic Livestock II-119
(e) Wild Horses and Burros II-119
(f) Human II-120
c. Ecological Interrelationships II-122
d. Human Interest Values II-125
(1) Land Uses II-125
(2) Aesthetics II-127
(3) Geological II-128
(4) Archeological II-128
(5) Historical II-129
(6) Cultural II-131
6. Tundra Biome II-131
a. Non-Living Components II-135
(1) Topography II-135
(2) Soils II-136
(3) Minerals II-136
(4) Water II-137
(5) Climate II-138
b. Living Components II-140
(1) Vegetation II-140
(2) Animals II-142
(a) Terrestrial Wildlife II-142
(b) Aquatic Wildlife II-143
(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife II-144
(d) Domestic Livestock II-144
(e) Wild Horses and Burros II-144
(f) Human II-144
c. Ecological Interrelationships II-145
d. Human Interest Values II-147
(1) Land Use II-147
(2) Aesthetics II-148
(3) Geological II-148
(4) Archeological II-149
(5) Historical II-150
(6) Cultural II-150
D. References II-151

Table of Contents

PART III
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS OF THE FIRE MANAGEMENT PROGRAM

Page

A. Impacts from Presuppression Practices . . . . III- 1
  1. Soil . . . . III- 1
  2. Water . . . . III- 2
  3. Air . . . . III- 2
  4. Vegetation . . . . III- 4
  5. Wildlife . . . . III- 7
    a. Terrestrial . . . . III- 7
    b. Aquatic . . . . III- 8
  6. Domestic Animals . . . . III- 9
  7. Wild Horses and Burros . . . . III- 9
  8. Human Interest Values III-10
    a. Sociological III-10
    b. Cultural Resources III-12
    c. Aesthetics III-14
    d. Other III-17
B. Impacts from Suppression Practices III-18
  1. Soil and Water III-18
  2. Air III-20
  3. Vegetation III-21
    a. Grasslands III-22
    b. Deserts III-22
    c. Woodland-Bushland III-24
      (1) Oak-Chaparral III-24
      (2) Oak-Woodland III-25
      (3) Pinon-Juniper III-25
    d. Conifer Forests III-26
    e. Tundra III-28
  4. Wildlife III-29
    a. Terrestrial III-29
    b. Aquatic III-32
  5. Domestic Animals III-33
  6. Wild Horses and Burros III-34
  7. Human Interest Values III-35
    a. Sociological III-35
    b. Cultural Resources III-36
    c. Aesthetics III-36
C. Impacts from Postsuppression Practices III-38
  1. Soil III-38
  2. Water III-38
  3. Air III-39
  4. Vegetation III-39
  5. Wildlife III-40
    a. Terrestrial III-40
    b. Aquatic III-42

Table of Contents

6. Domestic Animals III-42
7. Wild Horses and Burros III-43
8. Human Interest Values III-44
    a. Sociological III-44
    b. Cultural Resources III-45
    c. Aesthetics III-45

D. Impacts from Prescribed Burning Practices III-46
1. Soil III-46
2. Water III-51
3. Air III-58
4. Vegetation III-59
    a. Introduction III-59
    b. Grasslands III-60
    c. Deserts III-60
    d. Woodland-Bushland III-61
        (1) Chaparral III-61
        (2) Oak-Woodland III-62
        (3) Pinon-Juniper III-63
    e. Conifer Forests III-64
    f. Tundra III-65
5. Wildlife III-66
    a. Terrestrial III-66
    b. Aquatic III-69
6. Domestic Animals III-70
7. Wild Horses and Burros III-72
8. Human Interest Values III-72
    a. Sociological III-72
    b. Cultural Resources III-72
    c. Aesthetics III-73

E. Summary III-75
1. Beneficial III-75
    a. Presuppression-Prevention Practices III-75
    b. Suppression Practices III-75
    c. Postsuppression Practices III-76
    d. Prescribed Burning III-76
2. Adverse III-76
    a. Soil III-76
    b. Water III-77
    c. Air III-77
    d. Vegetation III-77
    e. Wildlife (Including Aquatic) III-77
    f. Livestock, Wild Horses and Burros III-78
    g. Human Interest III-78

F. References III-79

Table of Contents

PART IV
MITIGATING MEASURES INCLUDED IN THE PROPOSED PROGRAM

Page

A. Introduction . . . . IV- 1
B. Soil . . . . IV- 3
   1. Lethal Heating of Organisms . . . . IV- 3
   2. Accelerated Erosion . . . . IV- 3
   3. Increased Compaction and Reduced Wettability and Infiltration . . . . IV- 7
   4. Loss of Organic Matter . . . . IV- 7
C. Water . . . . IV- 9
   1. Increased Stream Temperature, Sedimentation, and Nutrients . . . . IV- 9
   2. Contamination from Retardants, Fertilizers, Pesticides, and Petrochemicals IV-10
   3. Streambed and Streambank Changes IV-11
   4. Increased Runoff and Peak Flow of Streams IV-14
   5. Changes in Salinity IV-14
D. Air IV-15
   1. Reduced Quality Through Increase of Pollutants IV-15
E. Vegetation IV-17
   1. Removal or Damage to Vegetation IV-17
   2. Reduced Site Productivity Due to Mechanical Equipment Activity IV-19
   3. Larger, More Intense Fires Due to Fuel Accumulation IV-19
F. Wildlife IV-20
   1. Loss of Life, and Death or Injury to Aquatic Life Due to Retardant Toxicity IV-20
   2. Destruction or Depreciation of Habitat IV-20
   3. Increased Human Activity IV-22
G. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses, and Burros IV-23
   1. Loss of Forage IV-23
   2. Increased Human Activity IV-24
   3. Damage to Range Facilities IV-24
H. Human Use and Interest Values IV-25
   1. Hazard to Personal Health and Welfare IV-25
   2. Chemical Contamination of Water Supply IV-25
   3. Impaired Visibility Due to Dust and Smoke IV-25
   4. Disturbance of Aesthetic Values IV-26
   5. Loss or Damage to Geological, Archeological, and Historical Features IV-27
   6. Damage to Private Property IV-28
   7. Disrupt Local Life Styles IV-28
   8. Human Presence IV-29

Table of Contents

Page

9. Utilization of Scarce Petroleum Products IV-30
10. Destruction or Damage to Natural Areas of Scientific, Educational, or Wilderness Value IV-30
11. Disruption of Land and Resource Uses IV-30

I. References IV-32

Table of Contents

PART V
ADVERSE EFFECTS WHICH CANNOT BE AVOIDED

Page

A. Soil V-1
B. Water V-2
C. Air V-3
D. Vegetation V-4
E. Wildlife (Including Aquatic), Livestock, Wild Horses and Burros V-5
F. Human Interest V-6
G. Other V-7

Table of Contents

PART VI
SHORT TERM USE VERSUS LONG TERM PRODUCTIVITY

Page

A. Physiolography, Geology, and Minerals VI-2
B. Soils VI-3
C. Water VI-4
D. Air VI-5
E. Vegetation VI-6
F. Wildlife VI-7
G. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses, and Burros VI-8
H. Human Use VI-9

Table of Contents

PART VII
IRREVERSIBLE AND IRRETRIEVABLE COMMITMENTS

Page

A. Ecological Interrelationships VII-1
B. Physiography, Geology, and Minerals VII-2
C. Soils VII-2
D. Water VII-3
E. Air VII-3
F. Vegetation VII-3
G. Wildlife VII-4
H. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses, and Burros VII-4
I. Human Use VII-4

Table of Contents

PART VIII
ALTERNATIVES TO THE PROPOSED ACTION

Page

A. Fire Control Program . . . . VIII- 1
   1. Description . . . . VIII- 1
   2. Environmental Impacts and Effects . . . . VIII- 1
      a. Beneficial . . . . VIII- 6
      b. Adverse . . . . VIII- 7
B. Limited Fire Control Program . . . . VIII- 8
   1. Description . . . . VIII- 8
   2. Environmental Impacts and Effects . . . . VIII- 9
      a. Beneficial VIII-11
      b. Adverse VIII-11

Table of Contents

PART IX
CONSULTATION AND COORDINATION WITH OTHERS

Page

Development of the Draft Environmental Statement IX-1

Coordination in the Review of the Draft Environmental Statement IX-2

Table of Contents

PART X
GLOSSARY

List of Figures

Part II

Page

II- 1 Major Concentrations of National Resource Lands Administered by the Bureau of Land Management . . . . . II- 2

II- 2 Major Concentration of National Resource Lands Administered by the Bureau of Land Management in Alaska . . . . II- 3

II- 3 Biomes of the Western United States . . . . II- 4

II- 4 Biomes of Alaska . . . . II- 5

II- 5 A Schematic Illustration of Pathways of Flow of Energy and Matter through a Terrestrial Ecosystem . . . II- 8

II- 6 Flow Diagram of the Grassland Hydrologic Cycle . . . . . II- 9

II- 7 Duration of Fire Season in Each Fire Weather Region . . . II-16

II- 8 The Grassland Biomes in the Western United States II-21

II- 9 The northern temperate grassland II-22

II-10 The southern temperate grassland II-23

II-11 The Palouse prairie II-24

II-12 The California prairie II-25

II-13 Average January and July precipitation in the grassland biome II-30

II-14 Average daily temperatures in the grassland biome in January and July II-31

II-15 Desert Biome II-52

II-16 The cold desert II-53

II-17 The hot desert II-54

II-18 Average January and July precipitation in the desert biome II-59

II-19 Average daily temperatures in the desert biome in January and July II-60

List of Figures

Page

II-20 Woodland-Bushland Biome . . . . II- 77

II-21 The oak woodland-bushland community . . . . II- 78

II-22 The pinon-juniper community . . . . II- 79

II-23 The broad sclerophyll (oak-chapparal) community . . . . . II- 80

II-24 Average January and July precipitation in woodland-bushland communities . . . . II- 84

II-25 Average daily temperatures in woodland-bushland communities in January and July . . . . II- 85

II-26 Coniferous Biome in the Western United States . . . . . . II- 99

II-27 Coniferous forest biome in Alaska II-100

II-28 The montane coniferous forest II-101

II-29 The northwest coastal coniferous forest II-102

II-30 The taiga coniferous forest II-103

II-31 Average January and July precipitation in the coniferous forest biome--Alaska II-108

II-32 Average daily temperatures in the coniferous forest biome in January and July--Alaska II-109

II-33 Average January and July precipitation in the coniferous forest biome--conterminous United States . . II-111

II-34 Average daily temperatures in the coniferous forest biome in January and July--conterminous United States II-112

II-35 Tundra Biome II-132

II-36 The Arctic Alaska tundra II-133

II-37 The Western Alaska tundra II-134

II-38 Average January and July precipitation in the tundra biome II-139

II-39 Average daily temperatures in the tundra biome in January and July II-141

List of Tables

Page

Part I

I-1 Fire Statistics Covering National Resource Lands (Force Account & Contract) . . . . I- 9

I-2 Fire Statistics--National Resource Lands (Force Account) I-10

I-3 Estimated Resource Loss and Damages (Force Account, BLM) I-11

Part III

III-1 Litter and Soil Temperatures in California Chaparral Types during Burning III-50

VIII-1 Fire Management Program and Alternatives Comparison of Activities and Practices . . . . VIII- 1

Appendices

Page

A Policy Directives A-1

B Classification of Hazard Reduction Practices B-1

C Detection C-1

D Slash Disposal Considerations D-1

E Fireline Equipment E-1

F Fire Rehabilitation (Objectives, Plan Outline, Treatment Practices, and Seeding Standards) F-1

G Prescribed Burning--Guides and Plan G-1

H Model Smoke Management Plan for Prescribed Burning of Forest or Range Residue H-1

I Soil Stability Class I-1

J Soil Classifications J-1

K Description of Characteristic Soil Series in Major Biomes . . . K-1

L Economic Analysis of Costs & Benefits of the Proposal and Two Alternatives L-1

PART I

DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSAL

A. Purpose and Scope

1. Introduction

The Bureau of Land Management (BLM) is responsible for the management and protection of 450 million acres of national resource lands. In this capacity it is responsible for the fire management program which includes: 1) taking all actions necessary to suppress destructive fires and 2) integrating the use of fire as a complementary tool in reaching resource management objectives.

Although fire often has been viewed as a negative and destructive force, increasing recognition is being given to fire's role as an environmental factor contributing to ecosystem diversity over evolutionary periods of time. Thus, the complex question facing land managers is how to combine an understanding of the role of fire in ecosystem development with the demonstrated needs of society for natural resources. Agee (1975) stated that as population grows and the level of developments and social values increase, the proportion of man-caused fires and the probability of damage from uncontrolled man-caused or natural fires increases. This damage can easily run into millions of dollars per year. But a fire program consisting solely of fire suppression has major disadvantages in wildland ecosystems that are often fire-adapted and fire-dependent. Such conditions are often common to the biomes under consideration. Although fire suppression will always be necessary to protect developed areas, cultural improvements and our investments in natural resources for the production of goods and services, its application to entire ecosystems can result in unnatural ecosystem changes and constantly increasing probabilities of catastrophic fires (Agee, 1975).

Also, absolute fire suppression begins to reach a point of diminishing returns. An increasing fire control technology means increasing expenditures to sustain the technology, resulting in temporary "control" of fire on the landscape. But as fuel hazards increase on contiguous acres over time, the probabilities of large, high intensity fires increase. An increasingly sophisticated and more costly technology is then required to handle larger and more devastating fires--and the vicious circle continues.

The answer to the land manager's fire dilemma lies in an integrated fire management program that reduces losses, complements natural resource management objectives, and sustains the productivity of biological systems.

Most Bureau management programs affecting the environment are resource program activities such as forestry, range, wildlife, etc., and are production oriented. The fire management program is an important service or support activity having definite effects upon the individual resources and the environments in which they are managed. It can be considered an insurance program, protecting management's objectives and investments in its various resource activities.

This proposal highlights the change from fire control to fire management. Fire management concerns itself not only with fire suppression but with the actual management of this environmental force. This includes not only suppression of wildfires, but also prescribed (controlled) fire and in some "designated areas," such as in wilderness, allowing naturally caused fires to burn under specific conditions.

The program consists of four integrated activities:

- Presuppression and prevention; includes detection, planning, hazard reduction, prevention information and education, and in the future modification of weather.

- Suppression; all of the activities associated with direct control of a fire.

- Postsuppression; all of the activities associated with rehabilitating resources and facilities destroyed or damaged by fire.

- Prescribed fire; the use of fire to accomplish specific land management objectives under controlled conditions and approved coordinated plans. Prescribed fires can include ignitions by natural causes if other criteria are satisfied.

2. Purpose

The purpose of this EIS is to evaluate the impacts the Bureau's Fire Managment Program will have upon the usefulness, productivity, and ecosystems of the national resource lands managed by the Bureau.

All of these activities have various impacts on the environment. This environmental impact statement has been prepared in compliance with Section 102(2)(c) of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969. Bureau policy also requires an analysis to be made for every BLM action which may affect the quality of the environment.

Since this programmatic statement covers fire management activities on 450 million acres, it does not treat in detail all the environmental impacts from such activities. More detailed environmental assessments may be necessary for specific fire management plans at the local management levels, such as states, districts, and/or other geographic areas.

Objectives of the Fire Management EIS

- Provide a general description of the fire management program, its implementing activities, and an evaluation of its overall environmental impacts.

- Serve as the basis for any subsequent environmental reviews or analyses that may be required for specific fire management actions on a state or project basis.

3. Scope

The proposed program action presented in this EIS includes all fire management activities practiced by the BLM for the purpose of protecting human life and property and for enhancing the environment and productive capacity of national resource lands in meeting resource production goals and other human needs.

This proposal emphasizes the management of fire from the viewpoint of its four major component activities:

- Fire presuppression and prevention practices (measures to minimize occurrence or severity of wildfire).
- Fire suppression practices (the actual control of fire).
- Fire postsuppression practices (measures to alleviate wildfire damages).
- Prescribed burning practices (the actual use of fire as a tool in land and resource management).

These are not four clear-cut activities; rather, in a fire management program they are fused into one comprehensive action to protect, manage and obtain best use of our natural environment.

Form 1542–4
(August 1965)
(formerly 4–1123)

UNITED STATES
DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
BUREAU OF LAND MANAGEMENT

ROUTING AND TRANSMITTAL SLIP

TO				
CODE	NAME	ORGANIZATION	ACTION	ROOM NO.
	T. S.			

Indicate Action by Number

1. Necessary action
2. Approval
3. Signature
4. Prepare reply
5. Your comment and return
6. Note and surname
7. Note and return
8. Your information
9. See me
10.

From P+EC	Date 9/23	Room No.
Office		Phone

Remarks

GPO 852-487

March 3, 1849

United States Department of the Interior

BUREAU OF LAND MANAGEMENT
DENVER SERVICE CENTER
DENVER FEDERAL CENTER, BUILDING 50
DENVER, COLORADO 80225

IN REPLY REFER TO

Enclosed is the Summary Sheet which was inadvertently omitted from the working draft of the Fire Management EIS mailed to you the week of 9/15/75.

CONSERVE
AMERICA'S
ENERGY

Save Energy and You Serve America!

landscape and recreation values; provide temporary stimulus to the local economy; discover archeological and historical sites and features; prevent and/or reduce the risk of disaster wildfires.

B. Highlights of adverse impacts and effects include, hazard to human and animal health and welfare; temporary displacement of animals; damage to property and facilities; remove and/or damage plant cover, soil, water, and air damage or depreciation of habitat; increase levels of human or other activities inimical to orderly land and resource use; damage to geologic, archeologic, historic human values; damage to natural areas, scientific, educational, aesthetic, and wilderness values; disrupt local life style; lose long term life-form and species diversity; increase in wildland fuels; utilize scarce petroleum products. Many of these adverse impacts and effects can be mitigated.

4. Major alternatives considered:

A. Fire Control Program.

B. Limited Fire Control Program.

5. Draft comments will be requested from the following:

Department of Agriculture-
   Forest Service
   Soil Conservation Service
Department of Commerce-
   National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Department of Defence
Environmental Protection Agency
Atomic Energy Commission
Department of the Interior-
   Bureau of Indian Affairs
   U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
   Bureau of Outdoor Recreation
   Bureau of Reclamation
   U.S. Geological Survey
   National Park Service

Many of the fire management practices are being carried out on most of the natural resource lands. Some of the practices are not in effect because of technical, economic, or environmental constraints. In changing concepts from fire control to that of fire management two significant areas require special attention:

- Integrated use of natural and social sciences and environmental design arts.
- Increased use of the interdisciplinary approach.

The statement is limited to actions on NRL in the following states: Alaska, Arizona, California, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, New Mexico, North Dakota, South Dakota, Oregon, Utah, Washington and Wyoming.

B. Background and History

1. Introduction

Fire has been one of the greatest gifts to mankind. It allowed migration from warmer to colder climates. It provided warmth, artificial light and the opportunity to cook food. It transformed man from an individual into an integral part of a community and helped him learn cooperation in a permanent home with organized family life. Mankind came to depend more and more on fire as a device to fabricate the things needed to support life and comfort.

Migrants to Alaska from Asia were already familiar with fire. These early Alaskans knew that certain animals were attracted by new burns. (Slaughter, et al, 1971) Indians at times set fires to drive game to convenient kill sites and they also used fire in fighting enemies.

Early settlers in the eastern U.S. considered the forest as an obstacle to their use of the land. Except for the Great Plains, almost the entire area needed for agricultural settlement had to be hewn from a seemingly never ending forest. Fire was the principal force available to the settlers for freeing the land from forest growth. (Brown and Davis, 1973.) During western settlement, many people were careless with fire or burned the mountains on purpose to make easier access for prospecting.

Though large forest fires occurred before the coming of the white man, their size, intensity and frequency were greatly increased by settlement, mining and logging. Concepts about forests and forest fires naturally developed: the forest's inexhausibility; the sooner the potential agricultural land was cleared the better; forest fires, except as they threatened personal property or specific stands, did not cause important damage (Brown and Davis, 1973).

The history of organized fire management can be divided into three periods: prior to 1910, from 1910 to 1933 and after 1933. The first period marks the growth and application of protection on the national forests where large-scale organized fire control began and much technical development has been centered. The second period saw the protection of privately owned forest land, initially undertaken by the large owners themselves, but later assumed in large degree by state protection services.

The passage of the Taylor Grazing Act in 1934 set the stage for the third period, the protection and management of 450 million acres of unreserved public domain (now national resource lands) located in the western states and the Territory of Alaska. Although this Act did not itself affect Alaska, it was followed in 1939 by the Alaska Fire Control Act. In 1946, the Alaska Fire Control Service, the Grazing Service and the General Land Office, all with responsibilities for this vast acreage were combined and became the Bureau of Land Management will full protection responsibilities.

2. Fire Problem

The Bureau of Land Management is responsible for the protection of 450 million acres of national resource land from wildfire. Through cooperative agreements and contracts with other agencies, both Federal and non-Federal, the Bureau also has an important role in the protection of about 50 million acres under other ownership, including about 16 million acres of private and state-owned lands in Alaska.

There is a definite upward trend in fire occurrence and this trend directly affects the scope and costs of the fire management program. Throughout the national resource lands, there is an increasing demand for recreational access, and former wildlands are being utilized for both residential and commercial purposes. Not only does the increasing population increase the risk of fire but also fires are occurring in areas formerly relatively free from occurrence.

Table I-1 page I-9 indicates fire occurrence on all lands protected by BLM force account or contract programs. Table I-2 page I-10 covers only national resource lands.

Tables I-1 and I-2 provide data on acreages lost and offer 5-year and 10-year running averages to indicate trands. Table I-3 page I-11 indicates relative resource values lost on the national resource lands. Data for all tables are incomplete for 1974.

Changing resource values and required increases in management intensity also mean that even if fire occurrence had not increased the standards of protection would have to be tightened. Wildfire becomes intolerable when resource values and risk are both high.

For example, in some areas today, the very high values placed on watersheds and urban developments of metropolitan areas or the "fronts" behind cities such as Boise and Salt Lake City make fires nearly intolerable and intensive fire control measures are taken. This causes sharp increases in suppression costs.

Table I-1

Fire Statistics Covering National Resource Lands (Force Account & Contract)

STATE	10 YEAR AVERAGE			5 YEAR AVERAGE			1973			1974			NYFP LEVEL [1/]		AVERAGE ANNUAL COST		
	No. Fires		Acres Burned	No. Fires		Acres Burned	No. Fires		Acres Burned	No. Fires		Acres Burned	No. Fires	Acres Burned	$000 10 Yr.	$000 5 Yr.	$000 74 EST.
	Lgtn.	M/C		Lgtn.	M/C		Lgtn.	M/C		Lgtn.	M/C						
ALASKA	187	82	829,089	261	50	535,499	118	73	37,476	384	485	662,960	218	108,624	10,001	15,551	14,096
ARIZONA	37	35	4,455	61	65	4,754	119	83	3,933	81	53	9,420	26	7,953	186	290	540
CALIFORNIA	54	53	11,425	66	59	17,672	65	35	37,012	90	126	18,035	209	9,172	1,649	2,436	2,528
COLORADO	100	23	2,323	152	28	4,088	83	22	1,317	217	56	11,035	90	3,603	312	491	527
IDAHO	65	114	84,886	135	75	134,727	108	56	169,147	51	290	125,670	238	7,761	1,344	1,869	2,875
MONTANA	57	16	16,181	58	17	24,128	75	19	55,979	63	22	2,254	93	4,219	606	793	1,055
NEVADA	177	131	39,261	202	65	69,924	253	118	78,464	210	324	151,746	262	33,114	1,103	1,152	2,269
NEW MEXICO	18	10	8,349	21	12	12,395	8	8	218	35	24	42,865	23	8,589	188	279	124
OREGON	208	83	37,945	216	76	60,577	180	135	98,682	274	93	39,566	367	8,222	2,618	3,796	3,404
UTAH	87	39	7,912	120	53	13,734	93	45	1,893	142	118	31,737	88	14,586	297	442	628
WYOMING	24	18	1,297	33	20	1,562	30	11	2,350	53	40	6,064	39	9,535	187	262	254
TOTAL	1,014	604	1,043,123	1,325	520	879,060	1,132	605	486,471	1,600	1,631	1,101,352					
GRAND TOTAL	1,618		1,043,123	1,845		879,060	1,737		486,471	3,231		1,101,352	1,653	215,378	18,491	27,361	28,300

[1/] Normal Year Fire Plan protection standards.

Table I-2

Fire Statistics Covering National Resource Lands (Force Account)*

YEAR	LIGHTNING		MAN-CAUSED		TOTAL		5 YEAR AVERAGE		10 YEAR AVERAGE	
	No. Fires	Acreage	No. Fires	Acreage	No. Fires	Acreage	No. Fires	Acreage	No. Fires	Acreage
1960					1,377	320,952				
1961					988	141,934				
1962	377	94,366	333	39,005	710	133,371	1,119	427,832		
1963	525	146,987	276	44,538	801	191,525	1,096	353,808		
1964	508	194,355	527	88,397	1,035	282,752	972	213,907		
1965	330	30,384	369	12,662	699	43,046	836	158,327		
1966	697	836,041	252	52,200	949	888,241	841	307,588		
1967	621	114,751	208	21,372	829	136,123	864	308,137		
1968	858	967,309	269	21,571	1,127	988,880	930	467,808		
1969	617	2,670,967	329	1,324,860	946	3,995,827	910	1,210,423		
1970	940	156,516	320	32,851	1,260	189,367	1,022	1,239,688		
1971	985	1,207,992	478	214,855	1,463	1,422,847	1,125	1,346,609	971	603,413
1972	1,537	904,736	389	78,017	1,926	982,753	1,344	1,515,935	994	712,223
1973	1,106	389,578	554	93,584	1,660	483,162	1,451	1,414,791	1,042	818,321
1974	1,600**		1,631**			1,101,352**				

* Only national resource lands are included; no contract suppression included even if on BLM land.

** 1974 records not yet complete; these tentative data included for information only.

Table I-3

Estimated Resource Loss and Damages (Force Account, BLM) [1]

Year	Public Land Acreage Burned	Loss and Damages[2]
1962	133,371	$ 1,427,500
1963	190,525	2,287,600
1964	282,752	2,644,100
1965	43,046	286,000
1966	888,241	8,867,100
1967	673,900	1,130,700
1968	988,880	6,048,300
1969	3,995,837	61,026,900
1970	188,996	625,300
1971	1,422,847	249,321
1972	1,007,266	17,554,100
1973	483,162	12,050,000
1974	1,101,352[3]	--

[1] Only Force Account (FA) activity--not including contract--on National Resource lands.

[2] Estimated resource losses or damages are merely relative since flat rates per acre are used rather than real, but unknown, losses (e.g., $5 per acre for some wildlife losses).

[3] 1974 data incomplete.

C. Program Planning and Direction

The multiple demands placed upon public land and resources by a public with wide ranging interests makes the determination of "public interest" a complex process.

1. Decisionmaking Process

In 1964, BLM started developing a planning process to better determine which land use, or combination of land uses, should take place on an area. After a period of design and testing, the BLM planning system was adopted and implementation started in July, 1969. This system is presently used to develop and maintain land use plans which consider all of the various resource uses for all national resource lands.

The BLM planning system is similar to traditional planning approaches. It includes such usual components as goals, objectives, inventory of physical resources, socio-economic data, and public participation. However, it differs in several ways. It has techniques requiring the description and comparison of "trade-off," and what is gained or lost when decisions are made to accept various alternatives. Another major departure from traditional planning philosophy is the concept and requirement of assessing the single-use potentials of each physical resource.

In brief, the system works as follows. The first step in the procedure is to delineate the BLM-administered land into geographical areas called planning units. These units serve as the basis for collection and analysis of basic resource inventory data. In some cases, the planning units are combined into planning areas for purposes of preparing the Management Framework Plan (MFP). Under the BLM system the MFP is the land use plan. Unit Resource Analyses (URA) are prepared for each planning unit. The URA includes a detailed description of the existing environment of the planning unit, a physical inventory of individual resources (lands, minerals, livestock forage, forestry, recreation, wildlife, watershed), and an analysis of the resource production opportunities without multiple-use consideration.

After URA's are completed, an MFP is prepared for a planning area. This area may cover one or more planning units. Basically, the MFP is the result of a process designed to identify and reconcile major land and resource use conflicts. The MFP provides a set of goals, objectives, and constraints for a specific planning area to guide the development of detailed plans for the management of each resource. It is prepared using an interdisciplinary approach at the field level by BLM employees. Coordination with a variety of groups and interests is obtained in an organized public participation process.

By July, 1976, it is estimated that MFP's will be completed on 80 percent of the NRL and by 1980 all NRL will be covered by MFP's.

2. Fire Planning System

A major criticism of BLM's past fire control activities was the inability to show the integrated and economic relationships between wildfire suppression and natural resources. To overcome this BLM undertook a detailed four-year analysis of all the national resource lands. Every primary resource in each management unit, including the land and airspace, was studied; management objectives for each resource defined; the resources weighed against each other; and overall compatible (usually compromise) management objectives established. Protection standards were then established for each management unit which would insure these resources would not be lost or the objective adversely affected.

The plan is a reflection of various combinations of firefighting resources and methods to achieve optimum relationship between values at risk, fire control costs and protection standards. Each field office (some 60) having fire management responsibility prepared a plan for its area. Duplication of fire management planning between areas was eliminated by overview of the state offices and the Boise Interagency Fire Center. Present contract areas were also evaluated using fire plan guidelines to determine feasibility of continuing the contract and to develop rationale for contract costing and supervision.

3. Authority and Policy Directives

BLM's authority to administer the fire management program on national resource lands is as follows:

- Protection Act of September 20, 1922, (42 Stat. 857; 16 U.S.C. 594)
- Economy Act of June 30, 1932, (47 Stat. 417; 31 U.S.C. 686)
- Taylor Grazing Act of June 28, 1934, (48 Stat. 1269; 43 U.S.C. 315)
- O. and C. Act of August 28, 1937, (50 Stat. 875; 43 U.S.C. 1181e)
- Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955, (69 Stat. 66; 42 U.S.C. 1856a)
- Public Land Administration Act of July 14, 1960, (74 Stat. 506; 43 U.S.C. 1361)
- Disaster Relief Act of December 31, 1970, (84 Stat. 1747, 1751; 42 U.S.C. 4413, 4435)

Policy directives (contained in Appendix A) for the fire management program are as follows:

- Departmental Manual, Part 590 DM 1, Wildland Fire Control and Management, Release No. 1694, dated November 1, 1974.

- Bureau of Land Management Instruction Memorandum No. 75-247, May 29, 1975. Fire Management Policy.

- BLM Manual 1603.121, Fire Protection Program Activity Policy Statement, Release No. 1-835, February 12, 1973.

- BLM Manual 9210.01 and .02, Fire Control, Release No. 9-63, May 16, 1969.

- BLM Instruction Memorandum No. 75-247, Fire Management Policy, dated May 29, 1975.

4. Interrelationships with Other Agency Fire Management Actions or Proposed Actions

There are various levels of coordination, cooperation, and interrelationship in existence among the BLM and other Federal, state, municipal and private agencies.

Following are the various types of fire management interrelationships at the various levels that are in existence:

- Interior Fire Coordination Committee. The Interior Fire Coordination Committee operates under the direction of the Assistant Secretary--Land and Water Resources--for the U.S. Department of the Interior. It provides leadership and advice for the development, coordination and maintenance of superior wildland fire presuppression and suppression capabilities, and the standardization of procedures, methods, and practices within the Department of the Interior.

- Suppression Actions. The Bureau of Land Management is directed to arrange for the expeditious dispatching of available firefighting support when requested to assist in fire emergencies on other agencies' lands. There will be no interbureau billing or reimbursement for such emergency support services.

- Cooperative Agreements. Where the heads of the BLM consider formal cooperation necessary and desirable, agreements are encouraged with other Federal, state, or local government agencies and with privately organized agencies or associations. In addition to the formal cooperation outlined, informal cooperation brought about by sound public relations in the vicinity of natural resource lands under the Bureau's jurisdiction is important and necessary.

- Emergency Assistance. According to the Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955, emergency assistance in the absence of a formal cooperative agreement may be provided to properties immediately adjacent to national resource lands under the Bureau's jurisdiction where fire control facilities are maintained.

According to the Disaster Relief Act of December 31, 1970, the BLM may provide emergency assistance to any state or local government for suppression of fire officially declared as threatening destruction amounting to a major disaster.

- Research. Under the Protection Act of May 22, 1928, as amended, the Secretary of Agriculture is authorized and directed to conduct investigations and experiments for the purpose of determining the best methods of protecting timber and other forest growth from fire and other harmful agents. The BLM requests specific research needs from the Forest Service and the research is conducted by various experiment stations and equipment development centers.

D. Description of the Fire Management Program

1. The Proposed Program

This proposal shifts the emphasis of BLM's protection program from fire control only to that of integrated fire management on 450 million acres of national resource lands (NRL) in the western United States and Alaska. This is in accord with similar shift of emphasis by the Department of the Interior on November 1, 1974. The program benefits and requirements are briefly discussed below.

The program will: (a) help BLM to better achieve, retain or enhance its resource management objectives; (b) relate most fire management practices to environmental and economic consideration; (c) assure minimal or acceptable adverse environmental impacts due to fire; (d) attempt where beneficial and practicable to restore in whole or in part former natural ecosystem development through use of fire; and (e) relate the fire management restoration effort to the values at risk.

The proposed program requirements in terms of funding, manpower, equipment and facilities will not be significantly different from the present program level and the approved Normal Year Fire Plan. A detailed breakdown of the organizational plan, cost estimates, and fire load may be obtained by reviewing the BLM's Departmentally approved Normal Fire Year Plan. It may be obtained at the Department of the Interior library or the BLM library, Washington, D. C. The fire management program is funded through regular appropriated funds for the presuppression activity, and emergency appropriated funds for the emergency presuppression, suppression, and postsuppression activities. The prescribed fire activity involves both regular and emergency appropriations. Hazard reduction would be funded from regular and/or emergency presuppression appropriations; prescribed fires for resource management would be financed from regularly appropriated resource management funds. The fire manager develops a program on the basis of need, but the program that is implemented is based on the manpower, funds, and other resources that are approved in the operating budget.

The proposed Fire Management Program consists of an organization of 280 permanent and 1,398 temporary personnel. Within this 14 state area are 78 fire management locations utilizing 219 ground tankers, 44 contract aircraft, and other related facilities, equipment, and supplies. The proposed program base is the updated normal fire year plan. The plan is currently being updated to reflect environmental, economic, management, technological, and similar changes.

Suppression costs of the Proposal will be no greater and, in fact, will be less in "designated areas". Prescription fires to fulfill resource management objectives may cost less than conventional methods presently being used. Prescribed fire shall be selected only when it will be the most suitable alternative to other methods of achieving objectives.

Fully implemented this proposal is practical in application, feasible in cost, and reflective of optimum mix of management objectives and tolerable environmental impacts.

2. Past Program and Proposal Differences

Continued in the proposal is the strong fire prevention detection and initial attack capability of the past program. However, subsequent suppression action--as to kind, intensity, and urgency--will be directly related to the resource values at risk, including the land itself. These values have been determined in the preparation of the Normal Fire Year Plan for each land management unit. Two practices characterize the proposal and further differentiate the two programs:

- Prescribed Fire

These are management's means of modifying an ecosystem over varying size, but specific, areas to achieve specific resource objectives. These are predicated on stated intensities of burning; it follows then that unless a fire in a prescription area is of proper intensity and character it must be suppressed. The quantity, kind, and extent of prescription burns are entirely up to management's ability to perform them. It is an ecologically acceptable and beneficial management practice when properly executed, for it weighs environmental impacts against objectives and is used only when "trade-offs" show net benefits.

- Designated Areas

These are delineated areas in which managers may alter the suppression objectives where the difficulty of controlling fires is extremely high and where the values threatened do not warrant the expenses associated with the usual initial attack procedures (containment during the first burning period).

In the past, managers took action with adequate forces to contain all fires during the first burning period.

The "designated area" burn differs from the past practices in that there is specific intent by management to alter suppression objectives in certain areas after prior consideration of resource economic and environmental factors.

3. Fire Management Activities

The fire management's program activities are integrated and highly specialized. In this program they are divided into four activities: presuppression and prevention, suppression, postsuppression, and prescribed fire.

a. Presuppression and Prevention

This activity is accomplished in advance of fire occurrence to assure more effective fire suppression and to reduce the number of man-caused fires. The activity includes various types and levels of planning; detection; recruitment and training of personnel; procurement and maintenance of equipment and supplies; fire hazard reduction; education; law enforcement; and the creating, maintaining, and improving of fire breaks.

(1) Prevention

A fire prevented does not have to be suppressed and does no damage. Fire prevention can be accomplished either by removing the fuel that could ignite or by removing the ignition source. Fire prevention plans are prepared at the area level, and consolidated at the district and state levels. These plans are updated annually and accomplishment reports are submitted annually

(a) Hazard Reduction

The direct prevention of fires through hazard reduction means removal of fuels exposed to sources of high risk. This is well illustrated by the cleared and burned railroad right-of-way and by the developed campground where all dead fuels have been removed.

Beyond the concept of mere prevention of ignitions is the expanded theory of preventing or liminting the spread of fire following ignition or preventing the rapid buildup of heat energy. In a practical sense, the objective becomes prevention of large or uncontrollable fires (conflagrations) rather than simply a reduction in the total number of fires (Brown and Davis, 1973). In the future the use of weather modification techniques will have an application in hazard reduction.

Firebreak

A firebreak is a natural or constructed barrier exposing mineral soil utilized to stop or check fires or to provide a control line from which to work. It is distinguished from the fire line by being constructed in anticipation of future fires.

Methods of constructing and maintaining firebreaks may be classified as mechanical, chemical, vegetative and burning. They may be employed singly or in combination.

- Mechanical. Most firebreaks are constructed by mechanical means employing common land clearing equipment, usually power-operated. Where topography and cover permit, fire plows are most commonly used. (Brown and Davis. 1973).

- Chemical. Herbicides for both herbaceous and woody plants are extensively used in right-of-way maintenance by railroads, highway departments, power companies and on firebreaks as well. Chemicals employed to keep firebreaks free of flammable vegetation are of two general types: (a) the inorganic poisons which kill all vegetation and sterilize the soil for a certain period and (b) the toxic organic compounds, usually of hormone derivation, which are more selective in their lethal effects and more temporary since they oxidize without leaving any poisonous residue in the soil (Brown and Davis, 1973).

- Vegetative. Lush ground vegetation is an excellent firebreak cover as long as it remains green (Brown and Davis, 1973).

- Burning. The burning of protective strips is a common practice. Farmers, railroad companies, highway departments, and others frequently burn out roadsides and rights-of-way to remove fuel accumulations and to encourage growth of green vegetation (Brown and Davis, 1973).

Area Fuel Reduction

The purpose of area fuel reduction treatment is to reduce fuel hazards over a given area to facilitate control. Area treatments can achieve several objectives either singly or in combination.

- Slash Disposal. Fire hazard on an area increases greatly following timber cutting primarily because a large volume of the finer and potentially flammable fuels from the tree crowns called slash lose most of their moisture and are concentrated on the ground surface.

- Broadcast Burning of Natural Fuels. Broadcast burning of forest and rangelands, called light burning, has been and is being done for a number of purposes and is a common practice in certain areas.

(b) Information and Education

A good I & E program is one of the keys to an effective prevention program. The basic principles of this program are gaining attention and recognition through repetition, continuity, and accuracy. To inform the public of the prevention program, all communication techniques available must be utilized, such as campaigns, television, radio, newspapers, signs and posters, personal contact, and fire prevention awards.

(c) Investigation

All wildland fires are investigated as soon as possible after detection to determine cause and possible trespass occurrence. In determining fire origin, burning pattern indicators are used. Intensive analysis of the origin is necessary to determine what prevention and/or other action should be taken.

(2) Planning

The BLM Normal Year Fire Plan was prepared and this plan determined the fire management program level necessary to meet protection standards in a normal fire year. The Normal Year Fire Plan development was previously discussed under Part IC2, Fire Planning.

One of the presuppression requirements preparatory to fire suppression is the planning and development of a pre-attack program. The objectives of pre-attack planning are to anticipate and take actions that will enable Bureau personnel to make effective initial attack on fires. The functional requirements of fire management are considered before planning total preparedness efforts with the primary functional requirements being safety, organization and management, communication, fire weather, detection, dispatching, facilities and vehicles, supplies, and equipment.

(3) Detection

Despite prevention programs wildfires do occur and the promptness of their detection is the key to early suppression.

An organized detection program has two objectives: (a) discover and report every wildfire in time to control it at a small size with available initial attack forces and (b) locate the fire accurately so forces can immediately be dispatched by the most direct route.

Aerial detection provides more uniform, more flexible, but less continuous coverage. A stationary lookout provides limited area observation, but more continuous coverage. Although emphasis may be placed upon a particular detection source(s), provisions are made for all other possible alternate sources. The detection program in BLM is carried out by all detection methods in various combinations and quantities.

Refer to Appendices B, C, and D for a more detailed discussion of the presuppression and prevention practices.

b. Suppression

This activity is concerned with fire extinguishment. It starts with the discovery of a wildfire and continues until the fire is out.

It includes the practice of fireline construction with power equipment (plows, bulldozers, trenchers, and pumpers), handtools, and fire retardant chemicals; burning out and backfiring; establishing and operating fire camps; and the management of men, equipment, and aircraft.

Each wildfire that breaks out has certain characteristics all of its own. Any fire is capable of defeating every known method of control and it may only yield to certain techniques of fire suppression. Its behavior varies according to fuels, topography, weather, and other factors of the environment. Consequently, no two fire suppression jobs are exactly alike and how to control a fire cannot be specifically detailed in advance. All fire fighting is basic to certain principles and is carried out using methods developed through experience and research.

(1) Fireline Construction

The aim of all fire suppression is to either remove the fuels, reduce the temperature of the fuels or exclude oxygen. The most common method used is the removal of fuels by creating a fireline void of fuels around the fire. A fireline is constructed by using power equipment, hand tools or fire retardant chemicals.

(a) Fire Retardant Chemicals

The chemical means of inhibiting combustion or of retarding or extinguishing of a fire or portion of a fire has been used since the 1950s, for example:

- Wetting Agents--A wetting agent is a chemical that reduces the surface tension of water, causing it to penetrate more readily into fuels.
- Viscous Agents--Viscous agents significantly increase the surface tension of water; a firm gel for coating the fuel can be created depending upon quantity of agent added.
- Flame-inhibiting Chemicals--Of the many chemicals that have some flame-inhibiting characteristics, diammonium phosphates and diammonium sulfate have been found to be the most effective. The BLM uses products containing these two agents.

(b) Burnout and Backfire

Any unburned fuel between the fireline and the fire must be burned by either backfire or burnout. The success or failure of all indirect methods of fire attack is dependent upon the unburned fuels inside the line. The purpose of burning out or backfiring is to create an effective firebreak between a wildfire and unburned fuels.

(2) Human Presence

The fire suppression effort brings people into the fire area, and the resultant impact will depend upon the size and location of the fire to be suppressed.

(a) Fire Camps

The size, location and number of fire camps will depend on fire size and required control time. These can vary from a single two-man camp to many camps containing several thousand men, associated equipment, and supplies. Special provisions are necessary for feeding, sleeping, and provisioning crews.

(b) Fire Suppression Equipment

The size, location, type, and quantity of various suppression equipment will vary according to fire size and location.

(c) Aircraft

The use of aircraft in the fire suppression program for various support and tactical assignments is typical of fire activities today. Aircraft are classified by type and use and include helicopters as well as fixed-wing.

(d) Fire Crews

Fire crews are used to build fire lines to contain and control the fire, to burn out or backfire, and to mop up the fire.

Wildfire has many and varied impacts on the ecosystem, both adverse and beneficial. In most instances, the actual practices used in suppressing wildfires do adversely affect the environment but can be largely mitigated through proper and timely presuppression and postsuppression practices. The residual adverse impacts of suppression, however, are indeed minor when compared to the adverse effects of the fire that would have occurred had not suppression action been taken. Thus, properly executed fire control efforts reflect a net favorable impact on the ecosystem when compared with the avoided adverse effects of an uncontrolled fire.

Refer to Appendix E for a more detailed discussion of fire equipment used in suppression practices.

c. Postsuppression

These activities are concerned with restoring natural resources or facilities destroyed or damaged by fire or suppression activities. It includes the rehabilitation of burned areas through protection and management of remnant plants; replacement of destroyed vegetation through the seeding and/or planting of native and exotic plants; protection and management fences; watershed tillage and water control practices; and salvage logging.

To describe the postsuppression program, its objectives, practices, and techniques, two categories of rehabilitation must be considered: rehabilitation of fire suppression damage and rehabilitation of burned areas.

(1) Suppression Damage

To be effective, all vegetation along a fire line is removed (with the exception of line constructed with fire retardant) exposing the mineral soil to the erosive action of wind and water. This portion of the postsuppression program primarily involves the rehabilitation of fire lines as part of the final mop-up operation to prevent erosion, stream damage, flooding, etc.

Before a fire suppression operation is demobilized a fire line rehabilitation plan is developed and implemented. The amount of fire line to be rehabilitated and the methods used depend on such factors as steepness of slope, exposure, permafrost, soil moisture, soil type, and vegetative type.

In addition to rehabilitation of fire lines, maintenance, or other corrective measures may be necessary at the fire campsite(s), heliports or on roads leading to and from the fire that may have been damaged by vehicles used during fire suppression. However, damage from these activities are usually minor.

(2) Burned Areas

Bureau policy provides that the rehabilitation of wildfire burns and the replacement of facilities destroyed by fire is an emergency program and only the protection of life, fire suppression and protection of property have higher priority.

Detailed examination of burned areas to determine damage and rehabilitation needs begins as soon as suppression activities permit. An interdisciplinary approach is used, whether by one resource manager in the case of small fires where resource damages are minimal or by a team of resource management experts in the case of large fires where more manpower and expertise is needed to identify damage and rehabilitation needs. A fire rehabilitation plan (see Appendix F) is prepared. The plan includes the identification of resource damage, rehabilitation needs and justification, an analysis of the environmental impacts of the proposed treatments and alternative treatments and a request for the necessary emergency funding to complete the job. The complexity of the plan needed to rehabilitate a particular burn depends on many factors such as intensity of burn, watershed and wildlife values damaged, soil type, climate, etc.

The two broad categories of practices in a rehabilitation plan include (1) protection and management practices and (2) treatment practices. Protection and management are always given first consideration in the rehabilitation of a burned area. This is often the most effective and least costly treatment and may be all that is needed to insure recovery.

- Livestock. Exclusion of domestic livestock from the burn is often the most critical and important element of proper rehabilitation. Length of deferment will be based on the physiology of key plant species including the extent of damage to the plants. As a minimum, the area will be closed to grazing for at least one growing season following the burn. Two seasons' deferment is the preferred practice.

Protective fencing and water developments are planned to meet not only the emergency protective needs but also long-term management objectives.

- Wildlife, People, Etc. The burned area may be protected from these uses so as not to interfere with the restoration of the burned area.

- Restricted Use. It may be necessary on certain areas to restrict all or some resource uses to reduce deterioration and aid in recovery of the burned area.

Treatment practices are selected to prevent erosion, sediment and flood damages, impairment of water quality, invasion of noxious or undesirable vegetation, replacement of fences and other facilities necessary for rehabilitation work, and to assure timely recovery of forage, wildlife habitat and timber resources to normal productivity.

Refer to Appendix F for a more detailed discussion of postsuppression practices.

d. Prescribed Fire

This activity is the controlled application of fire to wildland fuels to achieve certain planned objectives. It includes the use of fire in silviculture, wildlife management, grazing, fire hazard reduction, disease or insect control, etc.

Prescribed fires are a tool of management. They are confined to specific areas, regulated in intensity, and otherwise controlled to achieve the desired objectives. They are based on sound knowledge of fire behavior as related to weather, fuel topography, smoke emission, and other factors.

When managers decide to use prescribed fire to achieve their objectives, the area must be specifically designated and the entire detailed procedure defined on a project basis. This plan (Appendix G), when administratively approved, must then be forwarded to appropriate state or local air quality offices for review and approval of the project. Details must also be worked out for actual project implementation dependent on current and forecasted weather conditions.

Specifications for selecting the necessary weather conditions to accomplish required smoke dispersal from smoke sensitive areas without exceeding ambient air quality standards are covered by the general smoke management plan previously agreed upon by cognizant state air quality control agencies and resource management agencies. (See Appendix H for sample Smoke Management Plan.) Provisions of the smoke management plan will also be followed for fires not intentionally ignited but permitted to burn by reason of conformance with plans for prescribed fires.

Prescribed fire is a specific as well as natural tool of management. In the hands of professionals it may be used by managers to achieve, among other things:

- thinning of forest stands
- removal of competing weed species
- preparing better seedbed for desirable species
- control of certain types of disease or insects that breed in slash, dense ground cover, etc.
- maintenance of specific fire climax types
- reduction of slash and accumulations of hazardous material adversely affecting fire operations
- maintenance of fuel breaks for fire control purposes and protection of stands
- either vegetative type conversion or maintenance for the benefit of wildlife
- control of disease hosts adversely affecting wildlife
- either type maintenance or conversion of grasses to benefit both game and domestic stock
- an increase in water yield on some areas and in others to increase water retention in the watershed
- cleaner areas of forest and range for use of tourists and recreationists

All these and other benefits can accrue in the wise use of prescribed fire. The use of prescription fire in hazard reduction has been discussed previously under presuppression.

The above listed uses of prescribed fire are well documented in: (1) Kozlowski, T.T. and C.E. Ahlgren 1974. Fire and Ecosystems, Academic Press, Inc., New York, 542 pp., (2) Brown, A.A. and K.P. Davis, 1973. Forest Fire Control and Use. McGraw-Hill, New York, 686 pp. and (3) Annual Proceedings, 1961-1974, Tall Timbers Fire Ecology Conference. Tallahassee, Florida.

E. References.

Agee, J.K., 1974. Environmental Impacts From Fire Management Alternatives. U.S.D.I., National Park Service, Western Reg. Office, San Francisco, Calif., 92 pp.

Annual Proceedings, 1961-1974. Tall Timbers Fire Ecology Conference. Tallahassee, Florida.

Brown, Arthur A. and Kenneth P. Davis, 1973. Forest Fire Control and Use. McGraw-Hill, New York, pp. 16, 301, and 309-311

Koslowski, T.T. and C.E. Ahlgren 1974. Fire and Ecosystems. Academic Press, Inc., New York. 542 pp.

Slaughter, C.W., R.H. Barney and G.M. Hansen, 1971. In Fire in the Northern Environment--A Symposium. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USFS, Portland, Oregon.

PART II

DESCRIPTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

A. Introduction

For the purpose of this statement, five major biomes have been identified which cover the 450 million acres of national resource lands (NRL) affected by the proposal. Figures II-1 and II-2 show the location of the NRL. The five biomes are the (a) grassland, (b) desert, (c) woodland-bushland, (e) coniferous forest, and (f) tundra.

Biomes are major living (biotic) communities, or natural groups of organisms, characterized by certain "dominant" plants and animals (Odum, 1945). They include both aquatic and terrestrial communities and also contain biotic islands more characteristic of other biomes. The islands are caused by geographical, climatic, altitudinal, and other variations within a particular biome.

Figures II-3 and II-4 indicate the boundaries between the biomes. However, the biomes are really separated by transitional zones or ecotones, where the elements of adjacent biomes blend.

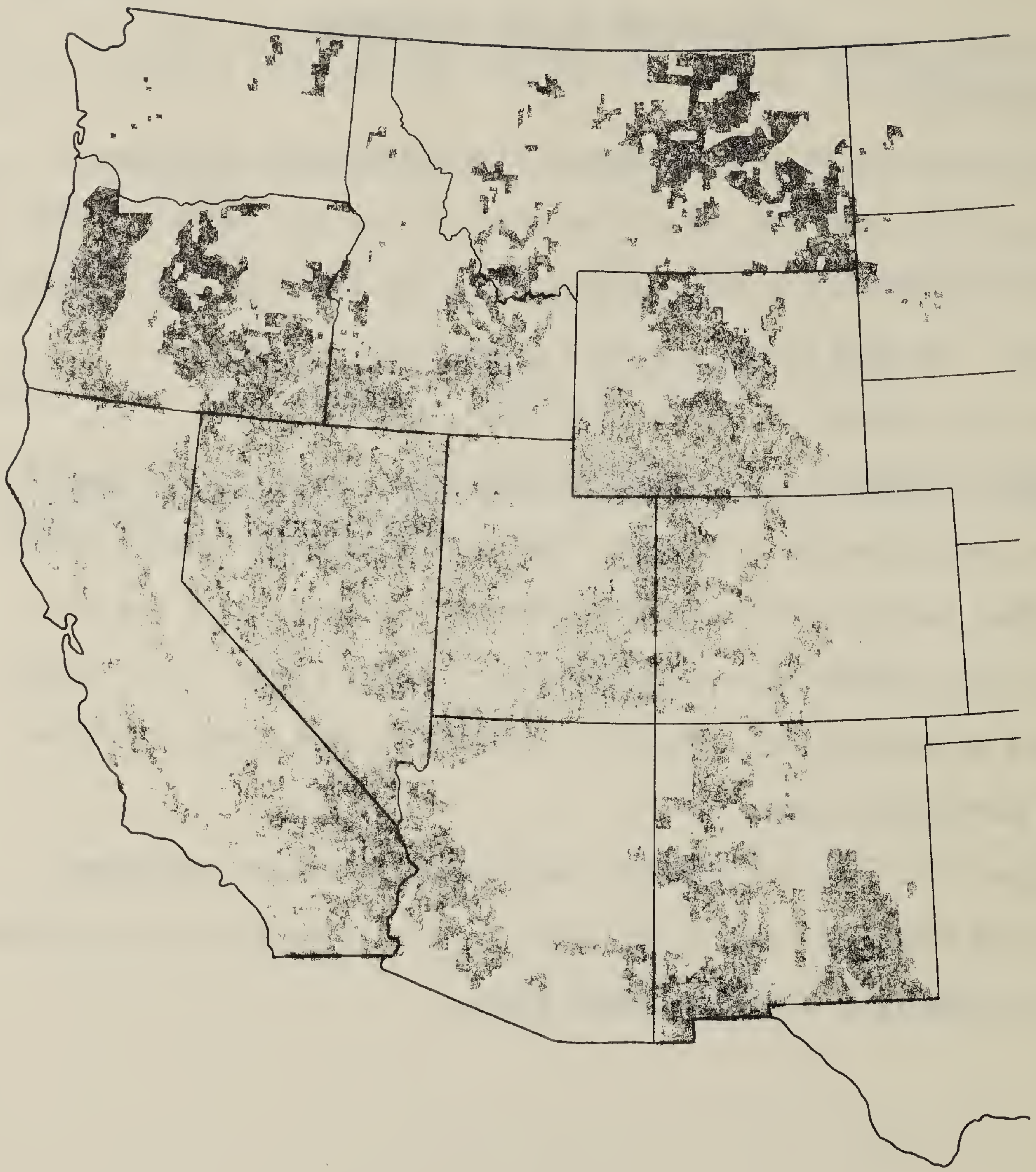
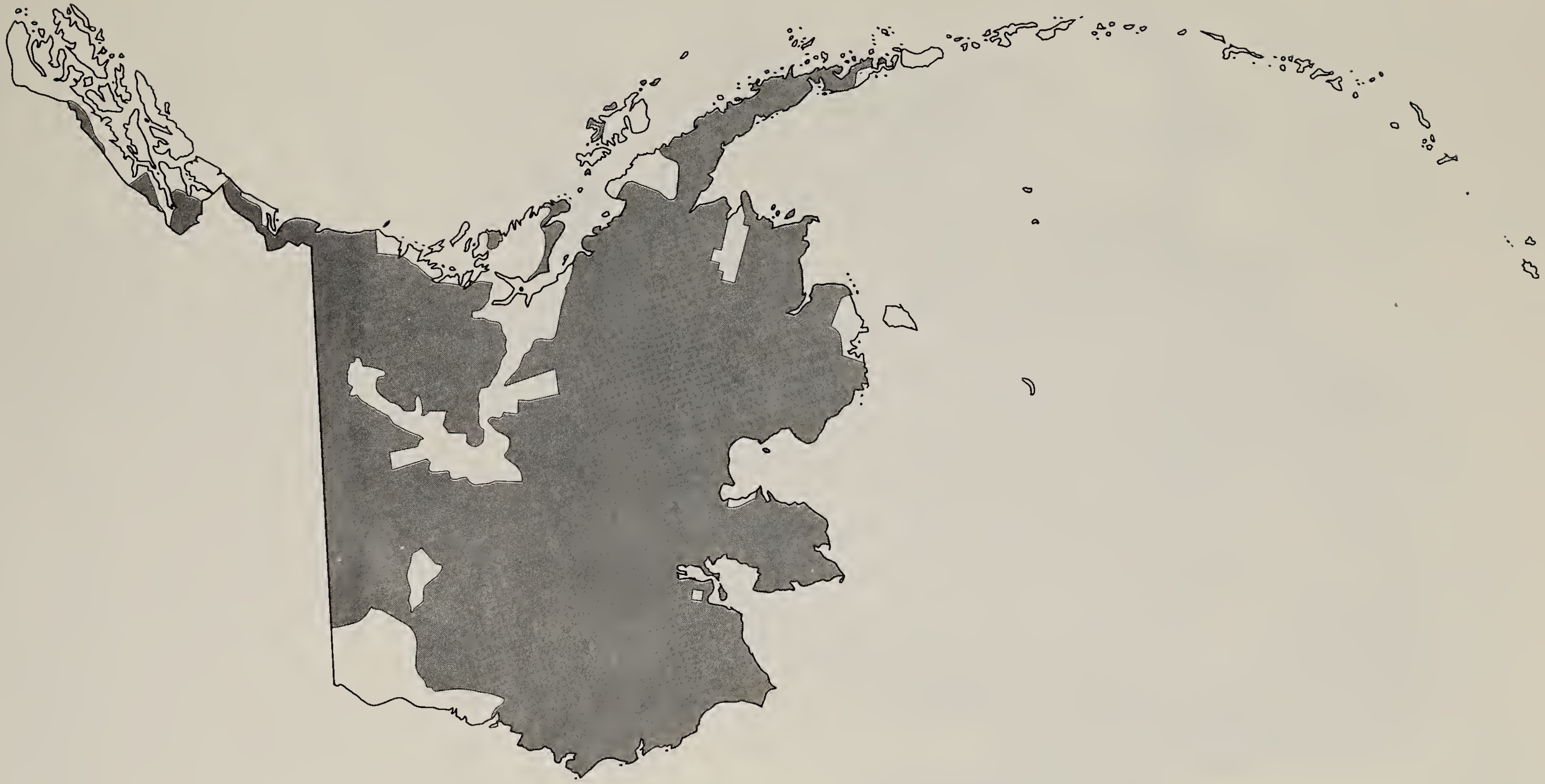
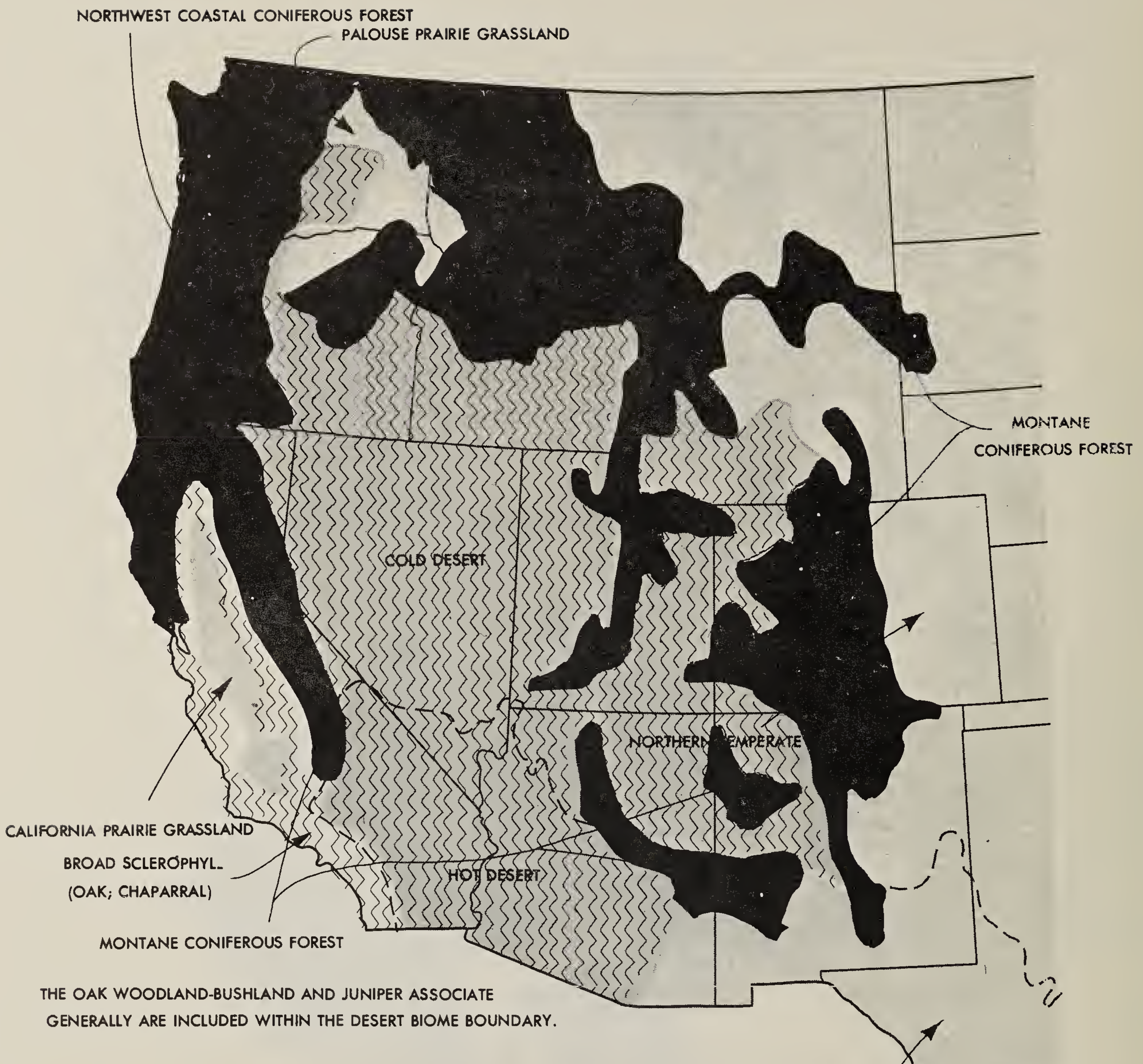


Figure II-1 Major Concentrations of National Resource Lands Administered by the Bureau of Land Management

Figure II-2 Major Concentration of National Resource Lands Administered by the Bureau of Land Management in Alaska




NORTHWEST COASTAL CONIFEROUS FOREST
PALOUSE PRAIRIE GRASSLAND
MONTANE CONIFEROUS FOREST
COLD DESERT
NORTHERN TEMPERATE
HOT DESERT
CALIFORNIA PRAIRIE GRASSLAND
BROAD SCLEROPHYL
(OAK; CHAPARRAL)
MONTANE CONIFEROUS FOREST
SOUTHERN TEMPERATE GRASSLAND

THE OAK WOODLAND-BUSHLAND AND JUNIPER ASSOCIATE GENERALLY ARE INCLUDED WITHIN THE DESERT BIOME BOUNDARY.

LEGEND
BIOMES IN THE WESTERN UNITED STATES

I. GRASSLAND BIOME
  1 Temperate Grassland
  2 Palouse Prairie Grassland
  3 California Prairie Grassland
II. DESERT BIOME
  1 Cold Desert ▒
  2 Hot Desert ▒
III. WOODLAND-BUSHLAND BIOME
  1 Broad Sclerophyll
  2 Oak Woodland-Bushland* <<
  3 Juniper Associates* <<
IV. CONIFEROUS BIOME <<
  1 Northwest Coastal Forest ■
  2 Montane Forest ■

(*Generally included within the desert biome boundary.)

FIGURE II-3 BIOMES OF THE WESTERN UNITED STATES (1)

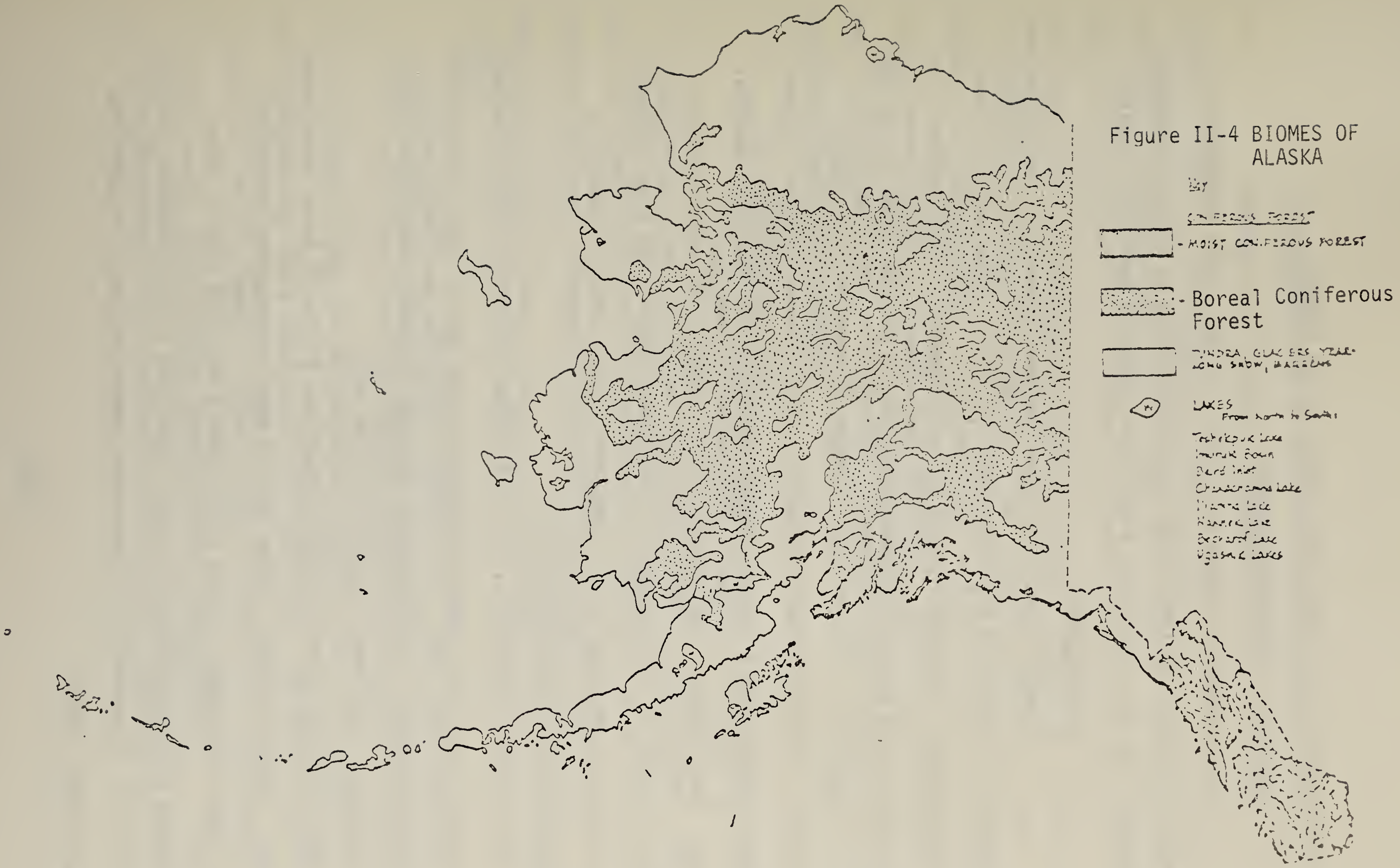


Figure II-4 BIOMES OF ALASKA

B. Environmental Characteristics Common to all Biomes

1. Ecological Interrelationships

The interactions among all living and non-living components of an ecological community (ecosystem) can be described as three fundamental processes: the nutrient cycle, energy flow, and the hydrologic cycle.

a. Nutrient Cycle

Elements such as nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, and potassium are essential elements in the maintenance of life. These and other nutrients continuously circulate through the environment in fixed patterns, or cycles, and in the process are made available in various forms to man and animals (consumers). For example, nitrogen is recycled from plants (producers) to the atmosphere and back in the following process. Microorganisms (decomposers) convert organic material into inorganic ammonia, nitrites, and nitrate. The nitrate, if not taken up by other plants or stored in the soil, then changes to nitrites, ammonia, and free nitrogen. The nitrogen is returned to the atmosphere as gas, where it again is available to nitrogen-fixing plants.

Under natural conditions, nutrient cycles are more or less in balance. Agricultural activities remove nutrients in the form of crops, disturbing the natural balance. The balance is restored by adding fertilizer and by crop practices that return nutrients to the soil.

Many different nutrient cycles occur, and little is known about many of them. The more perfect cycles have so many compensating mechanisms that it does not appear man has significantly modified them to date. Disturbance or manipulation of a cycle involving a vital element, however, could disturb it beyond its compensatory powers and cause its complete collapse (Odum, 1959).

b. Energy Flow

Energy flows through the ecosystem; it does not cycle (Shelford, 1963). The pathways of flow of energy and matter through a terrestrial ecosystem are shown in Figure II-5. Energy from the sun is captured by producers (e.g., plants) by photosynthesis. Producers utilize the energy and soil nutrients and water to produce vegetation. Herbivorous and carnivorous animals (consumers), in turn, feed on plants and other animals to acquire energy. Bacteria, fungi, and some animals (decomposers) derive energy as they decompose dead organisms. Energy is continuously being used by each group of organisms, and new energy is continuously being acquired from solar radiation.

c. Hydrologic Cycle

The movement of water into, through, and eventually out of an ecosystem is a major stimulus in the functioning of the system. The cycling of water consists of precipitation, runoff, and a series of intermediate processes influencing the precipitation/runoff relationship. The hydrologic cycle is shown in Figure II-6. (French, 1971; Dix and Beidleman, 1969.)

Surface runoff and subsequent erosion affect land forms and stream characteristics, and can significantly affect ecological interrelationships. The activities of man can change surface runoff if soil and vegetation are disturbed and the disturbance is not corrected. Changes in surface runoff, in turn, influence a stream system's fluvial cycle--the manner in which running water changes land forms and stream patterns. A fluvial cycle is determined, to a considerable extent, by climate and rock type.

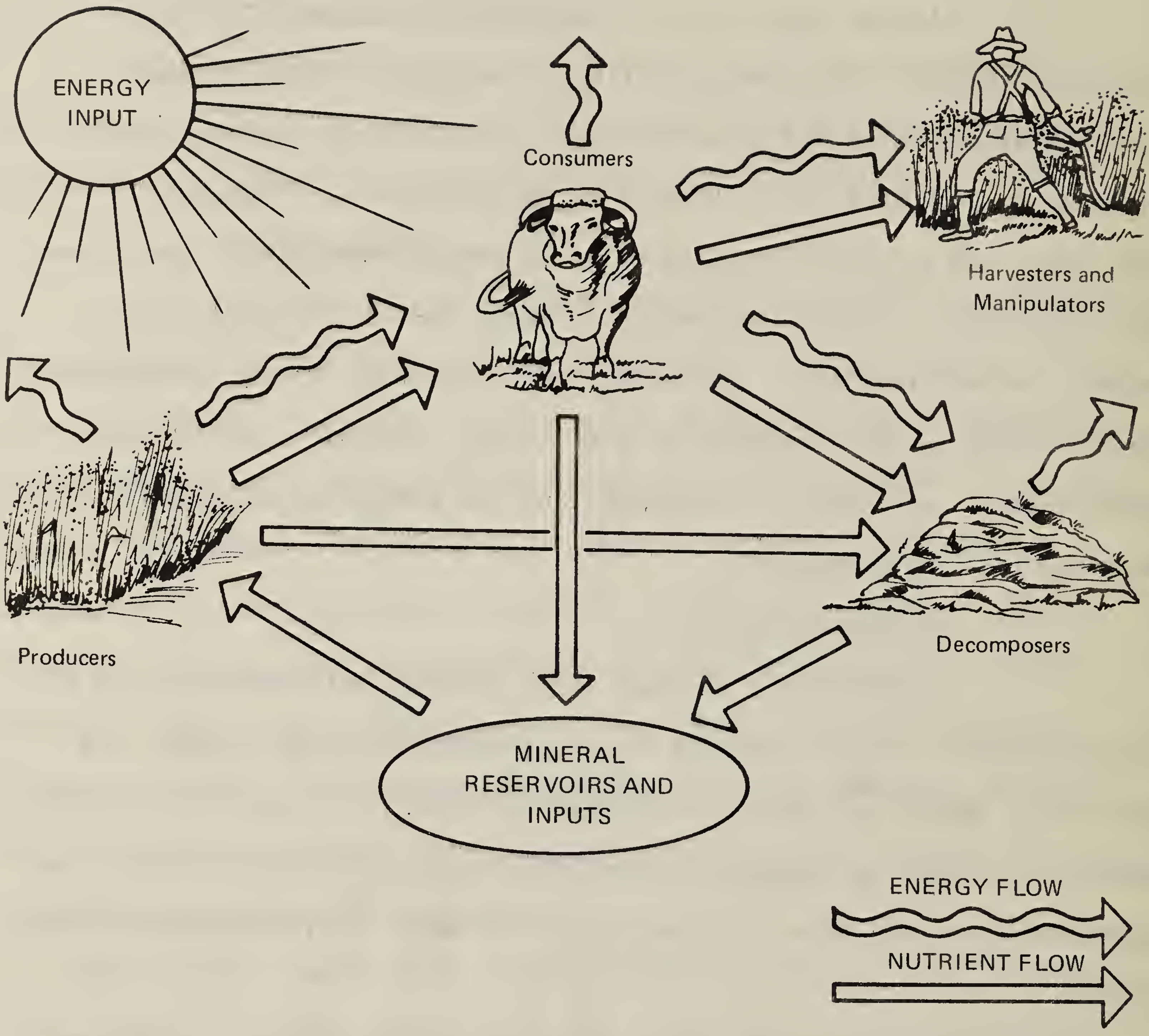


FIGURE II-5 A SCHEMATIC ILLUSTRATION OF PATHWAYS OF FLOW OF ENERGY AND MATTER THROUGH A TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM.

SOURCE: Van Dyne, G.M. 1969. "Some Mathematical Models of Grassland Ecosystems," P. 6, in R.L.Dix and R.G.Beidleman (ed.), "The Grassland Ecosystem : A Preliminary Synthesis." Range Science Department Science Series No. 2, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.

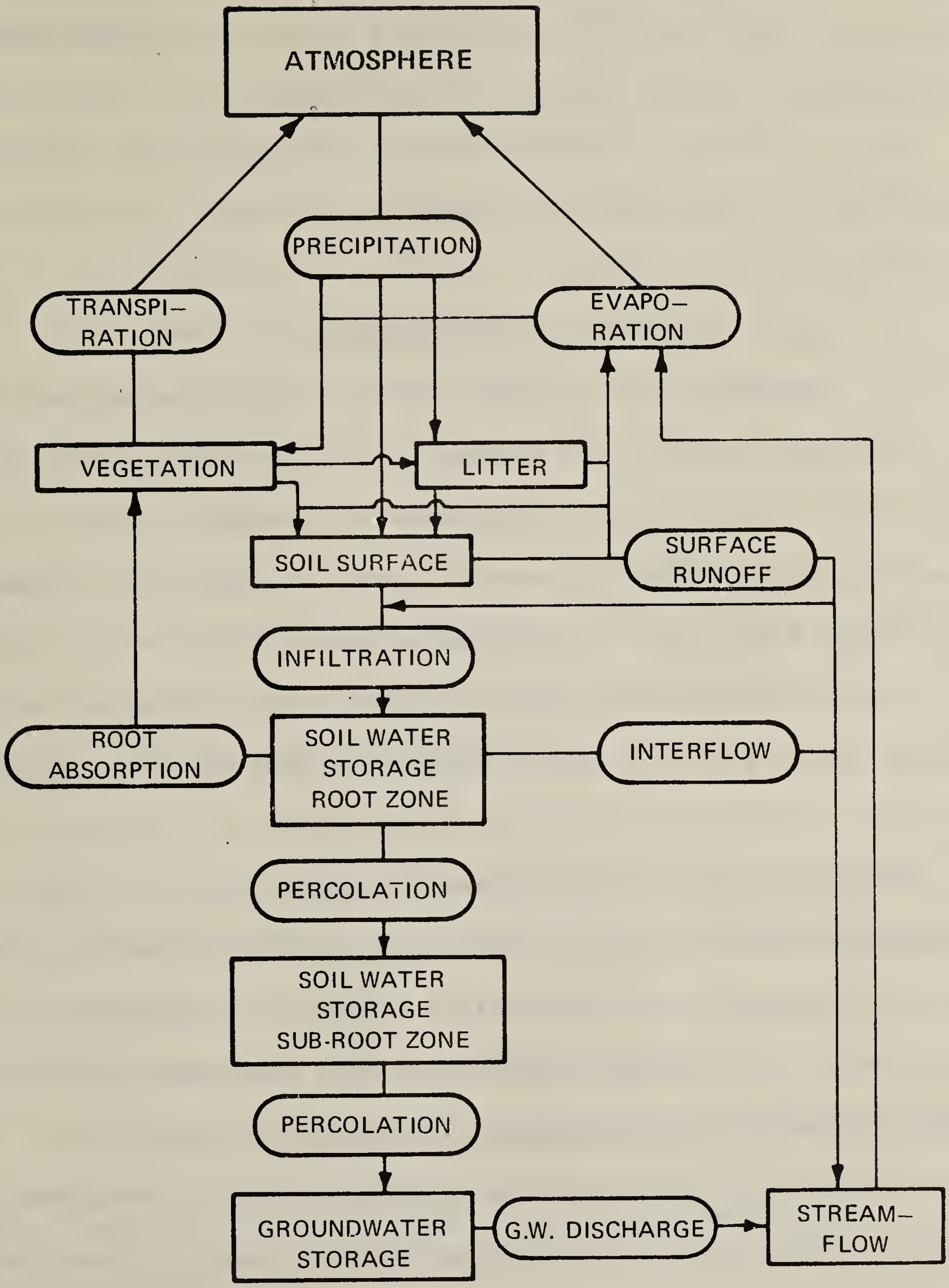


FIGURE II- 6 FLOW DIAGRAM OF THE GRASSLAND HYDROLOGIC CYCLE

SOURCE: Striffler, W.D. 1969. "The Grassland Hydrologic Cycle," P. 103, in R.L.Dix and R.G. Beidleman (ed.), "The Grassland Ecosystem : A Preliminary Synthesis." Range Science Department Science Series No. 2, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.

In general, drainage patterns evolve from an initial stage of gully development where runoff is concentrated (possibly by man's activities) through several stages of land form modification to a surface of low relief.

Man's activities, if unchecked, can affect the fluvial cycle by triggering the development of gullies in previously undisturbed areas or accelerating stream erosion.

2. The Role of Fire in the Environment

Although the effects of fires on wildland ecosystems have been well documented (Lutz, 1956; Daubenmire and Daubenmire, 1968), fire has traditionally been viewed as a negative or destructive force. Although man is well acquainted with the harmful aspects of fire, now he is gaining a much fuller appreciation of the natural role of fire in many ecosystems. As a result of the recent interest in fire's role in the environment, revised concepts and new approaches are emerging for fire control and fire use.

Fire is a process in the biomes. Flammability is an interaction between plant communities and other environmental components. Practically every dry season a significant fire is possible in many grassland, ponderosa pine forests, and savanna woodlands, because these communities bring certain properties to the ecosystem that enhance flammability. Under natural conditions, characterized by rather frequent fires, these communities would generally experience lower intensity fires than other communities, thus, their composition and structure are maintained by periodic fires because inherent characteristics insure repeated fires. The communities are fire dependent.

One hypothesis even suggests such fire-dependent plant communities burn more readily than nonfire-dependent communities because natural selection has favored development of characteristics that make them more flammable. This hypothesis recognizes that plant species which have survived fires for tens of thousands of years may not only have selected survival mechanisms but also inherent flammable properties that contribute to the perpetuation of fire-dependent communities.

However, the potential for spreading fires is not ever-present in all plant communities. A gradual physical deterioration is often the factor that finally induces high flammability in lodgepole pine, spruce, and northslope communities in the coniferous biome. This deterioration leads to high intensity fires that cause stand replacement within these forest communities. So the impact of fire within a biome varies tremendously with the frequency, duration, and intensity of burn.

For these reasons, it is misleading to generalize about fire. Fire can still be viewed as an ecosystem process in terms of general principles. Wright and Heinselman (1973) listed factors, processes, and effects common to the coniferous biome. Their listing is repeated here because these general principles are common to many other biomes as well:

a. Fire as an Influence on the Physical-Chemical Environment

- Fires directly release the mineral elements as ash from the living and dead organic substances burned. The burned system components may include organic layers, litter, foliage, bark, wood, fruits, seeds, animals and their excrement, etc.

- Fires may indirectly release still more mineral elements through increased decomposition rates of remaining organic layers and other remains, leaching or erosion of mineral soils, splintering of rocks, and the subsequent breakdown of rock fragments, etc. The quantities involved in 1 and 2 are poorly known. They are certainly significant if the fires are intense and frequent. For example, the exfoliation of granite boulders and rock outcrops heated intensively by the burning of moss and lichens and other fuels, as manifested in the Little Sioux fire of 1971 in northern Minnesota, may be by far the most important rock-weathering process in the region.

- Some nutrients are vaporized, at least in part, for example nitrogen compounds.

- Fires reduce plant cover shading the ground and thereby increase insolation. The effect varies with burn type (crown or ground fire) and intensity.

- Increased insolation changes soil temperature and local climatic regimes. The effect varies with slope, aspect, latitude, elevation, soil moisture, soil properties, etc.

- In northern Canada and Alaska permafrost may be thawed following fires, or conversely, during long periods between fires, the activate layer may decrease in thickness or new permafrost layers may originate.

b. Fire as a Regulator of Dry-Matter Accumulation

- Fires directly recycle the carbon of herbs and shrubs, and the foliage, bark, and wood of trees. Conversely, without fire, as the stand matures and decomposition fails to keep pace, these components gradually accumulate. The proportion of the dry matter consumed varies with fire type, intensity, and frequency. These in turn vary with many environmental factors.

- Fires may consume the carbon in litter and humus layers and sometimes remove increments of peat. Conversely, in the absence of fire these layers increase to the extent that decomposition fails to balance accumulation. The imbalance is related to temperature, precipitation, evaporation, latitude, elevation, topography, and many local site factors.

- Following severe fires the killed trees (snags) may constitute a large reservoir of dead organic matter.

- Fires may stimulate increased net primary production through changes in the physical-chemical environment.

- Fires may retard the accumulation of humus and peat for a period after burns through effects of soil nutrients, temperatures, and permafrost. The effect is complex because of interactions with the evapotranspiration balance and the groundwater levels on the sites where accumulation is most rapid.

c. Fire as a Controller of Plant Species and Communities

- Fires may trigger the release of seeds (jack pine, lodgepole pine, and several others).

- Fires stimulate the flowering and fruiting of many shrubs and herbs.

- Fires alter seedbeds. If litter and humus removal are substantial, large areas of bare soil, thin ash, or thin humus may be created. These influence germination and survival of many forest plants. Among trees benefiting from such seedbeds are most northern pines, Douglas fir, giant sequoia, some species of spruce, and many others.

- Fires stimulate vegetative reproduction of many plant species when the taller plants are killed. These plants sprout from the root collar (birch, maples, oak, redwood, hazel, alders, willows, etc.), or root suckers (aspens).

- Fires eliminate or temporarily reduce competition for moisture, nutrients, heat, and light. The effect may selectively favor some stand strata or components, or be total, depending on type of fire and intensity.

- Fires may selectively eliminate part of a plant community by consuming only the surface vegetation or only the tree tops.

- Fire frequency (return interval) influences community composition and successional stage and controls overstory age for vegetation and types reproduced by crown fires (jack pine, lodgepole pine, black spruce, etc.).

- Fire frequency regulates susceptibility of forests to the destruction of trees by wind (blowdown).

d. Fire as the Determinant of Wildlife Habitat Patterns, Populations

- Fire increases foods for animals dependent on forage or browse plants that proliferate after a fire (elk, deer, moose, beaver, hare, porcupine, etc.).

- Fire increases yields of many berry-producing shrubs that serve as food sources for birds, rodents, bears, etc.

- Fire eliminates some forage plants characteristic of old forests for 50-100 years--notably tree lichens and ground lichens in the north. It removes lichens used by barren-ground caribou on winter ranges, and by woodland caribou farther south.

- Fire regulates many insect populations, some of which are important food sources for warblers, woodpeckers, etc. There may be increases or decreases in food availability, depending on prey and predator.

- Fire controls the scale of the total vegetation pattern through fire size, intensity, and frequency (the natural fire rotation), and influences the relative abundance of plant communities and successional stages. These determine habitat patterns for all herbivores, and therefore regulate their numbers to the extent that populations are habit-limited.

- Carnivores (wolf, cougar, coyote, fisher, mink, marten, lynx, eagles, hawks, etc.) are dependent on herbivores and therefore on the fire-created vegetative pattern.

e. Fire as Controller of Forest Insects, Parasites, Fungi, etc.

- Fire directly terminates outbreaks of the spruce budworm, mountain-pine beetle, and other insects, by eliminating their hosts over sizable areas.

- Fire or the lack of it regulates the total vegetative pattern and the age structure of individual forest stands within it. These influence insect populations.

- Insect outbreaks may create fuel concentrations that make large-scale fires possible. Such fires then terminate the outbreak until the stands again attain susceptible ages. A self-perpetuating interaction may occur.

- Fires temporarily eliminate such plant parasites as mistletoe on black spruce, lodgepole pine, and perhaps other species. It may also "sanitize" forests against other pathogens for a time.

In summary, the flammability of wildland fuels and the effects of fires on the biomes are regulated by variations in plant succession and fuel succession. Simply stated, the cyclic occurrence of fires regulates plant communities and plant communities regulate the character of fires.

The ecology of the five biomes is generally a disturbance ecology, and fire has been the frequent initiator of such disturbances, often sustaining the productivity of many ecosystems.

3. Climate in Relation to Wildfire Severity

Weather is controlling in determining the timing, duration, and even existence of wildfires. Every biome or BLM administrative area experiences severe fire-weather conditions conducive to the support of conflagration wildfires. These, like any specific weather situation, occur more or less randomly perhaps several times in the average year, but varying from no occurrences to many. Any area with a history of large fires has experienced these situations.

Although the weather influence is highly variable in any given period of time, in an average year a portion or portions of the year can be identified as usually being sufficiently dry and windy to indicate probable need for fire suppression action (Figure II-7). Such portions of the year define the fire season. Not all fire weather is limited to the normal fire season--unusual periods of dry and windy weather have produced wildfire problems for several months on either side of the usual fire season in most BLM districts. The fire season corresponds to the dry season, but in many BLM districts the dry season occupies most of the year.

Most BLM wildfires are caused by lightning and all BLM districts are subject to fire-starting lightning storms, some for more than 30 days in an average fire season. Lightning storms vary greatly in frequency from year to year and in intensity of lightning output from storm to storm. An individual lightning storm may set over 100 fires in a few hours in an area 15 miles wide and 150 miles long. Characteristically, days with weather situations that produce a single intense storm are also likely to produce multiple storms. Every few years an outbreak of severe lightning storms occurs in combination with prolonged extremely dry and windy weather. When it does, fire suppression forces of all agencies are taxed far beyond the normal demands made upon them. These are the kinds of weather situations that account for the greatest fire suppression costs and damages.

Figure II-7 Duration of Fire Season in Each Fire Weather Region [1]

Fire Weather Region	Season When Critical Fire Weather May Occur	Occasional Critical Periods
Northwest Plains	April-October	--
No. Rockies and No. Interior	June-October	March-November
Central Intermountain	May-October	March-November
Southwest	January-December	--
Pacific Northwest	June-September	April-November
North and Central California	June-September	March-November
Southern California	January-December	--
Alaska	May-August	April-September

---

[1] From Schroeder, et al., 1964.

4. Air Quality as Affected by Fire

Portions of the atmosphere become relatively stationary for varying periods of time. During such periods any gaseous or fine particulate emissions tend to accumulate near their sources usually in the lower layers of air. This condition routinely exists during calm night and early morning hours when smoke from smoldering forest fires is transported by downslope and downvalley breezes into nearby lower basins where it accumulates and during certain weather situations may persist for several days.

During windy conditions smoke from fires may stay close to the surface, covering whatever areas may be directly downwind. In contrast, if light winds are near the surface, fires tend to form tall convective columns of rising warm air that lift the smoke to considerably higher elevations where it is transported and dispersed by the winds with minor affect on the quality of surface air. The hotter, larger fires produce higher convective columns, and the smoke plume that drifts away from such a column may be distinguishable for great distances.

Freqently, higher layers of the atmosphere are warmer than the relatively cool air "pools" near the surface. Air pollution problems may result from these stagnant pools being located in areas of high pollution sources. Such areas of limited air circulation are located in all the biomes. Many people in such areas are very sensitive about pollution sources that may add additional air impurities.

Smoke from forest fires and prescribed burning may be emitted into layers of air that do not come in contact with earth's surface. Such smoke contributes to the general pollution of deep air masses. The phenomenon of increasing pollution of the troposphere from west to east across the United States is a common sight to air travelers. Lovelock (1971) estimates that the pollution of air masses in the heavily populated and industrialized north temperate zone is increasing 30 percent per decade. This general increase is noted locally as a gradual increase in background measurements. Though smoke from large wild fires contributes noticeably from time to time, over the last 50 years, wildfire acreage has definitely decreased in all forest areas (Cramer, 1974).

Composition of smoke from forest fires varies with the specific fuel and intensity of the fire, but in general is considered to consist of 11-58 lbs. of particulate, 4-20 lbs. of hydrocarbons, 40-140 lbs. of CO, 1,600-2,500 lbs. of CO_2 and about 1,000 lbs. of water vapor for every ton of forest fuel consumed. Though smoke from wildfires can be worked up into impressive totals of emission components, these bear little relation to air pollution because little of the smoke reaches the areas where air pollution is a real concern. If it does, it is usually for the short duration and at low concentration.

Although the smoke produced by any fire largely depends on what the fuel is, smoke production characteristics can be divided into startup, full fire, and die down periods. During the startup period, a much larger proportion of products will be emitted directly without burning. The fire will be generally cool and the combustion inefficient. In heavy fuels, this stage is shortest.

In the full fire or mature stage, the fire, for its particular fuels, moisture, and arrangement, burns at maximum temperature and rate. The emissions will be least because combustion is most complete and the rate of energy production greatest.

In the final stage, the temperature is lower, flaming gives way to glowing combustion, and remaining fuels may produce a higher proportion of CO and a greater amount of unburned distillation products and particulates. This stage is probably the most troublesome because most of the heat energy is gone, the emissions may accumulate or drift at fire elevation, and this stage in scattered heavy fuels may last longer than the other two.

Size of fire is also important in determining relative efficiency of the combustion process primarily by influencing temperature. Laboratory tests indicate minimum production of particulate, total hydrocarbon, and CO irrespective of type of wood waste or moisture content while temperature in the combustion zone remained about 1,100 degrees F (593 degrees C) (Prakash and Murray, 1972). Fuel elements in close proximity are heated by radiation from adjacent fuel elements. Fuels near the edge of the fire are heated less by both radiation and conduction and are likely to burn cooler. Edge fuels are also subject to reduction of temperature by conduction from cool air outside the fire. Thus, the less the edge effect the higher the average temperature of the fire and the more complete the combustion. The smaller the fire the greater the proportion near its periphery and the less complete the combustion.

C. Description of Individual Biomes

1. Grassland Biome

The grassland biome is the most extensive and varied of the biomes. This biome consists of five subregions, four of which are shown on Figure II-8. The subregions are:

- The northern temperate grassland extends from the eastern forest across the Mississippi Valley to the foothills of the Rockies and includes the Great Plains.
- The southern temperate grassland includes southwest Texas and southern New Mexico.
- The Palouse prairie includes small portions of eastern Washington, northern Idaho, and northeastern Oregon.
- The California prairie includes the Central Valley of California.
- The Coastal prairie includes the area along the Gulf of Mexico in south Texas and parts of southern Louisiana, but will not be discussed, as it contains no significant amount of NRL.

The general aspect of the four subregions to be discussed is shown in Figures II-9 through II-12.

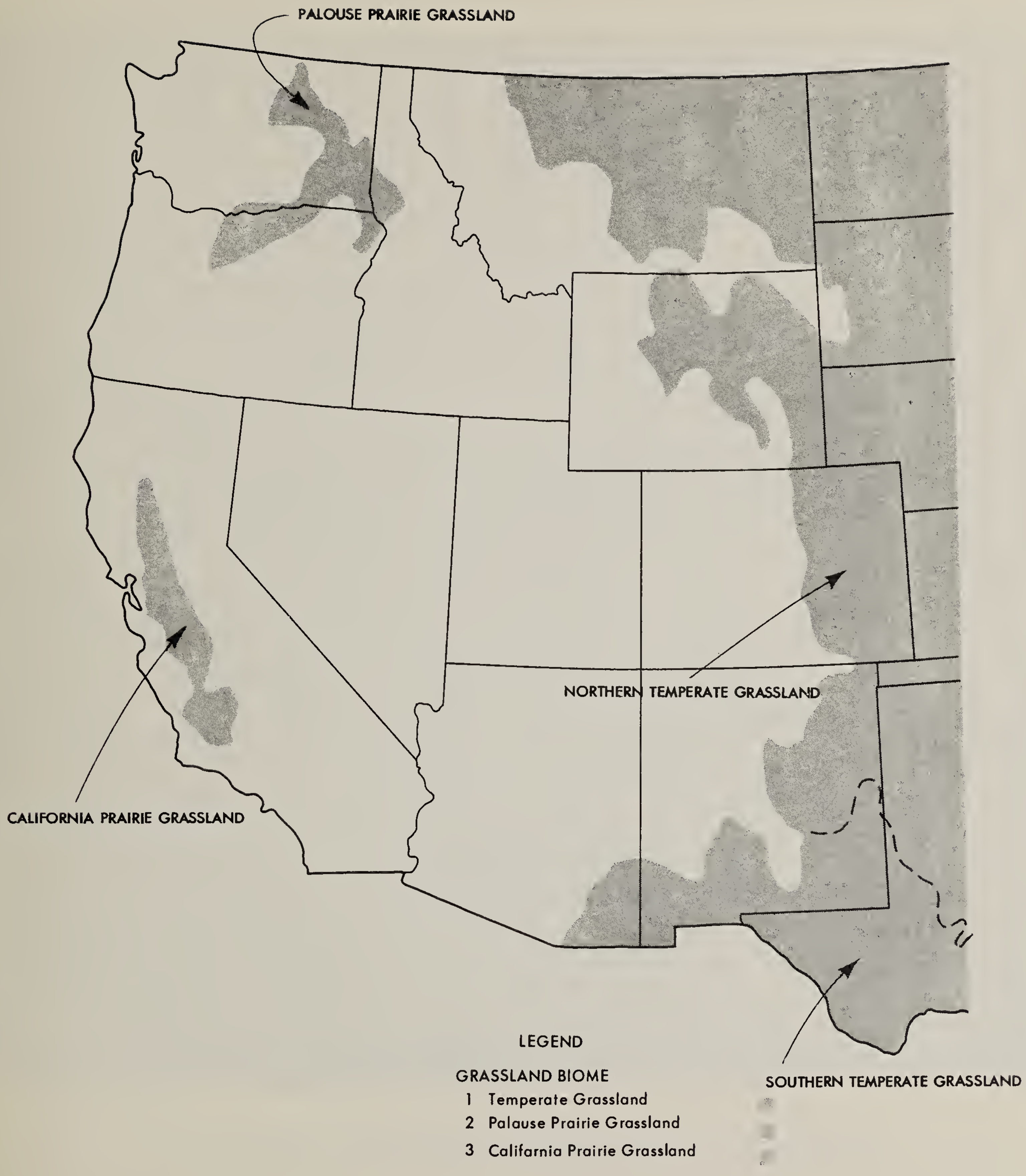

PALOUSE PRAIRIE GRASSLAND
NORTHERN TEMPERATE GRASSLAND
CALIFORNIA PRAIRIE GRASSLAND
SOUTHERN TEMPERATE GRASSLAND
LEGEND
GRASSLAND BIOME
1 Temperate Grassland
2 Palause Prairie Grassland
3 Califarnia Prairie Grassland

Figure II-8
THE GRASSLAND BIOMES
IN THE WESTERN UNITED STATES.

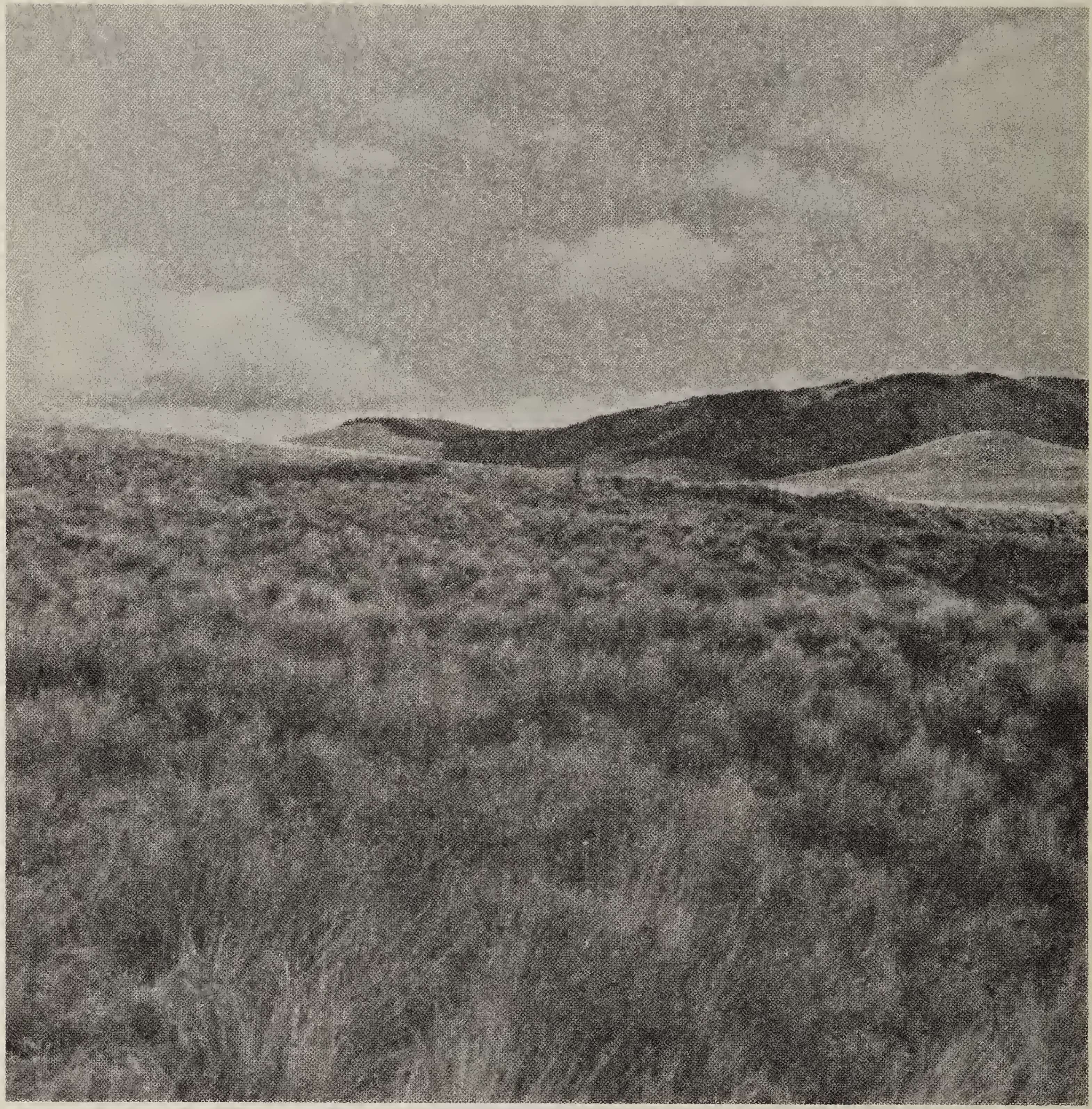


Figure II-9 The northern temperate grassland

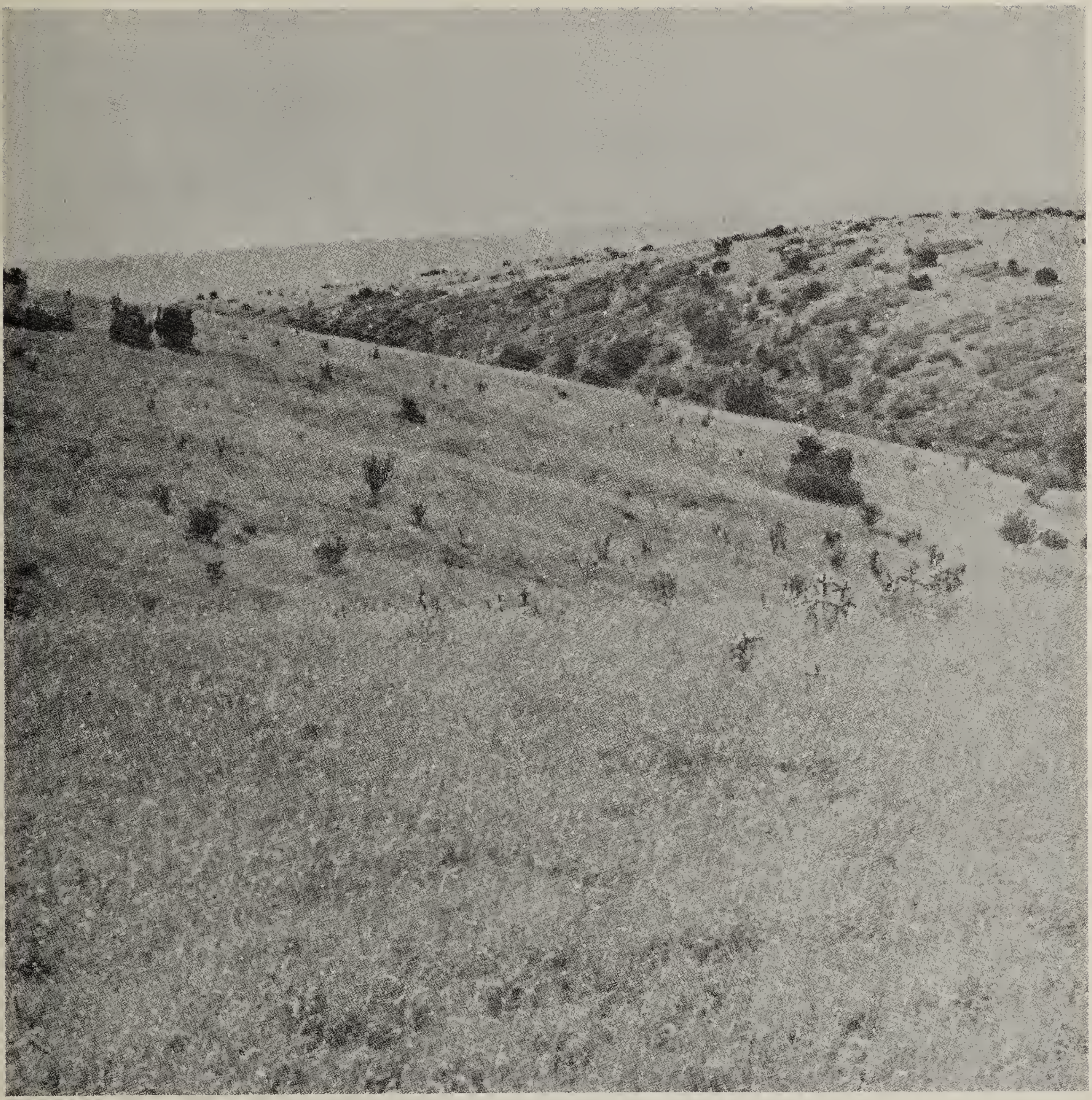


Figure II-10 The southern temperate grassland

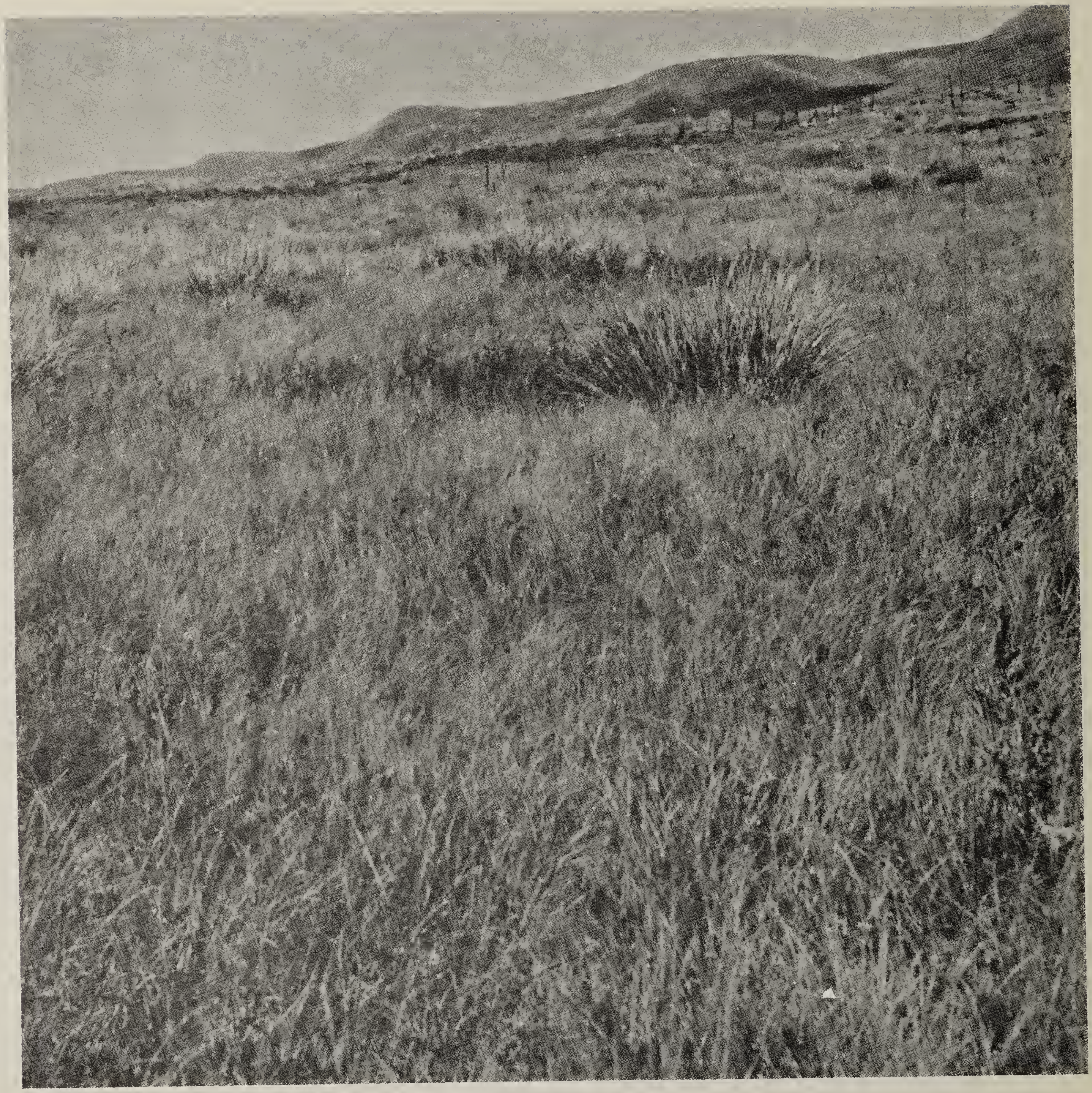


Figure II-11 The Palouse prairie

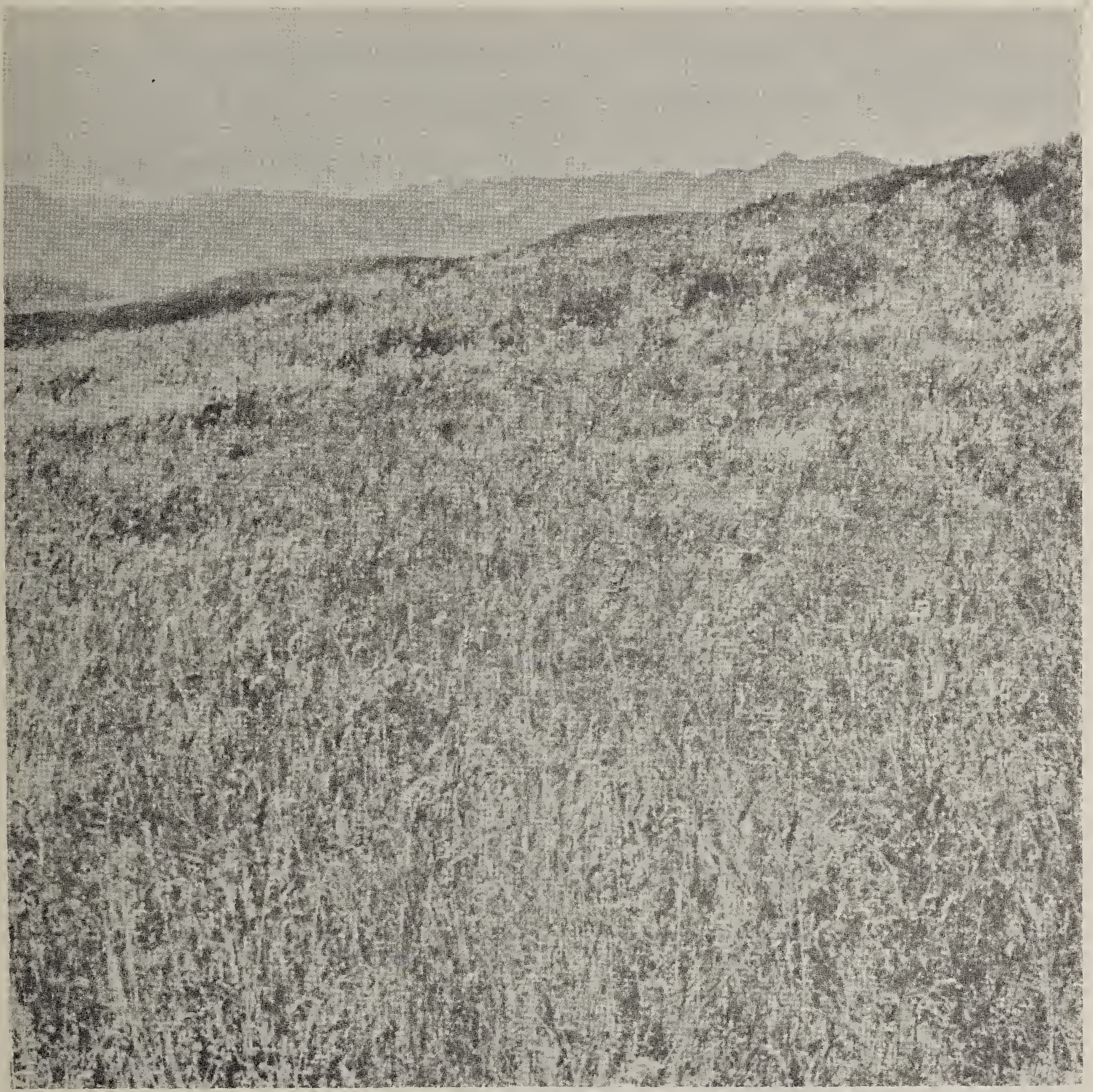


Figure II-12 The California prairie

a. Non-Living Components

(1) Topography

The topography of the northern temperate and southern temperate grasslands is predominantly rolling hills and plains. The land in the northern and southern temperate grasslands generally slopes gently from west to east, with altitudes ranging from 4,000 to 5,000 feet along the western boundary and 400 to 500 feet along the eastern boundary. There are several isolated mountain groups in the western edge of the region--the Black Hills in South Dakota and the Bearpaw, Little Rocky, and Big Snowy Mountains in central Montana. Other significant topographic features include the Sand Hill Region in central Nebraska, and southwestern New Mexico; the Badlands of west-central South Dakota; and the glaciated regions of northern Montana and North Dakota.

Most of the northern and southern temperate grassland drainage flows directly to the east, controlled for the most part by the original surface of the east-dipping sediments. Three principal plains levels and at least one remnant upland level dominate the landscape between the eastern and western boundaries of the grasslands. These form a set of steps ascending to the west.

The Palouse prairie includes small portions of eastern Washington, northern Idaho and northeastern Oregon. Topography varies from open hills and mountains to irregular plains and moderate to high-relief tablelands.

(2) Soils

The soils of the northern and southern temperate grasslands vary considerably from north to south and from west to east. Only the soils in the western portion of the grasslands are described below.

(Soil stability classes, the soil orders and series, and major soil characteristics are described in the Appendix.)

Along the Canadian border in Montana and North Dakota, the soils are the cool-moist, organic-rich Mollisols. In southern Montana, southwestern North Dakota and northwestern South Dakota, soils are the warm-dry Entisols. In northeastern Wyoming, the mature warm-dry Aridisols predominate; in southwestern Wyoming and northeastern Colorado, the warm-dry organic-rich Mollisols are dominant. Southeastern Colorado has the warm-dry, immature Entisols or soils that are still forming and the warm-dry, mature Aridisols that are well-formed with natural horizons. Eastern New Mexico has four warm-dry soils: the immature Entisols, the organic-rich Mollisols, the brown-to-grey base Alfisols and the mature Aridisols.

The soils of the California prairie above the stream valleys are warm-dry Alfisols while those along the rivers and streams are warm-dry Entisols.

Palouse prairie soils are predominantly warm-dry Mollisols. At the junction of the Columbia and Snake Rivers, the soils are Entisols; farther up the Columbia, a small area of Aridisols has developed.

(3) Minerals

A large portion of the oil and gas production of the United States is derived from this biome. Oil and gas exploration is very active with most of this activity confined presently to areas east of the Rocky Mountains. Commonly connected with the mineral activities are roads, pipelines, drilling sites, and small surface plants.

(4) Water

The major surface waters in the grassland biome are the through-flowing rivers and streams of major drainage basins--the Missouri, western Upper Mississippi, middle Arkansas, White, Red, lower Rio Grande, Texas-Gulf, middle Columbia-North Pacific, and the California Central Valley. The large rivers, the Missouri, Yellowstone, Platte, Arkansas, Rio Grande, Columbia, and Sacramento, receive most of their inflow from the higher elevations above the grasslands. Many of the smaller streams within the more arid grasslands flow intermittently. (U.S. Geological Survey, 1970.)

Annual runoff in the grassland biome ranges from less than 1 inch to more than 5 inches of water in much of the northern temperate grassland.

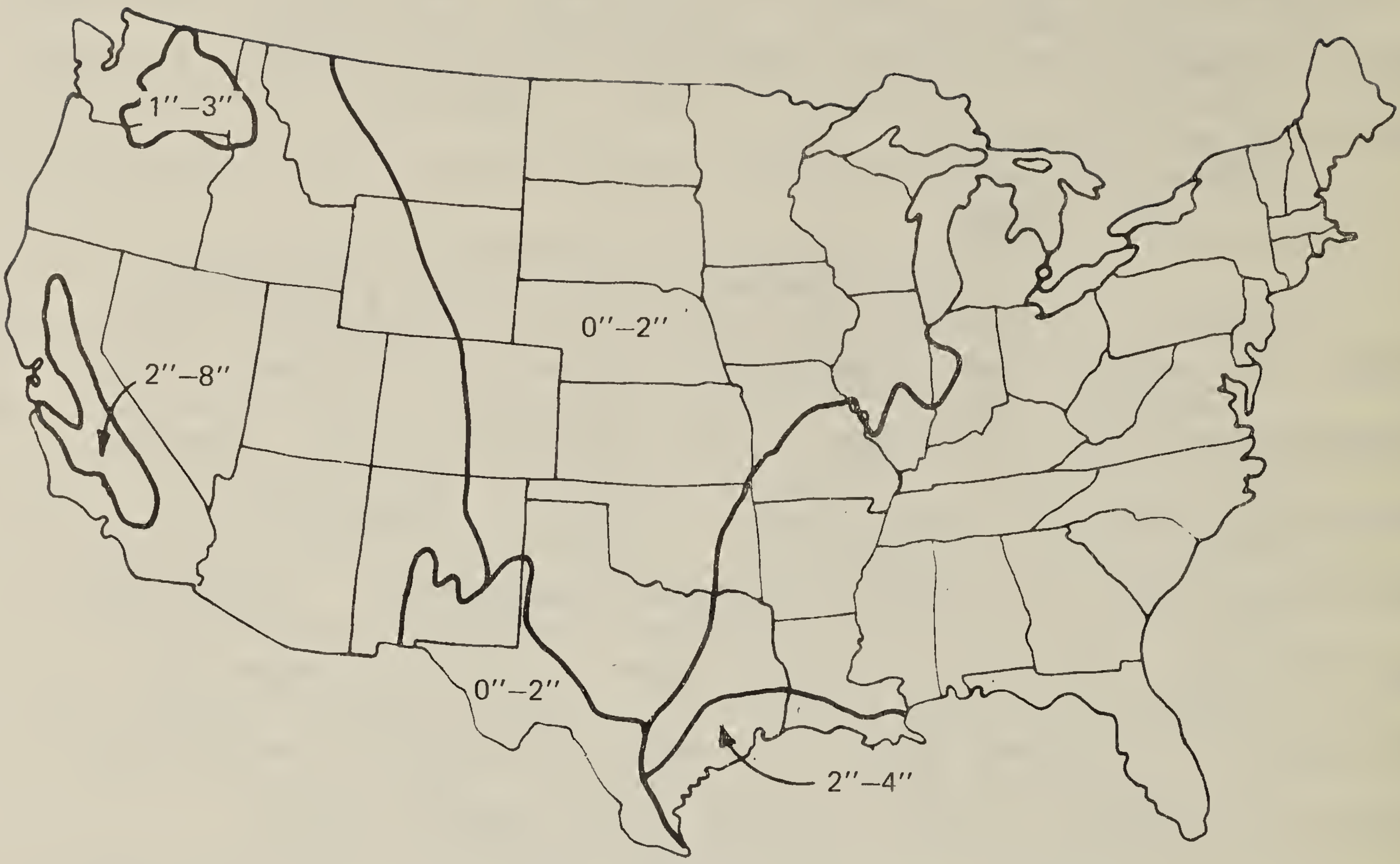
The total dissolved solids in surface water in the grasslands range from less than 100 parts per million (ppm) to more than 1,800 ppm. The amount of dissolved solids in a watercourse are affected by the type of soil and parent material in the region, the length of time the water has been in the watercourse, and the extent to which the flows are diluted by water from other sources. The specific chemical composition is an important consideration in determining whether water can be used for specific purposes. The total amount of dissolved solids in the water generally is the controlling factor in determining if a water supply is chemically suitable for most general uses.

The average suspended-sediment concentrations in streams in the grassland biome range from less than 230 ppm to more than 30,000 ppm. The suspended-sediment in a stream comprises such particulates as sand and silt. Suspended-sediment tends to be greater in areas where soil is not held in place by a dense vegetative cover.

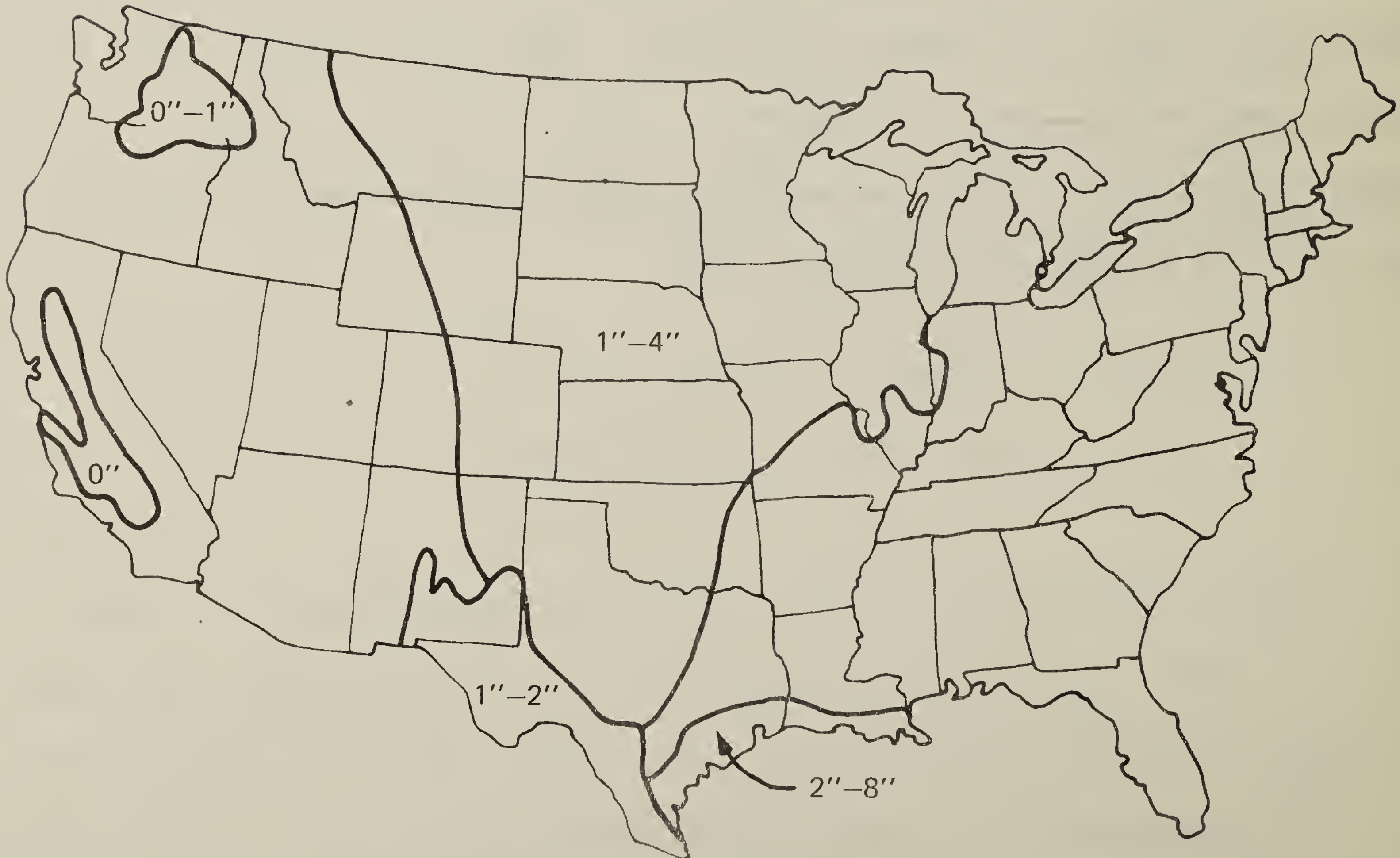
The quality of water in most rivers, streams, lakes, and springs in the biome is adequate for most plant, animal, and human uses; however, localized pollution of water does occur.

(5) Climate

The northern temperate grassland has a continental climate. The average annual precipitation varies from 15 inches in the northwestern section to 30 inches in the southeastern portion. Seasonal precipitation varies from year to year. As shown in Figure II-13, most precipitation occurs as rainfall from summer thunderstorms. Temperatures range from 40° F. below zero to 110° F. above. Mean daily temperatures vary from 0° F. in January to 70° F. in July in the northern section, and from 50° F. in January to 80° F. in July in the southern portion (Figure II-14). Winds are generally from the northwest in the winter months; they average 10 mph, but range up to 40 mph or more and bring dry, cold air. In the summer months, dense fog occurs about 5 to 10 days each year. Humidity generally is low in the western portion and increases to the east. (Odum, 1971; U.S. Geological Survey, 1970.)

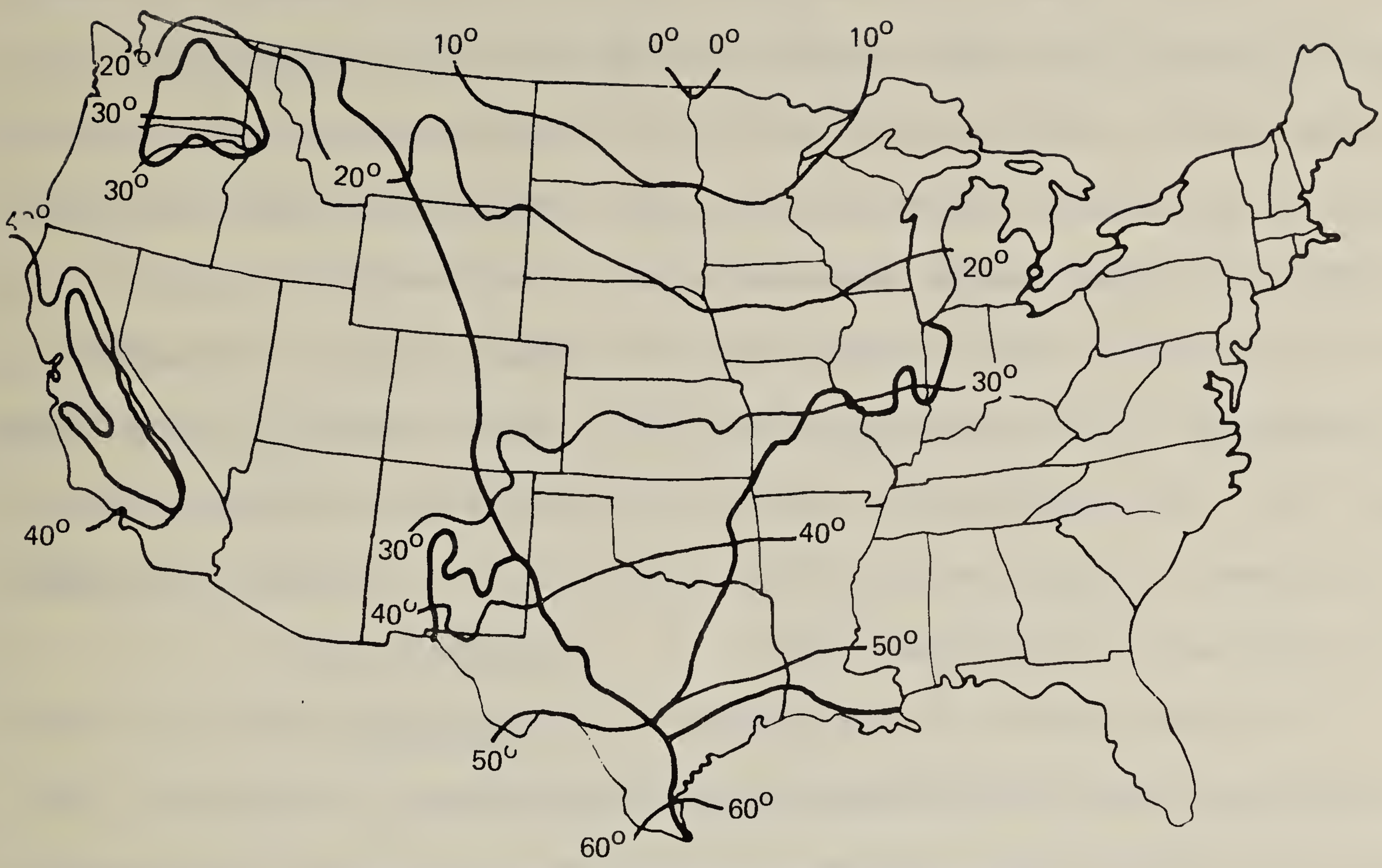


MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JANUARY

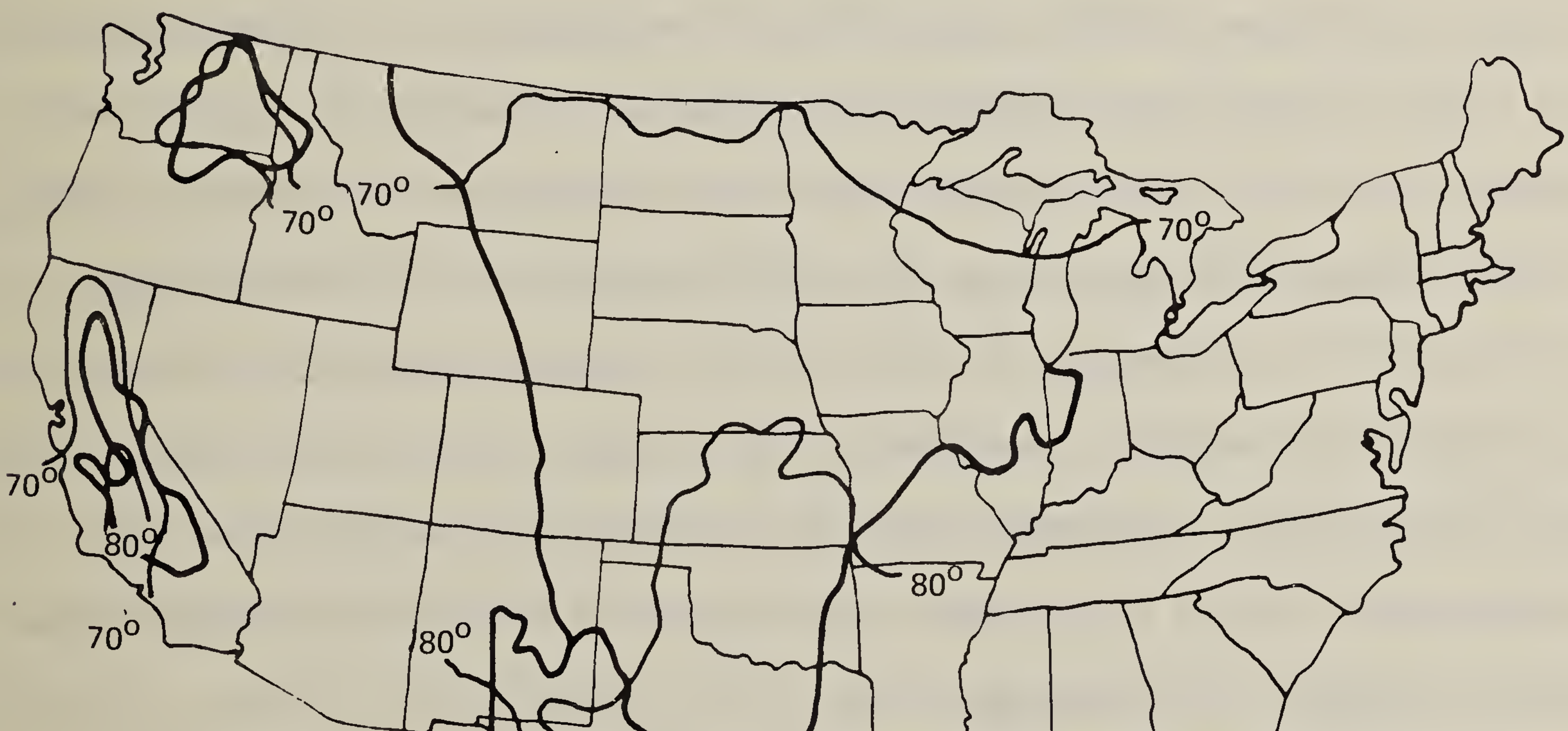


MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JULY

Figure II-13 Average January and July precipitation in the grassland biome



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (°F)—JANUARY



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (°F)—JULY

Figure II-14 Average daily temperatures in the grassland biome in January and July

The southern temperate grassland's climate is influenced by the continental air mass to the north and the humid Gulf to the southeast. The average annual precipitation varies from 10 inches in the northwest to 40 inches in the southeast portion of the biome. Figure II-13 shows that most precipitation occurs during the summer months. Temperatures range from 10° F. below zero to 110°F. above; mean daily temperatures vary from 35° F. in January to 75° F. in July in the southeast. Winds generally are variable and light in the winter months; during the summer, they tend to blow from the southeast, bringing moist warm air from the Gulf. (Hodge, et al., 1964; U.S. Department of Agriculture, 1941.)

The Palouse prairie's climate generally is influenced by the continental air mass, with some modification from the Pacific Ocean. Consequently, the area has a milder climate than the north temperate grasslands to the east. Average annual precipitation ranges from 10 to 15 inches. Most precipitation falls in the winter months (Figure II-13). Thunderstorms occur about 10 days out of the year. Temperatures reach extremes of 30° F. below zero to 110° F. above; the mean daily temperature (Figure II-14) varies from 25° F. to 30° F. in January to 70° F. in July. Winds generally are from the south in both winter and summer. They average 8 mph, but may gust strongly at times. Dust storms may occur in the summer months when the light surface soil is dry. Dense fog occurs about 10 to 20 days each year; maximum frequency is in October.

The California prairie's climate is influenced by the Pacific Ocean. The average annual precipitation varies from 6 inches in the south to 23 inches in the central part of the grassland. Most precipitation occurs during the winter months; almost none falls during the summer (Figure II-13).

Thunderstorms occur during the winter months with the passage of cold fronts. Temperatures range from 15° F. to 115° F. Mean daily temperatures vary from 40° F. in January to 80° F. in July (Figure II-14). Winters are mild and summers are hot. Winds generally are from the south during the winter months. When storms move through the area, winds tend to blow from the northwest. During the summer months, the wind is generally out of the west. Dense fog occurs from 10 to 25 days during the winter as temperature inversions keep moist Pacific air trapped within the valley basin. (Petterssen, 1940.)

b. Living Components

(1) Vegetation

The predominant vegetation of the grassland biome is a variety of grass species occurring in both a natural state and in extensive cultivated areas. The vegetation is typified by unbroken expanses of prairie. Many of the native and introduced grass species are used for agricultural crops or forage for domestic and wild animals. Several species of woody plants grow in the biome; some, such as the sagebrushes and sageworts, provide important forage for herbivores in the winter and cover for many forms of wildlife on a year-round basis. Grazing of domestic animals has been one of the major contributors to plant succession, particularly in increasing the distribution of woody plants and forbs. In addition to serving as an important food source, the grasses stabilize soils, minimizing water and wind erosion.

Grasses are remarkably adapted, both morphologically and physiologically, to grazing by herbivores. Grasses are unique in life form and growth. Adaptations to grazing include the zone of active meristematic tissue at the base of each blade and each node; buds in the axils of the sheaths of the lower portions of the stem; and positioning of the buds with respect to grazing and fire. Having evolved under grazing and being thus adapted to use by grazing animals, grasslands actually remain in better condition if grazed than if left ungrazed.

In general, the grasslands are located where rainfall is insufficient to support forest-like vegetation, but is sufficient to preclude the formation of a desert.

Marshes, lakes, ponds, and streams support various forms of aquatic vegetation. Algae are the most important producers in the freshwater environment. Except for pond and duck weeds, most higher aquatic plants are members of diverse families in which the majority of species are emergent.

The northern temperate grassland includes three broad perennial grass zones extending north and south across the western Mississippi Valley. The tall grass prairie is located on the eastern edge of the grasslands; the mixed grass prairie is intermediate; and the short grass prairie extends along the western edge.

The southern temperate grassland most resembles the short grass zone of the northern temperate grassland. It is the driest area in the grassland biome. Parts of it are dotted with desert shrubs because of the dry climate and overgrazing.

The Palouse prairie consists of mid-grass species. In some areas, bunch grasses have been replaced by sagebrush. Large wheat crops are produced in portions of the region.

The California prairie originally consisted of mid-grasses of the bunch grass type similar in form to those of the Palouse. Many of the native grass stands have been replaced by annual grasses introduced from Europe. Parts of the tule marshes along the major drainages have been converted to rice production.

(2) Animals

The high annual turnover of net primary production in most grassland communities provides a food base for a large number and variety of animals. Many species are grazers, others are burrowers and a large number of birds are ground nesters. Large herbivores, such as deer and antelope, are a characteristic and sometimes common feature. Insect life is abundant, varied, and heavily utilized as food by many secondary consumers. Every major animal phylum and many taxonomic groups of the plant kingdom are represented in the biome. Many of the animals are gregarious and frequently occur in large concentrations.

Droughts periodically occur in grassland communities, and the populations of some wild animal species can fluctuate widely from year to year.

Large domestic herbivores, such as horses, cattle, sheep, and goats, have largely replaced, or live in competition with, the native herbivores. Some of the joint use of rangeland ecosystems by domestic and native herbivores is compatible. Grazing significantly influences grassland ecosystems throughout the United States.

(a) Terrestrial Wildlife

The most conspicuous terrestrial wildlife are mammals and birds. In the northern temperate grassland, characterisitic animals include antelope, mule, and white-tailed deer, white-tailed jack rabbits in the north and black-tailed jack rabbits in the south, prairie dogs, ground squirrels, coyotes, badgers, ferrets, pocket gophers; various waterfowl, prairie chickens, sage grouse, Swainson's hawks, rough-legged and ferruginous hawks, burrowing owls, ground-nesting birds such as the meadowlark and horned lark; bullsnakes, rattlesnakes, and an abundance of insects. (U.S. Department of the Interior, 1952.)

The southern temperate grassland includes many of the same animals found in the north, although some are a different species or subspecies. Other forms more common in the south include the antelope jack rabbit, desert cottontail, collared peccary, scaled quail, white-winged dove, scissor-tailed flycatcher, mocking bird, kingsnake, and several kinds of lizards.

In the Palouse prairie, the sharptail grouse was abundant in the past. The short-eared owl, burrowing owl, and marsh hawk nest in the grassland. The cottontail and pygmy rabbit, pocket gopher, golden-mantled ground squirrel, and various grasshoppers are characteristic fauna.

In the California prairie, the California ground squirrel is one of the most characteristic species. The area is important wintering habitat for waterfowl. Many of the same animals, perhaps of different subspecies, occur here as in other grassland areas.

Many grassland species warrant special consideration because of their particular needs. For example, a local population may require a specific site at a particular season to continue its life cycle, such as strutting grounds and adjacent nesting habitat for sharptail grouse, sage grouse, or prairie chickens; and waterfowl and shorebird nesting areas around potholes, reservoirs, and marshes.

Some species extend their distribution into vegetal subtypes, and the local animal populations become totally dependent upon the restricted habitat. Some species, while not endangered throughout their range, have remnant populations in danger of being eliminated in local areas. The sharptail grouse in the Palouse prairie is an example. Local populations of some species are restricted to relatively small sites, such as prairie dog towns. Other species, such as the endangered black-footed ferret, are dependent upon the prairie dog as a primary food source and utilize the prairie dog burrows for homes.

(b) Aquatic Wildlife

Aquatic wildlife includes fish and various invertebrates confined to a water environment such as shellfish. Aquatic fauna in the grassland area are less diversified that in the more humid regions. The natural distribution of nonmigratory fish is confined to water bodies with accessible and suitable spawning areas.

Anadromous fish species (examples--salmon, steelhead) utilize the river systems which pass through the Palouse prairie and California prairie grasslands for spawning purposes.

Warm water fish species occur in larger streams and warm standing waters. Examples include the shovelnose and lake stugeons, paddlefish, and gars of the Missouri River. Channel catfish inhabit small tributaries of the Missouri and some large reservoirs with warm, muddy waters. Bullheads are adapted to a wide range of conditions, but prefer warm streams or ponds. The black bass, blue gill, and perch occupy a wide range in relatively cool streams, lakes, and reservoirs. Cold water species in the high elevation, clear, spring-fed streams include various trout, mountain whitefish, grayling, suckers, and sculpins.

(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife

Several threatened or endangered species of wildlife are characteristic of the grassland biome. These include: San Joaquin kit fox, black-footed ferret, American peregrine falcon, Mexican duck, the bluntnosed leopard lizard, and the masked bobwhite quail.

Threatened or endangered fish species are found within the biome. Currently identified species include the Pecos gambusia and greenback cutthroat trout. (U.S. Department of the Interior, 1974.)

(d) Domestic Livestock

During the period of early settlement by Europeans, the grasslands were used almost exclusively for livestock grazing. Today, beef, lamb, and wool still are the principal products of areas that have not been converted to crop production.

More cattle than sheep and goats are grazed on the grasslands because cattle are better adapted to the type of forage produced in most of the biome. Goats are limited, for the most part, to the brushier areas of the south temperate grassland. Sheep production is a significant land use in areas where shrub species are a prominent component of the vegetation.

Cattle numbers have steadily increased over the years, and sheep numbers have sharply declined. After a period of rapid decline, horse populations have remained fairly stable in recent years (U.S. Bureau of Census, 1947, 1965, and 1970).

(e) Wild Horses and Burros

The population of wild horses and burros on NRL in the grassland biome is not significant when compared to the desert and woodland-bushland biomes. In Montana, there are an estimated 264 wild horses with around 150 head in the Pryor Mountain area, part of which has been designated as the Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Range. There are no known wild burros in Montana. A few wild horses and burros have been reported in the grassland biome of New Mexico.

Generally, it is recognized that burros and horses compete for both food and water with wildlife and domestic stock.

(f) Human

Demographic characteristics of the grassland biome vary considerably from one area to another. Most lands in the biome are rural. However, the biome also includes several large urban centers with significant differences in population densities, economies, and social environments. Nearly 17 percent of the total western states' population lives in this biome.

Most of the counties in the biome are sparsely populated; densities over much of the area in 1970 were less than 10 persons per square mile, compared with a national average of 57.3 persons per square mile and a western state average of 29 persons per square mile. Most of the areas having a low population during 1960-1970 lost people in the decade. Significant gains were experienced in most urban areas (U.S. Bureau of Census, 1971). The biome as a whole lost rural population at a greater rate than the 5 percent western states' average.

Income levels throughout the biome are generally lower than average for the West. For example, per capita income in the plains of New Mexico is only about 70 percent of the western states' average while the per capita income of the Colorado and Wyoming Plains is about 90 percent of the average.

The percentage of families under the poverty level is also generally greater (except in Wyoming) than the western average.

Low population densities and other characteristics of the rural areas reflect economies geared to resource production and primary processing. Agriculture and agricultural processing are principal economic activities. The isolation of resources from major markets has limited industrial growth in much of the area. The recreation-tourism industry has grown rapidly over the past 20 years and provided employment in the services sector of the economy.

Employment in agriculture is 4 percent of the work force for the 11 Western States as a whole. In the grassland biome, the percentages range from 4 percent in Colorado to 26 percent in northeastern Montana. However, livestock production makes up varying proportions of the agricultural sector. The percent of total income derived from livestock production is estimated to range from slightly over 2 percent in the Central Valley of California to nearly 12 percent in the Great Plains of Montana. Except for the California and perhaps Colorado portions of this biome, livestock production contributes relatively more to total incomes than in any other biome. The NRL supply 2,890,000 cattle AUM's and 500,000 sheep AUM's to the livestock industries of the biome. These AUM's account for 8 percent of the total cattle and sheep feed consumed in the biome except for the southern grassland area of New Mexico, where it approaches 19 percent.

Small towns and villages are scattered throughout the rural areas of the biome. Towns with populations of 5 to 10 thousand are market centers and generally are located along major transportation routes.

Urbanized areas located in the western portion of the biome in close proximity to extensive Federal lands include Great Falls and Billings, Montana; Boulder, Denver, Colorado Springs, and Pueblo, Colorado; Spokane, Washington; and the extensive Central Valley metropolitan complex in California. Metropolitan populations of each of the areas exceed 50,000. The Denver metropolitan area, for example, had a 1970 population of 1.25 million and a growth of 32 percent from 1960 to 1970 (U.S. Bureau of Census, 1971). If present trends continue, the prediction of an urban megalopolis stretching from Cheyenne, Wyoming, to Pueblo, Colorado, may be realized by the end of the century.

The metropolitan areas have combinations of capital, labor, services, and demand for products that support industrial development. The population concentrations support educational and cultural opportunities and a variety of housing and personal services. Economic and social environments are markedly different from those of rural areas in the biome.

c. Ecological Interrelationships

The grassland ecosystem is probably the most studied of all ecosystems, and there is extensive literature available on many of the ecological components. However, the aquatic ecosystem and its relationship to the terrestrial community is less well known than the ecological relationships within the terrestrial community.

The grasslands generally occur in regions of limited moisture; droughts are common. Precipitation during the May-to-October growing season occurs largely as convectional thunderstorms or frontal storms. The output of the hydrologic system is low compared to other biomes. Variations among the communities within the biome (such as short-grass and mixed-grass communities) generally occur because of varying rainfall, insufficient soil storage capacity or both. Winds and the high evapotranspiration rates also have an important effect on components of the ecosystem. Thus, water is a critical factor in the grassland ecosystem.

The grassland is a vast solar-powered ecosystem capable of producing great quantities of energy. Annual production is generally high and the turnover of the biomass occurs rapidly on an annual basis. Only small amounts of nutrients are tied up in the biomass. Soil organisms are numerous. As much as half of the producer biomass is directly decomposed by fungi and bacteria rather than by herbivores.

Nitrogen and phosphorus are the most important nutrients provided by vegetation to support other life forms in the grassland biome. Unconsumed nutrients are recycled through the soil in a short time because of annual mortality or dieback of the grass. Consumed nutrients deposited as dung and urine may cycle even faster. This contrasts with biomes such as the forest biome where the nutrient cycle is slower and where a large share of the nutrients are stored in trees having a natural lifespan of hundreds of years. However, the nitrogen fixation rate on predominantly grass-covered sites is very slow and could be a critical factor in determining the revegetation recovery period of some disturbed areas.

Except in locations of steep topography, low precipitation and unstable soil, the grassland ecosystem generally is stable. Surface disturbance can be rehabilitated and natural successional development occurs rapidly. Even though it may take many years to restore the original vegetation and animal species of the ecosystem, lesser species invade rapidly into a disturbed area.

Fire was an important factor in the development of grasslands. But recognition of the importance of burning in determining the distribution and composition of vegetation has been slow to develop. Daubenmire (1968) illustrated this earlier lack of recogniton of the role of fire with this comment published in a scientific journal in 1926 "Scientific studies show conclusively 'that grassland fires' gradually decrease the fertility of the soil by burning up the humus. They also reduce the vitality of the desirable grasses and thus encourage the spread of undesirable grasses and weeds." Daubenmire observed that if one were forced to take an unequivocable stand on these points today, the mass of verifiable data that has accumulated makes the opposite of these statements more nearly correct. As quantitative data accumulates, the role of fire in grasslands has been approached in more objective terms.

Sauer (1950) reported that grasslands occur where there are dry seasons and where the land surface is smooth to rolling, thus, they are subjected to recurrent fires. These fires result in the reduction of woody vegetation. Exclusion of fires leads to gradual recolonization by woody species in many grasslands.

Lightning fires have undoubtedly been a factor in the grassland environment during a large portion of geologic time. In western and southwestern portions of the grassland, desert shrubs tend to encroach in the absence of fire. In wetter portions of the true prairie, numerous studies have shown increased forage yields as a result of burning (Daubenmire 1968). Beneficial effects of fire in the humid grasslands have been thought to be due to excessive mulch accumulation or to the fertilizing effect of the ash. In true prairie in the absence of grazing, fire is necessary to maintain a high rate of net primary production and prevent encroachment of woody plants. Studies suggest that most of the beneficial effects of fire could be supplied by mowing or regulated grazing. However, fire does improve nutritional value and palatability of the vegetation to grazing animals (Daubenmire 1968).

d. Human Interest Values

(1) Land Uses

The Homestead Act of 1862, railroad construction, irrigation and other factors lead to the cultivation of vast areas in the grassland biome. Most lands remaining in a natural condition are unsuited for cultivation. Some are privately owned, but many in the western grasslands are federally owned. The uncultivated lands are extensively used for livestock grazing and outdoor recreation. Hunting, fishing, hiking, and other outdoor recreation activities are particularly significant on lands remaining in Federal ownership.

In the northern and southern temperate grasslands, the amount of agriculture and the percentage of private ownership decrease progressively from east to west. Cattle ranching and wheat farming predominate in the western section. A large portion remains undeveloped, providing significant recreation opportunities. Roadless sections with primitive qualities remain in some areas.

The California prairie contains productive irrigated agricultural land. Nuts, fruits, vegetables, rice, and specialty crops are grown in the area. Undeveloped areas are extensively used for livestock grazing and outdoor recreation. Outdoor recreation is a particularly significant use on some lands because of the proximity of large metropolitan areas.

Wheat grown by dry farming methods is the major agricultural use in the Palouse prairie. Significant areas in the western portion are irrigated; unirrigable portions remain undeveloped and are used for grazing.

Most metropolitan areas and some of the smaller cities in the biome are growing rapidly and using additional lands for residential, commercial, and industrial expansion. Inevitably, increased population concentrations place additional demands on adjacent rural and undevloped lands for recreational uses.

Mineral extraction industries account for some land use. Oil and gas operations, and the mining of coal and some other minerals are quite active in this biome.

(2) Aesthetics

The grassland may be described as primarily gently rolling hills and broad expanses of flatlands. In some areas near major streams, particularly in drier portions of the biome, continuity of the land may be interrupted by sharp breaks down to flood plains of the stream. Because of the relatively gentle slopes in the grasslands, few of man's activities interrupt continuity of the form. Where the form is disturbed, it is usually quite easily replaced to a natural or near-natural condition. Where the landscape is still in a natural state the soft texture of the grass-covered slopes is interrupted by occasional rock out-crops. In drier portions, ground cover may be in scattered patches with some exposed soil. Much of the eastern portion of the biome, along with the Palouse prairie and the California prairie, has been converted to agriculture. Here the texture changes from field to field as the crops change.

Although the texture of the grassland vegetation is easily disturbed, areas can recover rapidly if given the opportunity to do so.

Lines in natural portions of the biome play a minor role in the landscape and are evident only in ridgelines and in the occasional road or powerline crossing through the area. In the agricultural areas, lines become much more obvious. Crop rows, field edges, fence lines, and roads become a dominant element in the landscape.

Color is not a dominant factor in the grassland biome. It may play a more important role in moist agricultural areas, but in the natural and drier areas, the colors are generally muted and tend toward a monotone.

Scale is difficult to define on the flat plane of the grasslands. Any vertical element that is introduced into the landscape has a tendency to define the scale, but also draws the eye and becomes a focal point.

The total effect of the landscape character of the grassland biome will vary with the individual observer. To one, openness may connote a freedom, room for movement, a challenge to action. Another may feel overwhelmed, lonesome, and unprotected. To some, it may seem a monotonous wasteland. To the acute observer, subtle changes in tone or forms may be fascinating.

Sound and smell, although they may be an important factor in a very localized area, are impossible to describe for an entire biome.

(3) Geological

Human interest in geological phenomena tends to center on the features that are different and strange or beautiful and exciting. Things like volcanic necks, caves with stalagmite formations, sinks, natural arches and bridges, fossils, and erosional features arouse the interest and curiosity of the viewer. The grasslands biome has some of these features but, being primarily a flat landscape, they are rather limited.

The northern temperate grassland has colorful heavily eroded areas like the Badlands of the Dakotas, dome mountains like the Little Rockies, canyons such as in the Missouri Breaks, fossil beds, and volcanic remains such as Devils Tower in northeast Wyoming.

The southern temperate grassland contains limestone caves in the Pecos River regions and sinkholes near Roswell, New Mexico.

The California prairie contains dome mountains (Marysville Buttes) in the vicinity of Sacramento and geologic faults with visible displacement, like the San Andreas Fault along its eastern edge.

The Palouse prairie contains interesting geologic phenomena such as the scablands, the Grand Coulee, and other evidence of past volcanism in the region.

(4) Archeological

The biome contains archeological sites depicting the three broad developmental stages of American Indian prehistory. These are the Paleo-Indian, the Archaic, and Agriculture stages.

Both the eastern Big-Game Hunting Tradition and the Western Old Cordilleran Tradition occur within the biome. The Big-Game Hunting Tradition is recognized in kill sites of such animals as the bison, mammoth, camel, and horse. More rarely campsites are found with chipping and other camp debris. Some cave sites have been found. The Big-Game Hunting Tradition has been recognized in the northern and southern temperate grasslands.

The Old Cordilleran Tradition represents a relatively unspecialized hunting-gathering-fishing way of life. Evidence comes from old lakeshore campsites, caves, and deeply stratified refuse dumps in favorite fishing spots. The tradition has been found in both the Palouse and California prairie grasslands.

The Archaic stage is found as a Plains Archaic Tradition in the northern and southern temperate grasslands. During this stage emphasis was placed on gathering of plants and some shellfish in addition to hunting.

In the Plains Archaic, this emphasis is indicated in the trash dumps, dry cave sites, burned rock debris mounds, and campsites. Bison and other animal kill sites continue to be found, some being buffalo jumps with rock alignments.

The Eastern Archaic is found in the eastern portion of the northern temperate grassland. It is similar to the Plains Archaic, but with more emphasis on gathering--especially shellfish.

The Desert Archaic Tradition is found in the southern temperate grassland and had some input into the cultures found in the California prairie. The Desert Archaic subsistence pattern was based primarily on small seed gathering and small animal hunting. Archeological evidence comes mostly from campsites, dry caves, petroglyphs, and pictographs.

The Agriculture stage is represented in the northern temperate grasslands by the Plains Culture (Woodland and Plains Village Traditions). Although reverting to a strong hunting culture once again after the introduction of the horse in the 1700's, the Plains Culture base originally was agriculture. Sites are predominantly surface and pithouse village sites (some stockaded), tipi rings and other rock alignments, pictographs and petroglyphs, caves, buffalo jumps and animal traps, log structures, vision quest sites, pole structures, and burial mounds.

The eastern portion of the northern temperate grasslands also contains remains of the Agricultural stage, Northeastern Woodland Tradition people with their temple and burial mounds, large village sites, and occasional cave sites.

Evidence of the Agricultural Pueblo Tradition can be seen in the northern portion of the southern temperate grassland. Evidence of the Pueblo Tradition, here represented by the Mogollon Division, includes sites of masonry buildings, pithouse dwellings, occasional irrigation systems, trash mounds associated with villages, pictographs and petroglyphs, caves, fortified sites, and roasting pits.

In the Palouse prairie, agriculture was never developed by the native inhabitants so that the final precontact periods are represented here by the Northwest Riverine Tradition. These people lived along the river valleys and their archeological sites are mostly the remains of pithouses and aboveground houses in villages along the rivers, campsites, quarries, petroglyphs, and burial grounds.

Similarly in the California prairie, the Agriculture stage never developed and the Archaic stage continued up to the time of contact with non-Indians. Large shell middens occur near water, quarries, and village sites.

(5) Historical

Historically, this region has seen early explorations and ownership by the Spanish, French, English, and Americans. During the fur trading period, much activity took place and many trading posts were established. Army posts and camps constructed during the Indian Wars were, in part, concurrent with the fur trade. Immigration, railroads, gold seekers and finally settlement by farmers and ranchers marked the conquest of the plains. These activities are marked by the remains and sites of old forts, trading posts, battle sites, cattle trails, railroads, mining ghost towns, homestead failures, and more recent, ventures in oil, gas and coal extraction, and water reclamation.

The northern temperate grasslands were considered, because of their dryness and the Indians, as a barrier to movements to the more fertile areas of the West. Consequently, much of the history here involves Indians, soldiers, and immigrants passing through.

The southern temperate grasslands were explored in the 16th century by the Spanish, but little settlement took place. No real inroads into settling the various parts of the biome occurred until about 1850 with the advent of gold discoveries in California and the Rocky Mountain West.

The California prairie received some settlement in the Mexican Period, but its agricultural greatness began as a supplier of foodstuffs for the 49'ers. The Palouse prairie too was settled as an agricultural area in the mid-1800's.

(6) Cultural

Most prominent of the minority groups occupying the grassland biome are American Indian groups still living on the various reservations and using, to some extent, their lands for religious and cultural activities. In the southwestern portion of the biome are Spanish-American communities whose lifestyle is still dependent on traditional land uses outside their villages.

Many of the native cultures attach religious or mythological significance to specific sites. Disturbance or intrusion upon these sites by others may seriously affect their religious values. Many other ethnic and religious groups have needs such as appreciation of their value systems and recognition of their desires to be left alone.

2. Desert Biome

The desert biome in the United States occupies an extensive area between the coniferous forest in the Rocky, Cascade, and Sierra Nevada Mountains. It is found at elevations below the woodland-bushland types and in other areas where precipitation is too low to support grassland or woodland vegetation. It includes two subtypes--cold deserts and hot deserts. The former have warm summers and cold winters; the latter have moderately warm winters and extremely hot summers. The locations of the two types of desert are mapped in Figure II-15.

The cold desert extends through central Washington, eastern Oregon, southern Idaho, southwestern Wyoming, northeastern California, most of Nevada, Utah, northern Arizona, northwestern New Mexico, and extreme western Colorado. It includes islands and fingers of grassland and woodland types (Costello, 1972). Parts of it are referred to as the High Desert, Great Basin Desert, or Painted Desert.

The hot desert extends through southeastern California, southern Nevada, southwestern Utah, and southern Arizona. Parts of it are referred to as the Mojave Desert, Lower Colorado River Desert, or Sonoran Desert. The Federal Government owns much of the land in this biome.

Typical landscapes in the cold and hot deserts are shown in Figures II-16 and II-17.

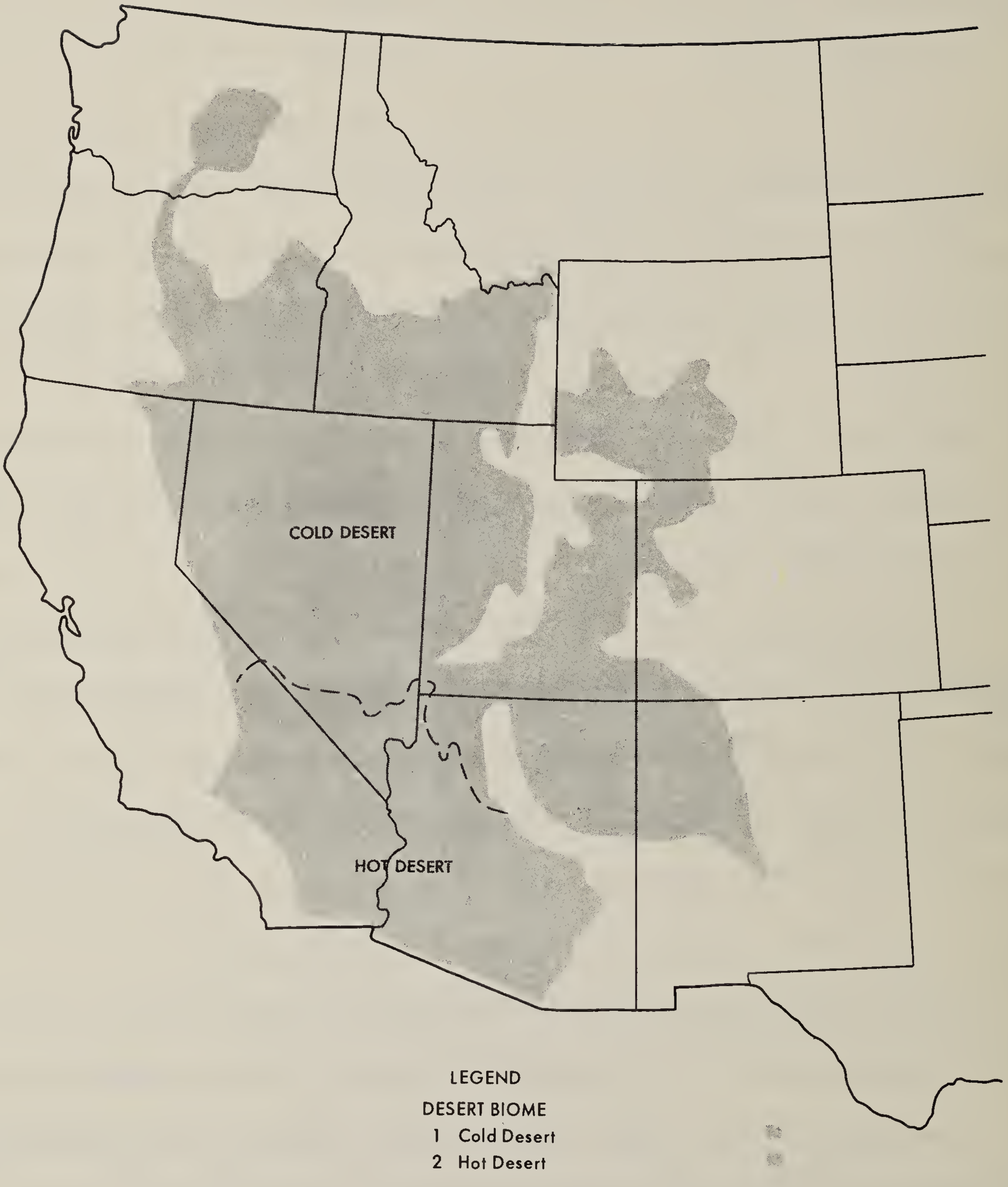


Figure II-15

(*Generally included within the desert biome boundary.)

DESERT BIOME

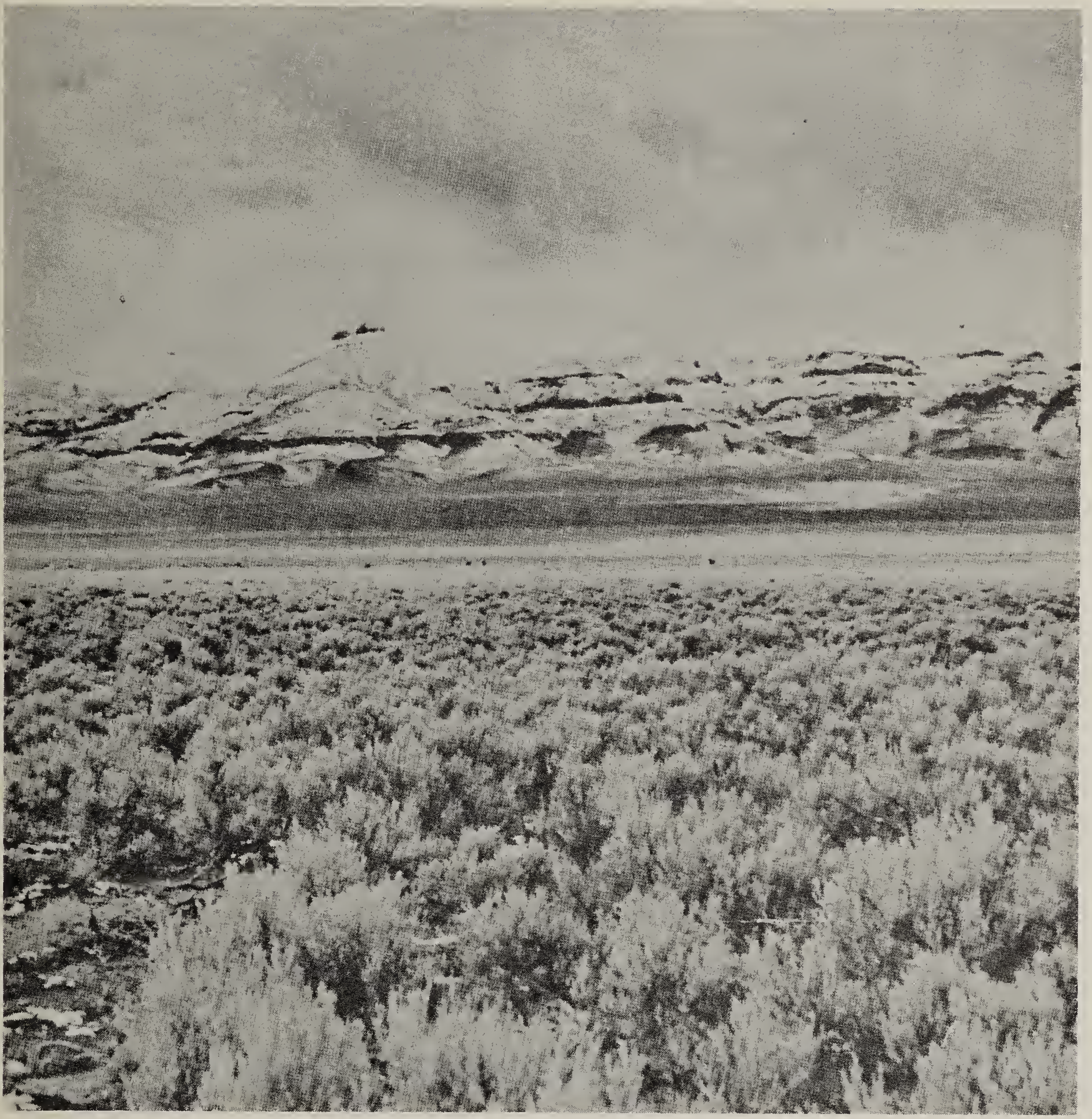


Figure II-16 The cold desert

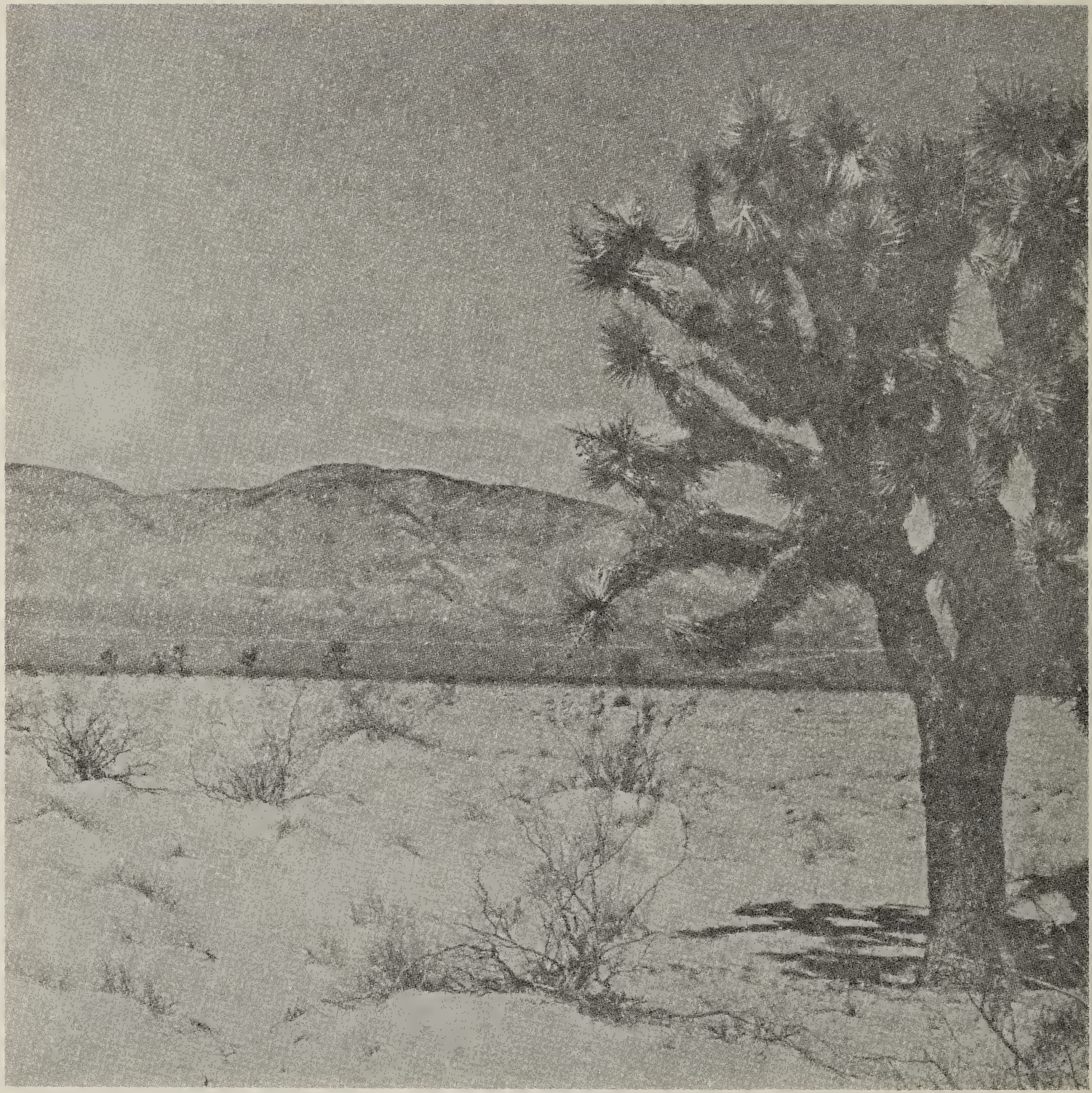


Figure II-17 The hot desert

a. Non-Living Components

(1) Topography

Much of the desert in Arizona, California, Nevada, and western Utah is comprised of basins flanked by low to high mountain ranges. In southeast Oregon and southwest Idaho, the Columbia Plateau contains plains, medium to high hills, and high-relief tablelands. The Colorado Plateau in eastern Utah, western Colorado, northern Arizona, and northwest New Mexico is characterized by moderate to high-relief tablelands and deep canyons.

(2) Soils

The cold desert contains three soil orders. The dominant order is the Aridisols. The Aridisols occur in south-central Idaho, southeastern Oregon, central Washington, Nevada, and western Utah. These soils occur contiguously over a large area in the desert. Aridisols are dry for a prolonged period each year and have light-colored surface soils.

Mollisols are the second most extensive soils in the cold desert. They occur in eastern Washington and Oregon, southeastern and southwestern Idaho, central and southwestern Utah, and northeastern California. The Mollisols in the cold desert are dry for a prolonged period each year.

Entisols are young and essentially nondeveloped. Entisols are formed in recent alluvium, recently stabilized sand dunes or on steep slopes subjected to rapid soil creep. Entisols are located in south-central Oregon, western Nevada, and central Utah.

The soils of the hot desert biome are Aridisols. The soils in southeastern California, southern Nevada, and southern Arizona are hot, dry, and low in fertility.

The Aridisols contain two suborders: Orgids and Orthids. Both suborders have a hardpan or duripan, but differ in structure and composition. The hardpan developed under the suborder Orgid is an accumulation of clays; under the suborder Orthid is found an accumulation of calcium carbonate, gypsum, and other salts.

The desert soils are highly susceptible to wind and water erosion because they are single-grained and easily detached. They are quite susceptible to erosion processes when disturbed by machines and removal of the vegetative cover. (Soil stability classes, the soil orders and series and major soil characteristics are described in the Appendix.)

(3) Minerals

Most of the copper produced in the United States comes from this biome. Many very large, low grade deposits are being mined. Coal and phosphates are being mined in the eastern portion of the cold desert. Other mineral operations occur throughout the biome. These include, but are not limited to silica, gypsum, sodium, perlite, gold, mercury, trona, iron ore, and tungsten. Oil shale extraction may begin in the eastern part of the cold desert. There are areas where the existence of hot springs and rock temperature gradients suggest that energy may be deveoped from geothermal sources. These are primarily in southern California, Nevada, Oregon, and Idaho. The Federal Government has recently begun a program of leasing areas for geothermal developments.

Leasing and exploration activity is increasing, especially in the Great Basin portion of the cold desert. Nearly all of the current production of oil and gas in the desert biome is limited to the eastern edge of the desert in Wyoming, Utah, Colorado, and New Mexico. The soil is thin to nonexistent in large areas. There is more rock exposure on the surface than in the grassland and coniferous forest biomes. This feature attracts mineral prospectors and rock hounds and makes surface geological studies relatively easy and accurate.

(4) Water

Parts of the Columbia-North Pacific, Great Basin, Upper Colorado, and Lower Colorado drainage basins are located in the desert biome. The major rivers of the biome are the Snake, Columbia, Humboldt, Green, and Colorado; they receive most of their runoff from precipitation in the higher elevations above the desert. Many streams within the arid desert biome are intermittent.

The Great Basin water resources region is a closed basin. Its surface waters drain into inland water bodies such as Great Salt Lake, Sevier Lake, Pyramid Lake, and Humboldt Sink.

Runoff from the desert is low and fluctuates widely from one year to the next. Average annual runoff ranges from less than 0.1 inch in the most arid sections of the hot and cold deserts to more than 2 inches in less arid parts of the cold desert.

The quality of surface water in the desert biome is adequate for most purposes. However, in the lower Colorado region and Great Basin, some surface waters have high dissolved-solids content and/or suspended-sediment concentrations. Average dissolved-solids content ranges from less than 100 ppm in part of the Columbia-North Pacific region to more than 1,800 ppm in some areas of the Great Basin and Lower Colorado regions. Average suspended-sediment concentrations range from less than 280 ppm in part of the Columbia-North Pacific region to more than 30,000 ppm in northern

Arizona and southwestern Utah. Suspended-sediment concentrations as high as 700,000 ppm have been measured during peak flows on some streams in the Colorado River system.

(5) Climate

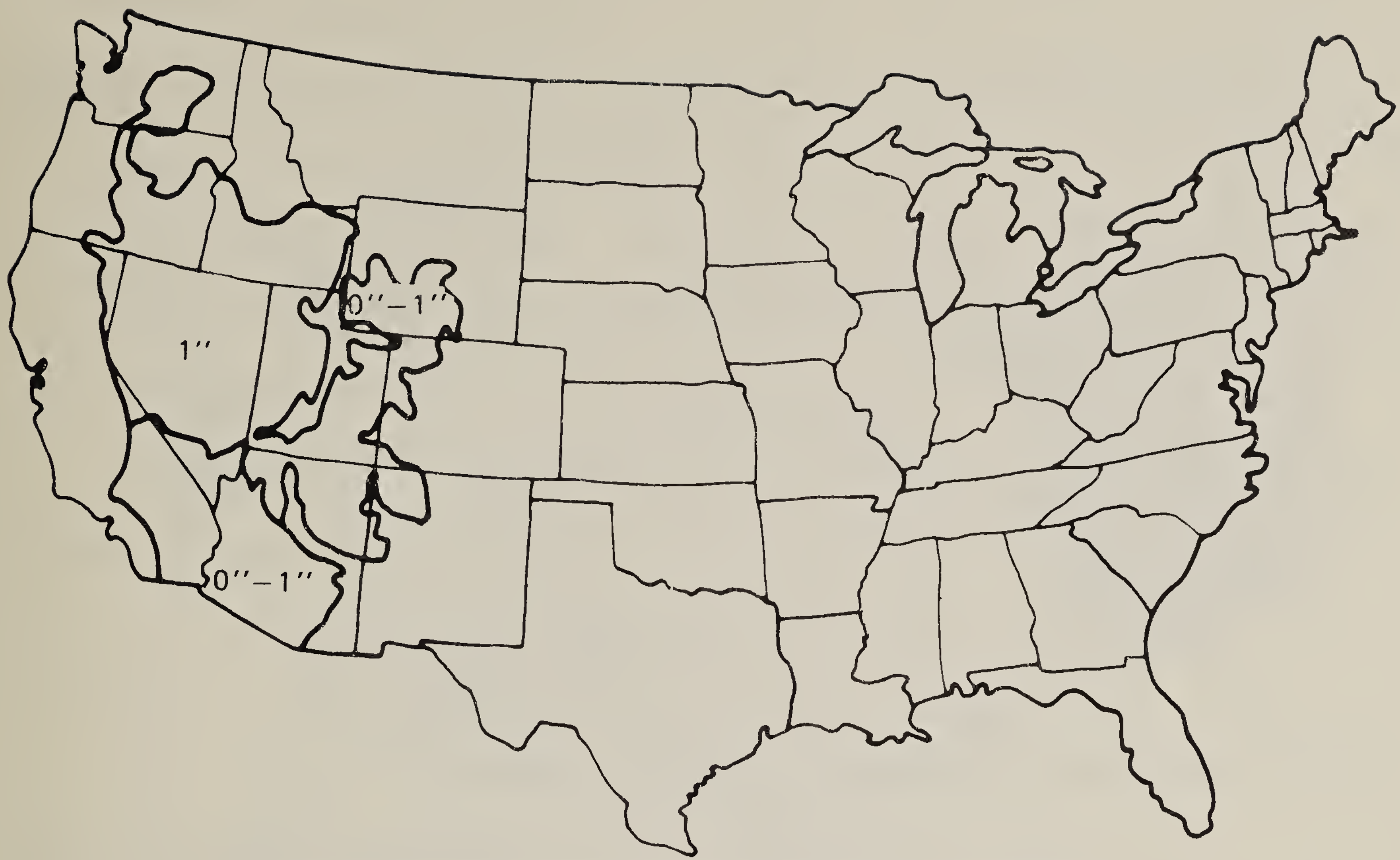
The climate of the desert biome is characterized by low, erratic precipitation, strong winds (especially in the spring), and hot summer temperatures.

The cold desert lies in a belt of westerly cyclonic storms. The storms bring most of the annual precipitation to most parts of the cold desert during winter and early spring months (Figure II-18). The average annual precipitation ranges from 4 inches in the desert valleys to 16 inches on the higher plateaus.

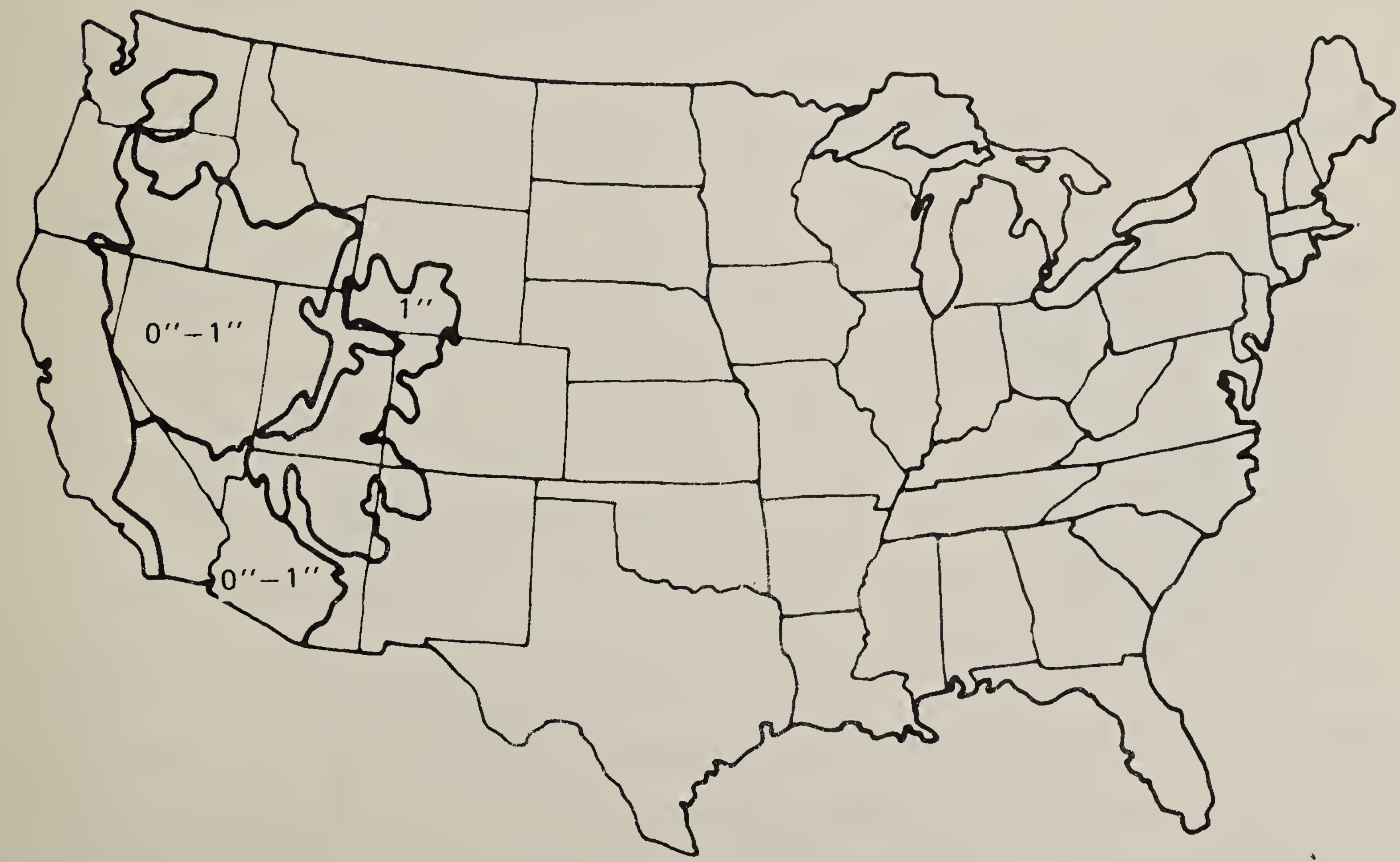
Temperatures range from 20° F. below zero to 115° F. Mean daily temperatures range from 20 °F. in January to 75° F. in July (Figure II-19).

Mean wind direction and velocities vary little between winter and summer. Spring is the windiest time of the year, with winds of 40 mph not uncommon. Strong spring winds carrying sand sculpture the desert landscape. Temperature inversions cause blankets of fog to cover inland basins for several days at a time. In some areas, the inversions trap pollutants and pose serious air pollution problems for relatively short periods.

Infrequent frontal systems in the hot desert bring some moisture in from the west and north during the winter. During the summer, scattered thunderstorms drop moisture in the desert. Infrequent penetrations of moisture occur from the Gulf of California, the Pacific, and the Gulf of Mexico. The average annual precipitation ranges from 2 inches in the lower Imperial Valley to 8 inches in the remainder of the area.

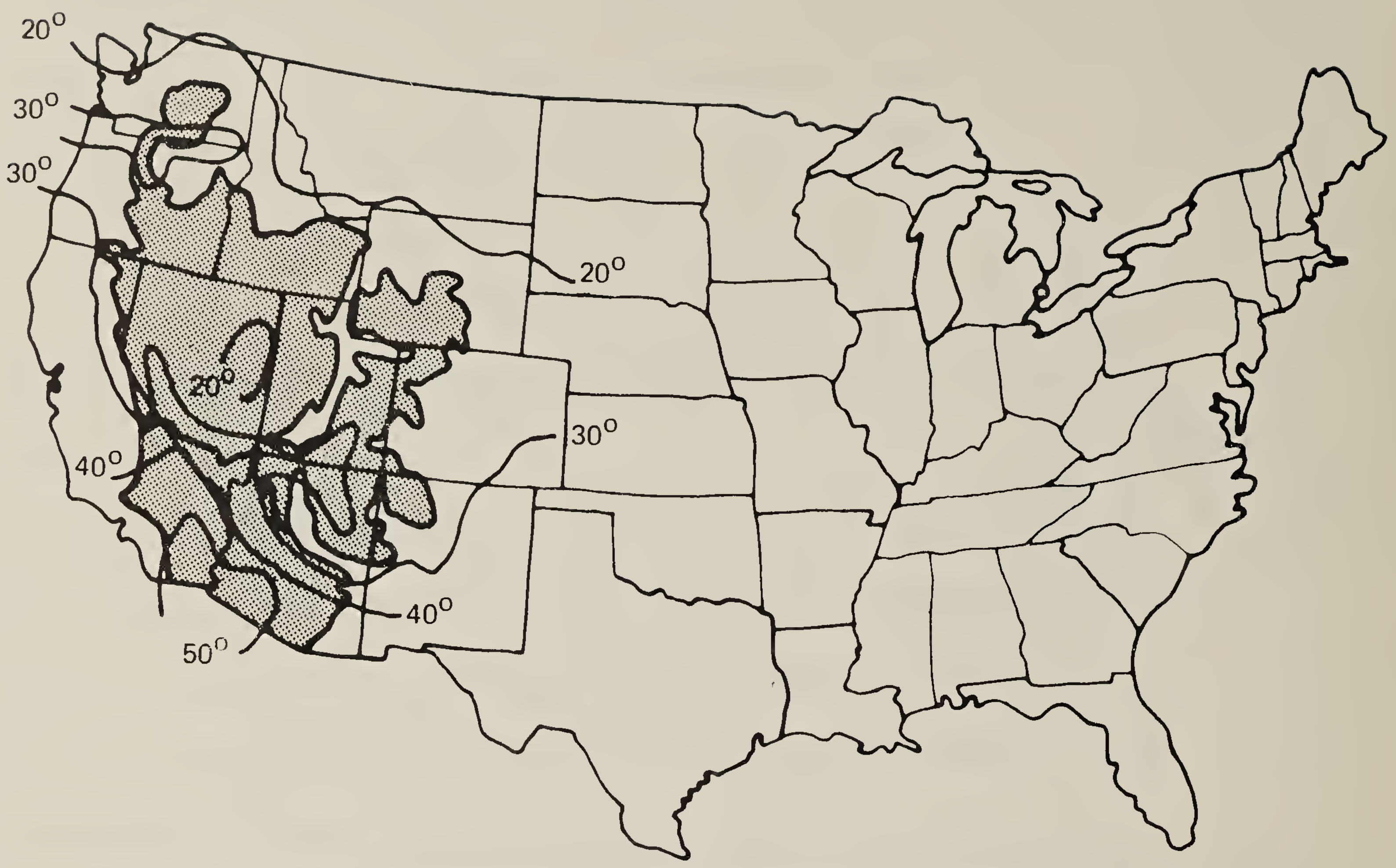


MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JANUARY



MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JULY

Figure II-18 Average January and July precipitation in the desert biome



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)—JANUARY

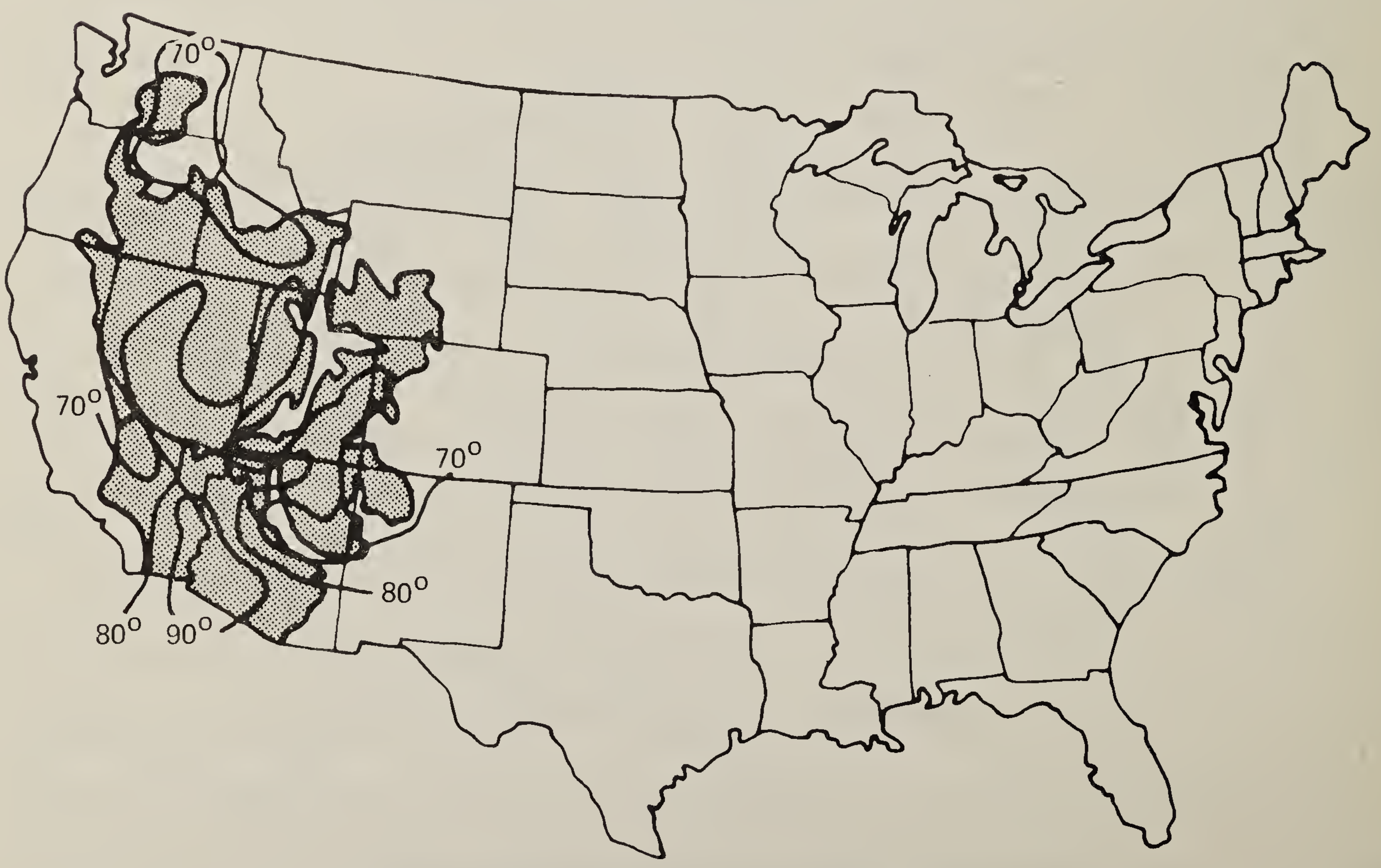


Figure II-19 AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)—JULY
Average daily temperatures in the desert biome in January and July

Temperatures range from 25° F. to 125° F. above zero. The mean daily temperature varies from 55° F. to above 90° F. in July (Figure II-19).

Spring months tend to be windy, and sand-carrying winds of over 40 mph are not uncommon. Late summer thunderstorms are more common in the hot desert than in all sections of the cold desert except central Wyoming; in that area, thunderstorms occur 40 to 50 days per year.

Climate varies widely from one area to another and from one year to another in the desert biome.

b. Living Components

(1) Vegetation

The desert supports an extensive community of plants. Four life forms are common:

- The annuals, which adapt to drought by growing only when mositure is adequate.

- The succulents, such as the cacti, which adapt to drought by storing water.

- The desert shrubs, which have numerous branches originating from a short basal trunk bearing small, thick leaves that may be shed during prolonged dry periods (Odum, 1959, 1971).

- Perennial grasses and forbs.

All desert vegetation has a highly characteristic spaced distribution. Individual plants are thinly scattered and separated by large bare areas. The extensive bare ground, however, is not always free of plants. Mosses, algae, and lichens may form a stabilizing crust and function as nitrogen-fixing agents.

The cold desert is characterized by sagebrush, greasewood, shadscale, and saltbrush. Creosote bush, yucca, and cactus typify the hot desert. A considerable amount of grass is mixed with the shrubs in many parts of both deserts.

Unlike the grasslands and the forests, where vegetative renewal on disturbed areas is relatively rapid and succeeds through distinctive stages, succession in the desert is very difficult to observe and may not occur except on flood plains. The vegetation on most areas may be essentially climax (Shelford, 1963). Oosting (1950) distinguishes four desert areas on the basis of regional environments and by the nature and importance of major dominants. These are the Great Basin, Mojave, Sonoran, and Chihuahua deserts. In each of these, communities occur with minor variations and these may be recognized as climax. Other equal important permanent communities are found only in special habitats. "Succession, as ordinarily conceived, is almost nonexistent since reaction of the vegetation is negligible. Unless there is marked disturbance, most communities remain indefinitely unchanged and dominant in their special habitats" (Oosting, 1950).

(2) Animals

(a) Terrestrial Wildlife

Animals have adapted to the environment of the desert in unique ways. Animal life in the biome is characterized by mammals which are fleet of foot; mammals which move by jumping or with a ricocheting locomotion; mammals with a keen sense of hearing; burrowing vertebrates and various insects--all having an extreme physiological adaptation to food scarcity and absence of free water (Allee, 1949). Some desert animals, such as the kangaroo rat and pocket mouse, do not need to drink water. Others drink water only occasionally. Birds of the desert obtain sufficient water from foods, occasional dew, and free water sources. Many animals of the hot desert avoid extreme temperatures by burrowing or occupying caves; many are nocturnal.

More than 750 species and subspecies of birds and mammals live in the desert. Mule deer, bighorn sheep, antelope, sage grouse, chukar partridge, and quail occur in suitable habitat of the desert. Many of the species may occupy only the fringes of the desert, and then only seasonally. Carnivores in the desert are small and usually nocturnal. Species of kangaroo rats and pocket mice are found throughout the hot desert; both are nocturnal burrowers.

Animals of the Lower Colorado River Desert include the mule deer, bighorn sheep, jack rabbit, desert coyote, kit fox, antelope ground squirrel, cave bat, big brown bat, leaf-nosed bat, lesser nighthawk, roadrunner, and Gambel quail.

THe Sonoran Desert provides a habitat for mule deer, bighorn sheep, the ringtail, spotted skunk, wood rat, peccary, Gila woodpecker, numerous small birds, bullsnake, three species of rattlesnake, and eight species of lizards. The Gila monster is typical of the tall cactus community. The river bottoms and flood plains include some 32 kinds of birds.

The Mojave Desert has fewer species of pocket mice and the Gila monsters are of more limited occurrence. Otherwise, many of the animals--with some differences in subspecies--are the same as those in the Sonoran Desert, with the desert iguana and desert tortoise being common. Death Valley, an example of desert habitat, has 39 desert mammals and approximately

100 species of birds (Shelford, 1963). Certain insects perform critical functions in the desert, such as the Yucca moth which pollinates the Joshua tree.

Many of the hot desert animals are found in the sagebrush and shadscale of the cold desert. Major tenants, however, are the Great Basin coyote, badger, antelope, mule deer (locally), great horned owl, prairie falcon, Swainson's hawk, golden and bald eagles, horned lark, and horned toad.

(b) Aquatic Wildlife

Aquatic environments are limited in the desert biome. Diversions of water for agriculture and other uses have impaired some aquatic communities such as the deterioration of fish habitat in Pyramid and Walker Lakes, Nevada--the home of Lahontan cutthroat trout and the depleted cui-ui sucker (Lower Colorado Region Comprehensive Study, 1971).

Water quality varies from the high quality desert-mountain snow water to such low quality alkaline lakes as the Salton Sea.

Desert aquatic environments have been altered by the construction of large reservoirs--Lakes Powell and Mead--and many small irrigation and stock watering reservoirs. Exotic species such as black bass, crappie, carp, sunfish, coho salmon, and striped bass have been introduced in some reservoirs. The Corvina, Sargo, and Bairdiella have been introduced in the Salton Sea. Most of these introductions have been successful while many endemic species have declined.

(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife

Many threatened or endangered species of wildlife are recognized in the desert biome. These include, but are not limited to: Utah prairie dog, Sonoran pronghorn, masked bobwhite quail, Yuma clapper rail, southern bald eagle, American peregrine falcon, and Desert Slender Salamander (U.S. Department of the Interior, 1974).

There are more threatened species of fish in the desert than in any other biome. This is due in part to the many isolated watersheds and the precarious nature of many water bodies. Typical species include: Devil's Hole pupfish, Owens River pupfish, Woundfin, Pahrump killifish, Gila topminnow, and Colorado squawfish.

(d) Domestic Livestock

The desert biome produces a variety of forage species suitable for domestic livestock forage. Both cattle and sheep are grazed throughout the biome.

Because of variations in climate in the cold desert, livestock grazing may occur during any season depending on location. In the northern third of the biome, livestock grazing is very limited in the winter season because of severe winter storms. Spring and fall grazing is most common with some winter grazing of sheep occurring where the climate permits.

Parts of the hot desert are grazed by cattle yearlong. Some sheep grazing occurs, but it is limited to the winter season.

In about one year out of five, unusually abundant precipitation in the hot desert produces a good crop of winter annuals. Livestock grazing increases during the brief period the annuals are available.

Although forage is especially suitable for sheep grazing, the number of sheep in the desert has declined over the years generally because of economic factors.

Past trends in the number of sheep have definitely been downward throughout the desert biome. Between 1964 and 1969 the 11 Western States experienced an 11 percent decline in sheep numbers. The most likely explanation lies in consumer preference for other types of red meat and the substituion of synthetic fibers for wool. Other factors affecting the sheep industry are high labor costs, loss to predators, real estate opportunities, and social mores.

(e) Wild Horses and Burros

Bands of wild horses and wild burros roam several ranges in the hot desert uplands and remote areas of the cold desert.

The greatest number of wild horses and burros on NRL occurs in the intermingled cold desert biome and the pinon-juniper type of the woodland-bushland biome. About 90 percent of the estimated 17,000 wild horses occur in this association, with Nevada having the most and the widest distribution. Competition with livestock and wildlife for forage does occur. Distribution of wild horses is limited to remote, less accessible portions of the public lands inhabited by deer and antelope. An estimated 10,000 wild burros populate the hot desert region of Arizona, California, and Nevada, where competition for forage with other grazing animals may be locally significant.

(f) Human

About 17 percent of the western states' population resides in this biome. Except for the hot desert region of southern Nevada, California, and Arizona, the desert biome has one of the lowest population densities in the West--around five persons per square mile. Urban populations are clustered around the major trade and service centers such as Phoenix, Salt Lake City, Las Vegas, Reno, Boise, and the urban areas of California.

In the rural areas, per capita income levels are about 85 percent of the western average, but relatively fewer families are below poverty levels due to lower living costs. In spite of the low incomes, most of the biome experienced a net population gain during the 1960-1970 period. Population increased from 1960 to 1970 by 29 percent or an average annual increase of 2.9 percent, which is slightly above the western states' average.

The entire area is dependent upon a limited water resource. Principal industuries in rural parts of the biome are agriculture and mining. Urban centers tend to be new and modern, with growing manufacturing and service oriented industries. The Reno and Las Vegas areas have expanded entertainment and tourist service into a major industry (U.S. Water Resources Council, 1968).

One of the reasons for significant population and economic growth in the biome during recent years has been its "amenity" resources: clear air, warm and cloudless weather, low population, and ready access to outdoor recreation areas. Tourism and recreation are growing rapidly. Subdivisions and sale of lands for retirement or recreational use are mushrooming in many rural areas. In urban areas, the "quality environment," ready access to services, education institutions, and a labor market form a magnet for industries for which ties to raw material sources or national market centers are not a major constraint. Typical of these are apparel, electronics, and aircraft industries (Friedmann and Alonso, 1964).

The livestock industry of the desert biome ranks between the grassland and coniferous forest biomes in terms of economic importance to local incomes. However, the livestock industry in this biome is much more dependent on national resource lands as a source of feed than in either of the other two. For example, in the Great Basin Area (central and northern Nevada, western Utah, southwestern Idaho, and southeastern Oregon), the national resource lands account for about 60 percent of the total land areas and provide about 20 percent of the total livestock feed. On the other hand, in the hot desert area, national resource lands account for about 38 percent of the land area, but provide only around 3 percent of the feed consumed. The high concentration of feedlot operations in this region accounts for much of the difference between the two regions. For the biome as a whole, the NRL supply 5,990,000 cattle AUM's and 1,970,000 sheep AUM's.

c. Ecological Interrelationships

Desert ecosystems are exceptionally vulnerable to improper use and may reflect this quickly through accelerated wind erosion and in other ways. Recovery rates are slow. Although the desert has been the subject of many studies and books, the interrelationships of the desert ecosystems are not well known. Additional studies are needed, especially in view of the delicate ecological balances of the desert ecosystems. The disturbance of vegetative cover and loosening of soil, as in road construction, can result in rapid invasion of such non-native plants as halogeton, causing an entirely different ecological relationship in the immediate area.

Precipitation is low in desert ecosystems and varies considerably from year to year. Evapotranspiration is high, particularly in the hot desert and southern portions of the cold desert. The limited soil moisture in southern parts of the desert limits the potential for production of living components of the ecosystem.

Solar radiation is high in the desert, but the amount of energy captured by photosynthesis is greatly reduced due to the limited moisture and sparse vegetation. Such factors reduce the productive capacity of the desert and shorten the food chain.

The nutrient cycle occurs slowly in the desert because of the slow rate of decomposition. Large quantities of nutrients are tied up in the shrubby vegetative biomass. Man's use of the desert has altered the balance of the nutrient cycle in some areas. Additional data are needed to fully understand this component of the ecosystem and analyze impacts.

North American deserts are not generally considered to have been influenced by fire because their scant or sparsely scattered vegetation appears incapable of supporting fire; but Vogl (1967) found it difficult to accept that some 270,000 square miles of desert could have escaped the influence of fire. He believed the incidence of fire possible because desert vegetation is highly flammable and subject to periodic lightning. Thus, only infrequent fire would be necessary to produce pronounced effect, since plant succession is slow in the extremely harsh and dry desert environment.

A desert grassland type occurs in parts of the Sonoran Desert in Arizona and has been considered a fire type (Humphrey 1962). Vogl (1967) cited fire influences on fan palm oases, desert scrub, and desert woodlands. Fires limit the dominance of pinon pines and junipers in the desert woodland, at the same time appearing important in the production and maintenance of pure Joshua tree stands.

Cable (1972) summarized the results of over 20 years of research on the effects of burning on semidesert grasses and shrubs in southern Arizona, indicating that shrubs are most susceptible to burning in June. Some shrub species are highly susceptible to burning, others are relatively resistant and others are intermediate. The lack of sufficient herbaceous fuels in most years often limits the scope of fire effects on shrubs. Cacti are moderately susceptible to fire, depending on presence of sufficient fuel.

d. Human Interest Values

(1) Land Uses

Most of the land in the desert biome is owned by the Federal Government. Extensive areas are used for military operations and other government purposes, such as Atomic Energy Commission test grounds. Most of the Federal lands in the biome are national resource lands administered by the Bureau of Land Management.

The native vegetation covering a major part of the biome is used for livestock grazing, the most extensive agricultural activity in the biome. Both cattle and sheep are grazed in the desert. The former are primarily cow-calf operations; the latter are oriented toward lamb production. Natural vegetative productivity for grazing decreases, generally, from north to south in the biome. Parts of the hot desert are marginal grazing lands, and some areas are unsuitable for livestock use.

Irrigated crops in the cold desert include potatoes, sugar beets, grains, and hay. Subtropical fruits, cotton, and specialty crops are grown in the hot desert. Large areas of irrigable soils remain unirrigated in the desert because of inadequate water supplies.

A few areas in the biome have been formally designated and managed as wilderness, primitive, or roadless areas. Additional areas containing native vegetation and lacking significant development (such as roads, buildings, or other facilities) may be considered for formal designation as land use planning progresses.

Mining was responsible for much of the original settlement of the biome. Many of the early towns started as gold or silver camps. Mining continues today to be a primary industry in the states of Colorado, Arizona, New Mexico, Utah, and Wyoming. The exploration and production of oil and gas make a significant impact on the economy and environment in the desert biome.

The desert is extensively used for outdoor recreation. Heaviest use occurs near large population centers. The western part of the hot desert adjacent to the Los Angeles-Las Vegas-Phoenix urban areas receives extremely heavy use.

The limited surface waters in the biome are heavily used for recreation activities. Heavy offroad vehicle use is occurring close to urban areas.

Metropolitan areas in the desert have grown rapidly in recent years. The Las Vegas urban population increased 165 percent between 1960 and 1970 (U.S. Bureau of Census, 1971). The urbanized area increased from 35 square miles to 121 square miles. Other metropolitan areas such as Phoenix and Salt Lake City experienced similar growth. The extraordinary growth of metropolitan areas in the desert may continue for several decades. If so, large areas of adjacent rural land may be required for expansion.

Urban areas in the biome are separated by vast areas of open space.

Smaller cities serving a local market area or developing a tourism-recreation industry probably will experience an increased demand for residential, commercial, and industrial land uses.

Demand for recreational or retirement homesites in remote areas probably will continue to increase.

(2) Aesthetics

The term "desert" for many people carries with it a connotation of sand dunes and desolation. While it is somewhat inhospitable for man, the connotation is far from accurate. It may, however, be partly responsible for the lack of development and use of the desert in the past. People are just now discovering the desert for the wide variety of interest it really has. There are sand dunes in both the cold and hot deserts, but they involve a very minor part of the area as a whole. The dunes are one more interesting facet of the desert that people are finding more and more enjoyable.

Although there are many similar characteristics throughout, the desert biome can be more clearly described in the two separate sections.

The landform of the cold desert is typically the flat dry bed of an ancient lake or the relatively low rolling hills of the Great Basin, occasionally interrupted by a small mountain range. In southern Idaho and Oregon the landform is broken by considerable areas of rimrock and often cut by deep canyons. Seldom is the observer out of sight of a mountain somewhere in the area of view. Texture of the cold desert is generally the relatively soft texture of the vast expanses of sagebrush broken occasionally by a bare ridgeline, a steep gully, or a flat dry lakebed.

Except for dawn and sunset, color is rather monotonous in the cold desert. It is generally dominated by the gray-green of sagebrush or the flat grays and browns of the soil typical to the region. Soil color becomes a more important factor in some portions of the cold desert such as in Wyoming, Colorado, and New Mexico where the red sandstones make up the parent material.

Lines play a very minor role in the makeup of the character of the cold desert. Lines that are evident are primarily those caused by man: roads, fences, and powerlines that occasionally cross through the area. Although these intrusions are few, they are obvious for many miles.

As in the grassland, scale is difficult to define. Vastness of open space with few vertical elements in the landscape make it hard to tell just how far an observer is from a given object.

The character of the hot desert is considerably different than that of the cold desert. Form is more often remnants of eroded mesas with broad flat valley bottoms. Where live streams run through the desert, they often are actively eroding the land; and steep, sometimes vertical-walled canyons are incised into once flat mesas. Prime examples of this area are the canyons of the Lower Colorado River.

There are distinct horizontal and vertical lines evident in the mesa tops and sharp dropoffs to the valley floors. Color becomes a dominant factor in the hot desert. Rich reds and browns of exposed soil and rocks are much more in evidence than in the sage-covered cold desert.

Texture is fairly coarse because of the widely scattered vegetation. Rock and soil are exposed over much more area.

Scale is much easier to define in the hot desert. Vertical lines created by edges of eroding mesas along with the larger and more scattered vegetation provide the observer with the elements needed to more accurately judge size and distance.

Sounds are quite important in the desert biome. The fact that sound travels great distances because of sparse vegetation and long uninterrupted stretches of topography is important to the visitor. In many areas, silence is unique to the desert.

(3) Geological

Deserts have some of the most monotonous sightseeing geology and some of the most intriguing. The basin and range areas of Nevada tend to be somewhat repetitive with long sweeping views of the basins and short quick trips through the mountain ranges.

Certain areas, particularly the Colorado Plateau, are highly eroded, mostly in colorful formations which contain delicate erosional features, easily recognizable "picture book" geological structures, and grand views of the total. Scattered throughout the biome are some of the most magnificent canyons in the world, the Grand Canyon, the canyons of the Snake, the Owyhee, the Green, and others. Also present are sand dunes, volcanic features, playas, and fault structures.

(4) Archeological

In the desert biome are found remnants of both Big-Game Hunting Tradition and Old Cordilleran Tradition cultures, the former to the east and south and the latter to the north and west. Hunters in southeast Arizona hunted mammoths along with other big game. People in the Nevada desert were mostly gatherers, but did hunt small game, including waterfowl, around the many Pleistocene lakes in the region.

These two traditions developed into what is termed the Desert Culture Tradition, a basic gathering culture that existed on the many grasses, pinons, insects, small game, and other products of the hot and cold deserts.

From this desert archaic base there developed, as the result of strong influences from the valleys of Mexico, several agricultural cultures in the hot desert and the southern portions of the cold desert.

Irrigation farming was practiced, large communal structures constructed, and highly organized and structured social systems developed. At the same time period, there also were people with the Desert Archaic Tradition still coexisting and others like the Apachean groups moving into the desert area. This was the situation at the time of first non-Indian contact (by the Spanish explorers) in the early 1500's.

Large archeological sites of the desert biome are quite easy to detect, but attention paid to these sites tends to allow other, less pretentious sites like agricultural terraces, campsites, chipping areas, small canals, and shallow caves to be destroyed.

There is almost a one-to-one relationship between archeological sites and water sources in the desert. Water sources were as important to prehistoric man as to modern man.

(5) Historical

Like most of the West, history of the desert biome is generally so recent that some individuals still living there have seen many of the important historical events that have taken place.

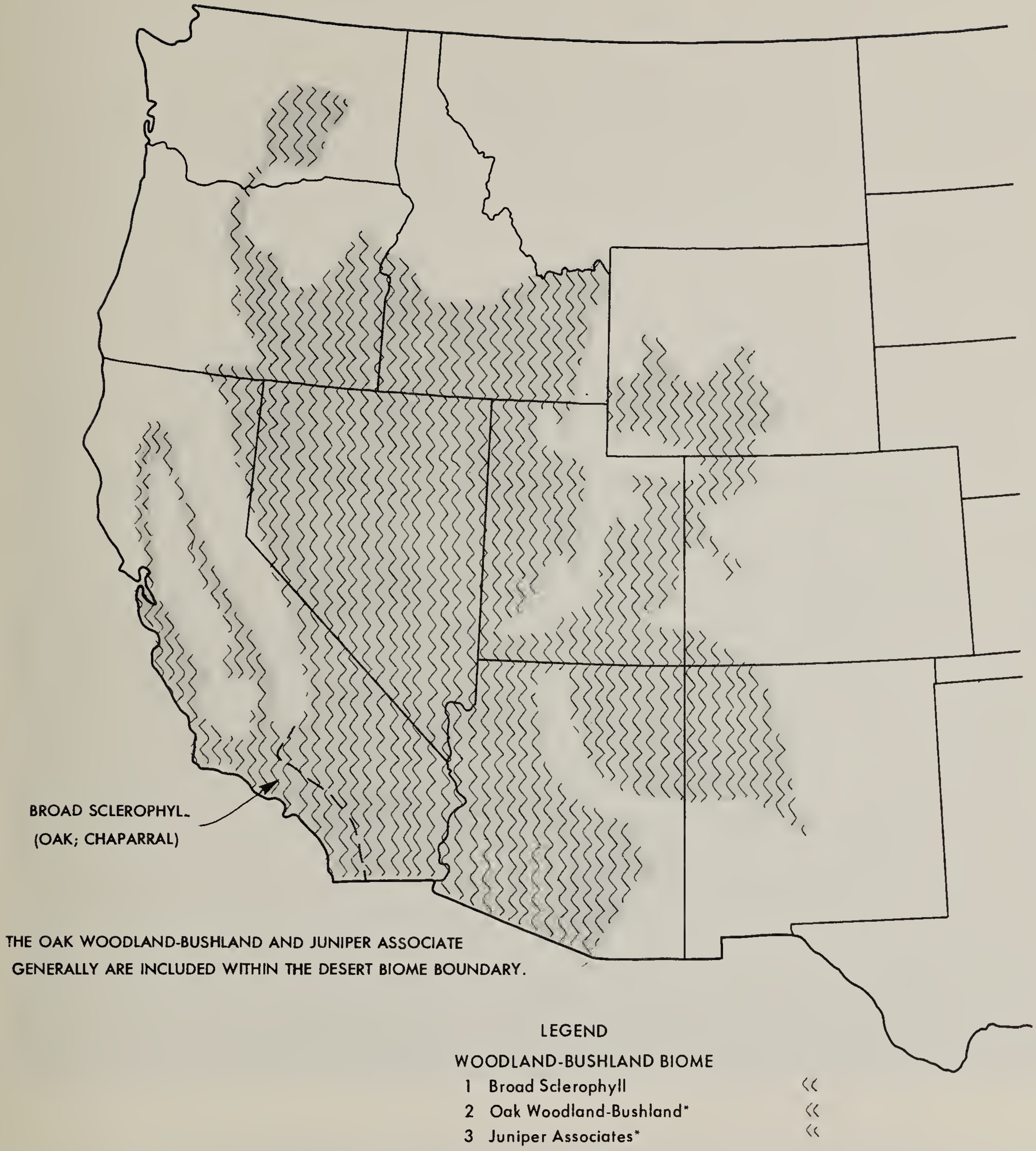
Most of the settlement has taken place in the last 100 years. Only in southern parts of the hot desert is civilization older due to the Spanish and Mexican settlement. The Great Basin portion of the cold desert is the least inhabited area in the country with history revolving around mining ghost towns and the ranching industry. In the hot desert, irrigation agriculture has been a way of life from prehistoric times. Other than these influences, historical values are similar to those of the grasslands.

(6) Cultural

There are some interesting cultural-ethnic and religious groups in the desert biome. Throughout the western United States a "rancher-cowboy" culture predominates in many areas. In Nevada and southwest Idaho are groups of Basques originally brought to this country as sheepherders from the Pyrenees Mountains of Spain. In Utah, and parts of Arizona, Nevada, Idaho, and Wyoming are concentrations of Mormons, a religious group which is a minority in the United States, but a majority group in the desert biome. The Yaquis near Tucson are native Americans living here as a political refugee group from Mexico. A great number of native Indian Americans live on reservations in the biome. These range from farmers like the Pimas and Papagos to hunting-gathering peoples like the Yavapai and Paiutes. All of the Indian groups have a strong attachment to the lands around their areas of settlement.

3. Woodland-Bushland Biome

The woodland-bushland biome occurs in many parts of the western United States. It is discontinuous, occurring as biological islands at higher elevations within the grassland and desert biomes. It also forms a transitional zone between those biomes and the coniferous forest biome. Its general range is shown in Figure II-20. Many of its vegetative characteristics are similar to the cold desert. Figures II-21, II-22, and II-23 illustrate the oak woodland-bushland, broad sclerophyll, and the pinon-juniper communities, the three species associations in the biome.



THE OAK WOODLAND-BUSHLAND AND JUNIPER ASSOCIATE GENERALLY ARE INCLUDED WITHIN THE DESERT BIOME BOUNDARY.

(*Generally included within the desert biome boundary.)

FIGURE II-20 WOODLAND-BUSHLAND BIOME

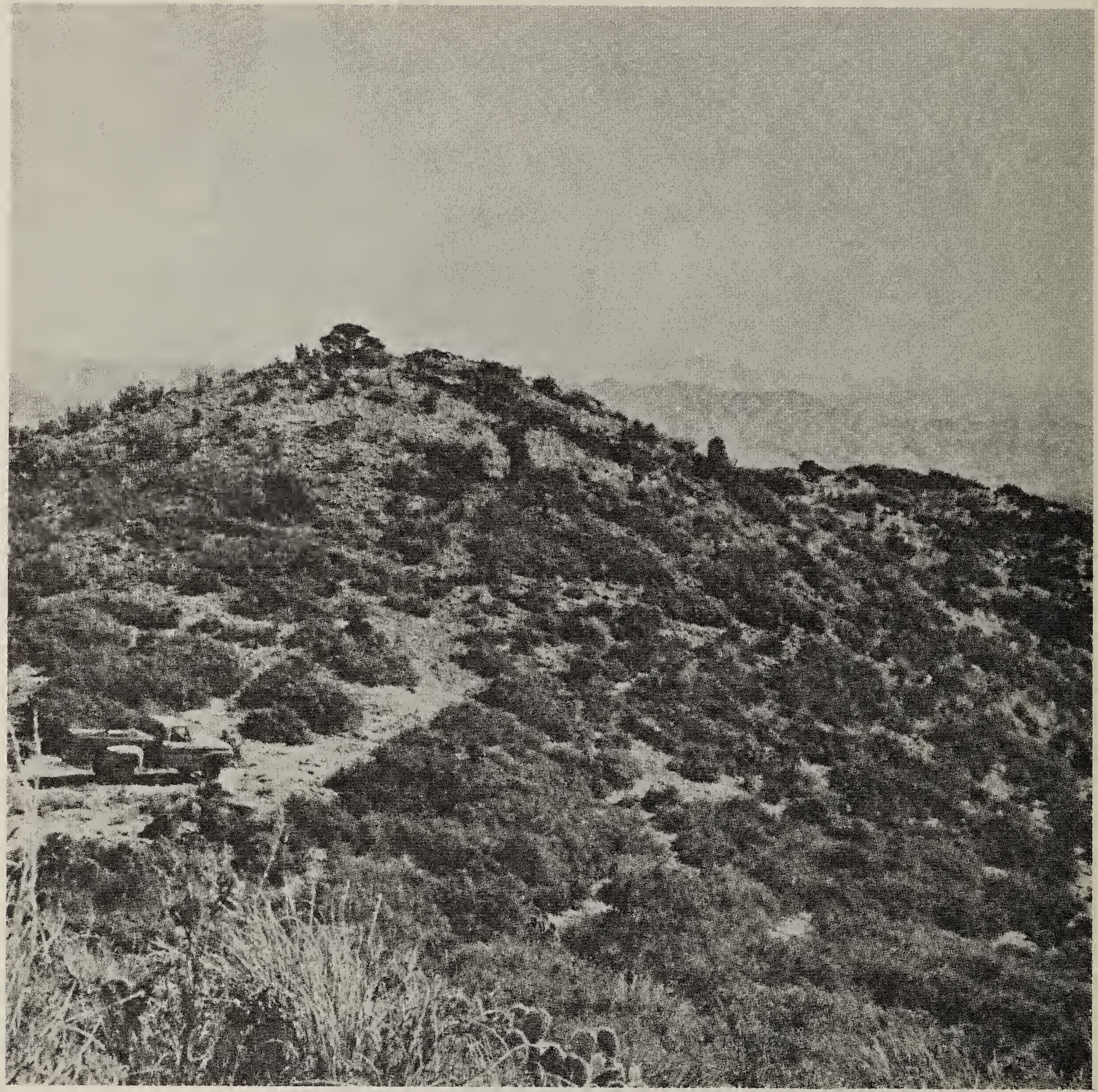


Figure II-21 The oak woodland-bushland community

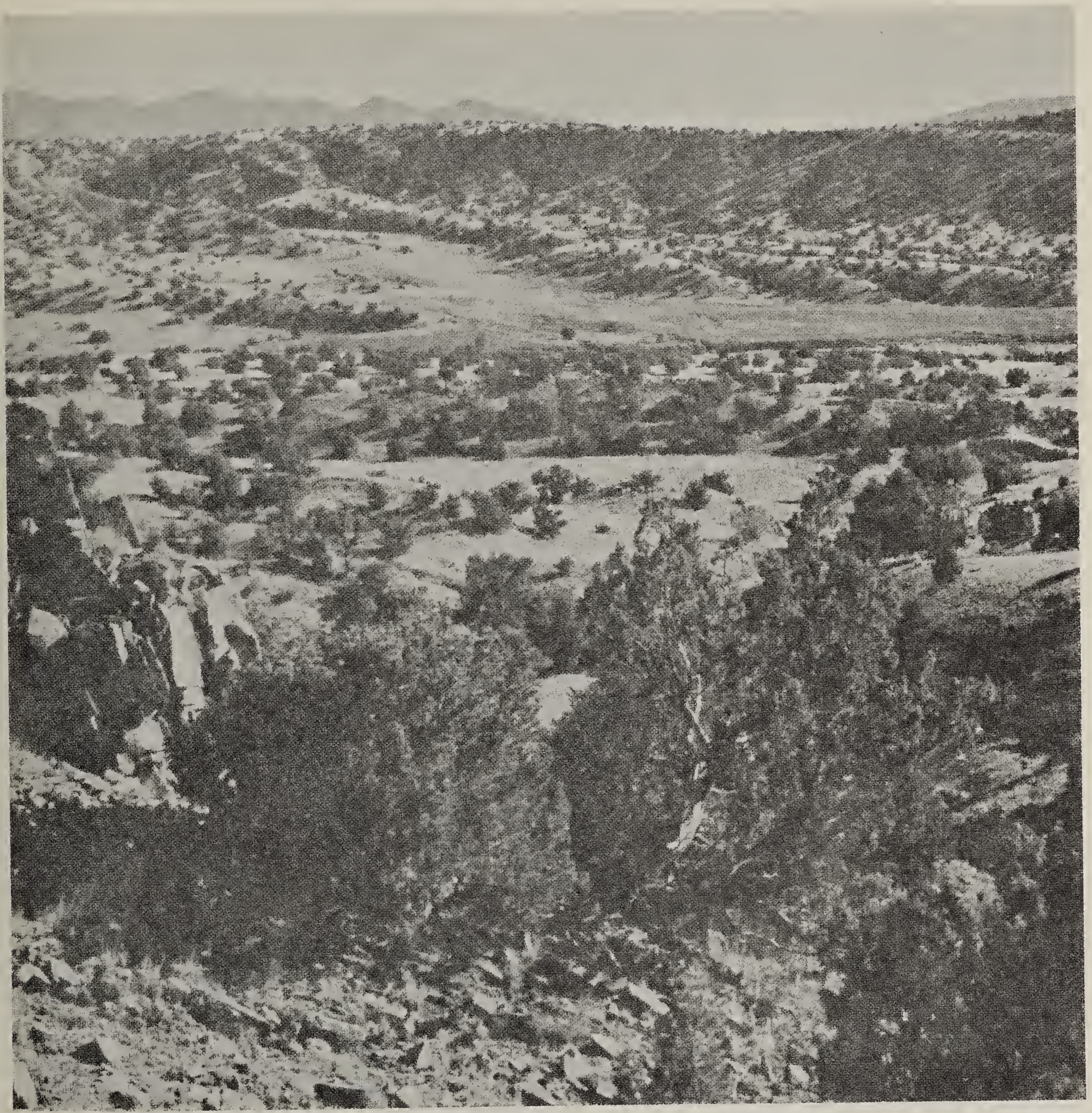


Figure II-22 The pinon-juniper community

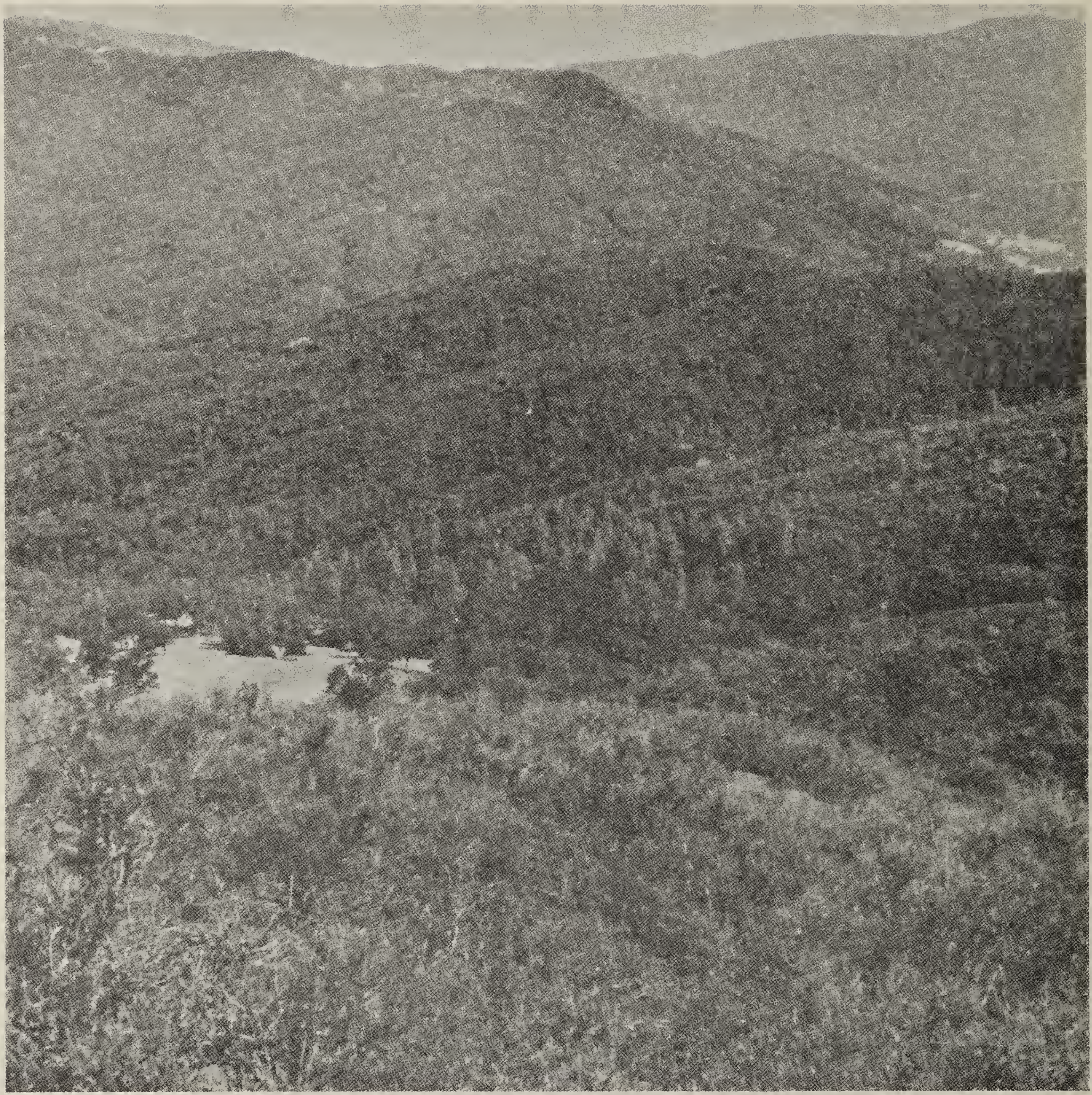


Figure II-23 The broad sclerophyll (oak-chapparal) community

a. Non-Living Components

(1) Topography

Much of the woodland-bushlands are located on the high hills and mesas in and adjacent to the deserts. The description of the topography of the desert biome applies to much of the woodland-bushland biome.

The woodland-bushland in California is located in the foothills surrounding the San Joaquin Valley and the mountains and foothills of the southwestern part of the state.

(2) Soils

Soils in most of the woodland-bushlands have a slightly higher organic content, are more stable, and are less susceptible to erosion than most soils in the desert. The description of the soils in the desert biome applies to much of the woodland-bushland biome.

Most of the woodland-bushland soils around the San Joaquin Valley are Aridisols with warm-dry surfaces. The soils in the foothills along the west coast are either Entisols or Mollisols and also have warm, dry surfaces. (Soil stability classes, the soil orders and series, and major soil characteristics are described in the Appendix.)

(3) Minerals

Coal occurs in parts of eastern Utah, Colorado, and New Mexico. Deposits of uranium also occur in these areas. Vast deposits of oil shale occur in Colorado, Wyoming, and Utah. Oil and gas are found in Wyoming and in the four corners area of Colorado, Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico. Other oil and gas fields are scattered throughout the biome. The famous mother lode country of California is in the bushland region of the biome.

(4) Water

Water resources vary considerably from one area to another in the woodland-bushland biome. Most of the surface water is supplied by rivers and streams with headwaters in the forests above the woodland-bushland.

The woodland-bushland areas generally receive from 12 to 25 inches of mean annual precipitation; however, the California oak-chaparral receives up to 50 inches per year. Both intermittent and perennial streams are found in the woodland-bushland areas. The intermittent streams are particularly common in juniper woodlands. Flood waters of intermittent streams generally carry considerable silt. High-intensity summer thunderstorms are typical of the juniper areas and flood runoffs are common.

Where annual precipitation averages from 10 to 15 inches per year, annual runoff ranges from 0.1 to 5.0 inches per year. Where an average of 15 to 25 inches of precipitation falls per year, annual runoff may range from 0.5 to more than 10 inches. In the California oak-chaparral area, average runoff may be as high as 20 inches.

The quality of most surface waters within the woodland-bushland areas is generally acceptable for most uses. However, some streams in juniper areas have a high silt content. Average dissolved-solids content in surface waters ranges from less than 100 ppm to more than 1,800 ppm. Average sediment concentration of streamflow varies from less than 280 ppm in the oak woodlands to more than 30,000 ppm in some of the juniper associate areas.

(5) Climate

Climate conditions vary significantly within the woodland-bushland biome. The woodlands east of the Sierra Nevada range are comparatively dry because of the mountains' rain-shadow effect; woodlands in the California foothills are influenced by moisture-laden marine air.

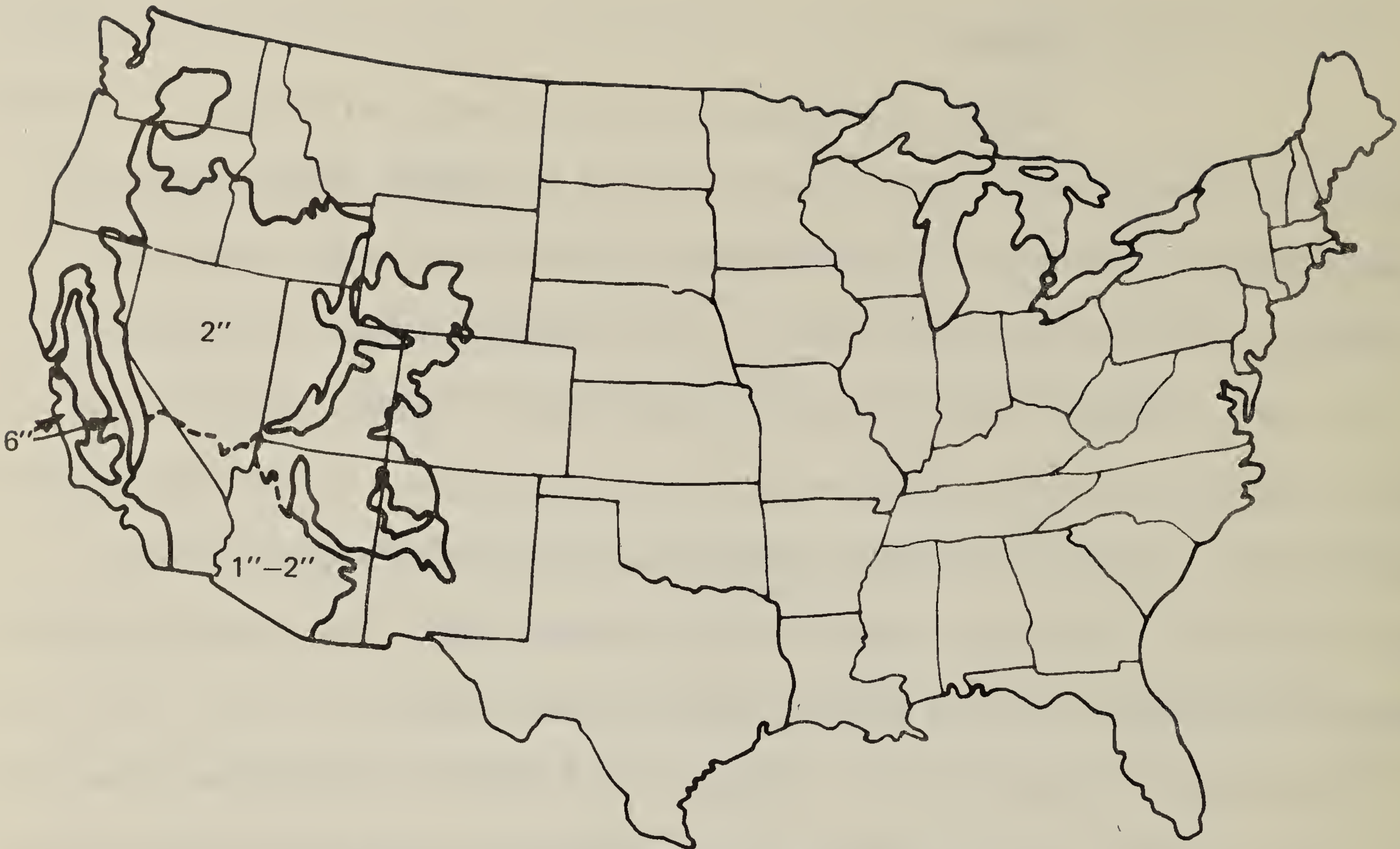
In the woodlands on the foothills above the cold desert, about 75 percent of the annual precipitation falls during the winter. In the woodlands above the hot desert, the precipitation is somewhat even throughout the year; the months of July and August bring the most rain. The average annual precipitation ranges from 10 to 20 inches (Figure II-24).

Temperatures range from 20° F. below zero to 100° F. above; the mean daily temperatures vary from 20° F. in January to 85° F. in July (Figure II-25).

Windiness, especially in the spring, is characteristic of the woodlands in the desert foothills. Dust devils frequently accompany thunderstorms on hot days. Winds of 40 mph are not uncommon. Fogs usually occur only in small basins.

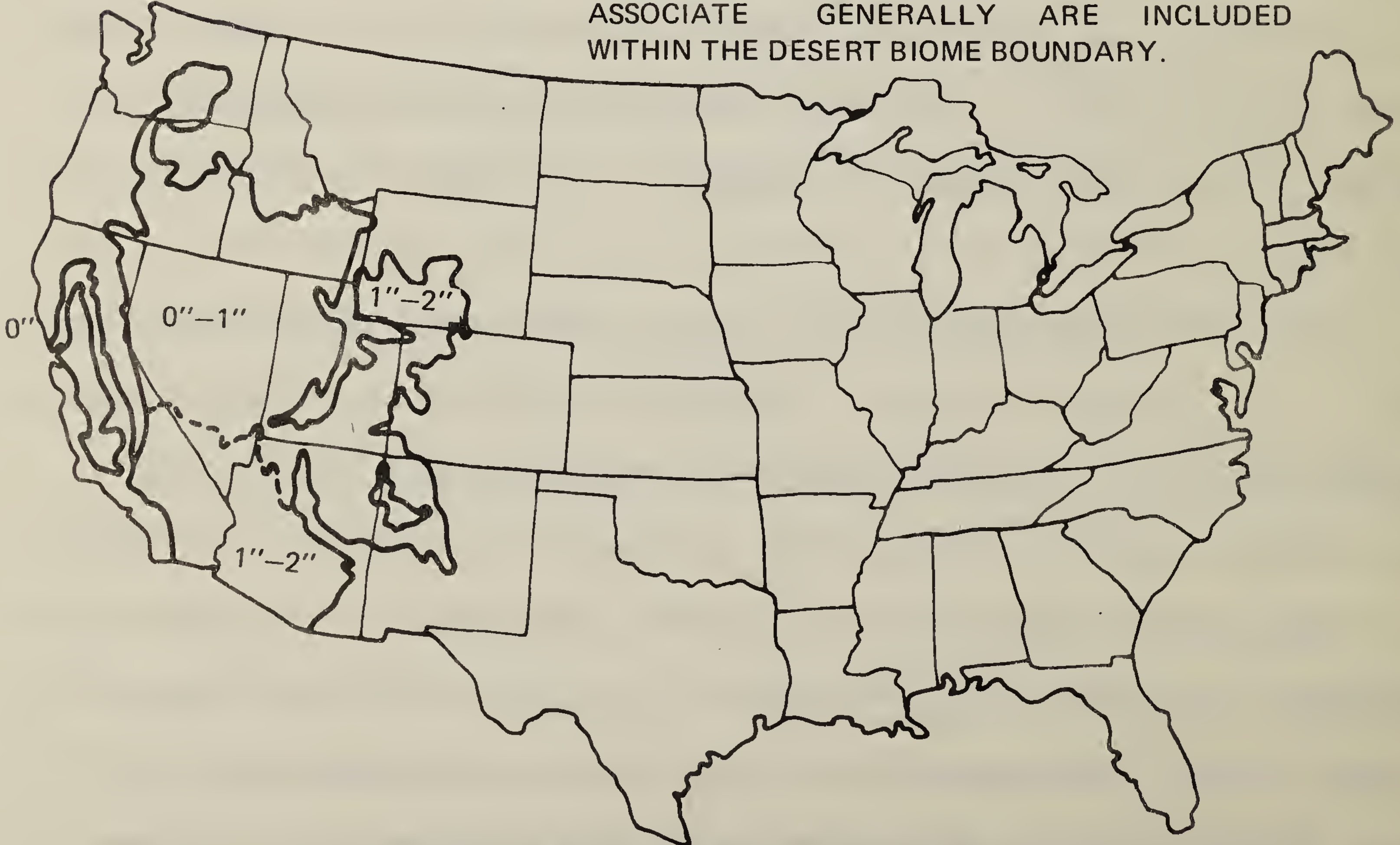
Winter storms bring most of the precipitation to the woodland-bushland lands in the California foothills. The months of June, July, August, and September are dry. Average precipitation ranges from 20 to 40 inches in the north and from 10 to 20 inches in the south.

Temperatures in the California foothills range from 5° F. to 112° F.; mean daily temperatures range from 45° F. in January to 70° F. in July (Figure II-25). Winds generally are light and from the south during the winter except during the passage of storms, when winds frequently exceed 80 mph. During the summer, winds are out of the northwest at about 5 mph.



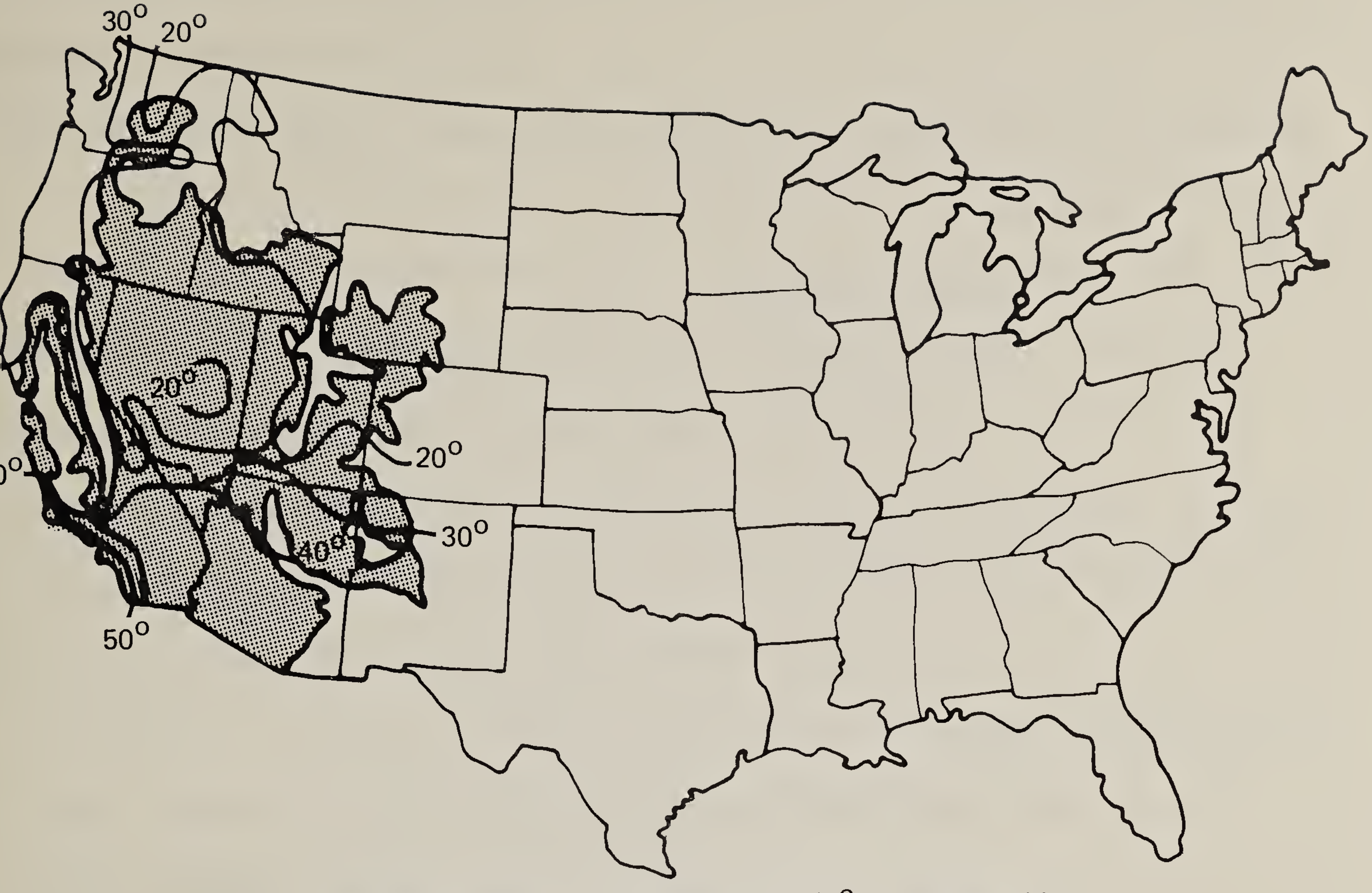
MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JANUARY

THE OAK WOODLAND–BUSHLAND AND JUNIPER ASSOCIATE GENERALLY ARE INCLUDED WITHIN THE DESERT BIOME BOUNDARY.



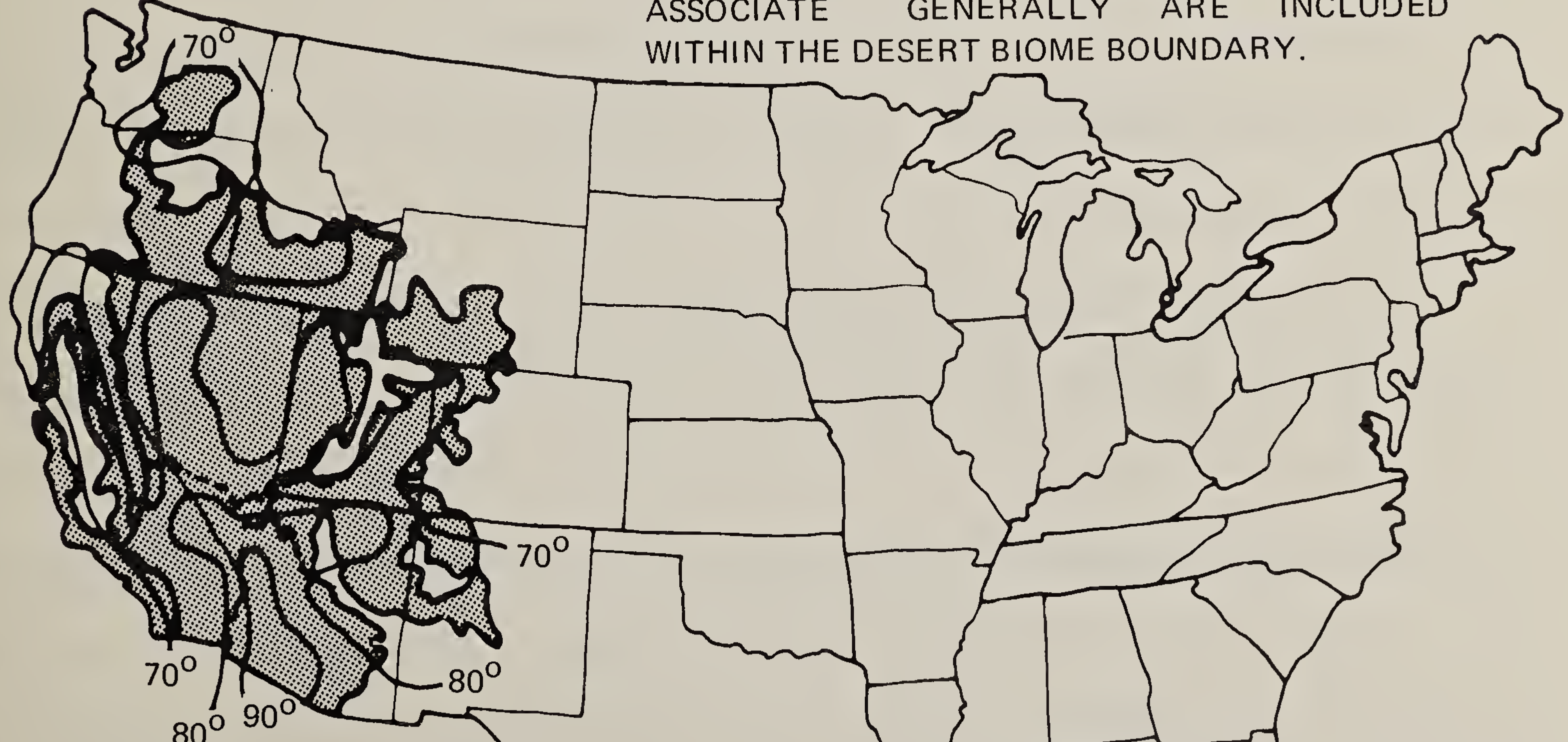
MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JULY

Figure II-24 Average January and July precipitation in woodland-bushland communities



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)–JANUARY

THE OAK WOODLAND–BUSHLAND AND JUNIPER ASSOCIATE GENERALLY ARE INCLUDED WITHIN THE DESERT BIOME BOUNDARY.



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)–JULY

Figure II-25. Average daily temperatures in woodland-bushland communities in January and July

Fog occurs only during the winter in the woodlands in the California foothills and only in small valleys where air becomes trapped by topography. Thunderstorms occur about 5 days out of the year, generally in the late spring or early fall.

b. Living Components

(1) Vegetation

The woodland ecosystems are still expanding in size. Woodland communities, particularly junipers, have extended themselves into former grassland and sagebrush sites. This trend is expected to continue until land uses are modified to come into balance with climatic, site, and environmental factors.

Fire is an integral part of the woodland ecosystem. Under natural conditions, fire probably was the major factor in maintaining a balance between the woodland and adjacent plant communities. Modern fire control has contributed to the expansion of sclerophyll and pinon-juniper woodlands into grass and brush types. Changing land uses also have allowed woodland communities to expand.

The woodland-bushland biome is comprised of three broad communities; the broad sclerophyll (oak-chaparral); oak woodland-bushland; and pinon-juniper.

The broad sclerophyll (oak-chaparral) community is best developed on the coastal ranges of southern California, but its range extends from southwestern Oregon southward through California's coastal mountains and the Sierra Nevada foothills into lower California. The vegetation generally consists of trees or shrubs with hard, thick evergreen leaves. The sclerophyll forest, woodland, and chaparral life forms merge with one another without forming distinct regions and with little or no plant succession relationship.

Chaparral is found in alternating patches in most parts of the community and occupies the greatest area. In California, some 5 to 6 million acres of hillsides and canyons are covered with chaparral (Odum, 1959, 1971).

The sclerophyll forest generally occurs on north slopes. Scattered trees or woodland types occur with an understory of grass, chaparral, or sagebrush.

A woodland-grass type surrounds the California prairie, extends north along the Coast Range and occurs in other scattered areas.

The chaparral consists of shrubs which form dense canopy thickets with little or no understory vegetation. It occurs on steep, loosely consolidated, highly erodible slopes.

The oak woodland and oak bushland communities are scattered and generally occur as ecotones between the desert biome and the pinon-juniper community. The oak bushland community is found in the Rocky Mountain foothills and the interior mountain ranges in Utah and Arizona at elevations between 5,000 and 8,000 feet. The vegetation usually does not form a continuous cover, but occurs instead in dense clumps (Odum, 1959, 1971). In addition to oak, the vegetation generally consists of many species of deciduous shrubs. The composition of the shrubs is dependent upon elevation, topography, and aspect. "The number of plant dominants is large with several species appearing regularly in each community" (Shelford, 1963).

The oak woodland community occurs in southern Arizona and New Mexico. Oak, juniper, small trees, undershrubs, and grasses are interspersed in the community. Understory vegetation ranges from cacti and yucca to grasses and shrubs. Topography usually is steep to rolling and soils generally are erosive.

The pinon-juniper communities cover an area of approximately 60 million acres interspersed through the cold desert. A majority of the type occurs in Nevada, Utah, Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico.

Pinon-juniper generally occurs at elevations between 5,000 and 7,000 feet. Stand density varies from a very few trees per acre to 600 or more per acre. An open stand is typical, but dense stands are not uncommon. Stands often thicken progressively from scattered trees at lower elevations to maximum densities just before the vegetation changes to timber or mountain shrub types. The lower, sparse stands are frequently developed on sagebrush or desert grass sites. Since junipers are more drought resistant, they are commonly found at elevations 500 feet lower than pinon. Broad areas with savannah characteristics occur in New Mexico and Arizona; the understory is comprised of mixed desert grasses and shrubs.

The herbaceous undercover varies inversely with the tree and shrub density. However, studies in Arizona indicated that shrubs may increase with the number of trees until a tree density of 50 percent is reached.

The shrub undercover decreases sharply where tree canopy exceeds 60 percent ground cover (U.S. Department of Agriculture, 1964).

(2) Animals

(a) Terrestrial Wildlife

Few animals are restricted to the pinon-juniper-woodland. Birds such as the pinon jay and the gray flycatcher are characteristic species of this biome. Juncos are general inhabitants during the winter months. In the Kaibab-Zion area, the mule deer is dominant. The mountain lion, coyote, and bobcat are the principal predators. The desert wood rat and the rock ground squirrel are characteristic residents. The nocturnal pinon mouse is perhaps the most abundant mammal found throughout the woodland. The cliff chipmunk, black-tailed jack rabbit, and Nuttall's cottontail are of common occurrence. Nesting birds include the golden eagle, redtailed hawk, and scrub jay.

The number of reptiles in the pinon-juniper is limited; they are most common at lowest elevations. Reptiles include the sagebrush swift, several lizards, and the rattlesnake and kingsnake.

More mammals occur in the oak woodland of southern Arizona and New Mexico than in the pinon-juniper type. They include the ring-tail, white-tailed deer, mule deer, peccary, coatimundi, and fox squirrel. Birds common to the biome include scaled quail, Mearns quail, turkey, and mourning dove. Forty-two permanent resident birds, at least 16 species of lizards, and as many snakes have been listed.

In the oak bushland, mule deer and coyotes are prominent. The long-tailed weasel and spotted and striped skunks are common. Hibernating mammals include the jumping mouse, marmot and Uinta, and golden-mantled ground squirrels. Robins, jays, and chickadees are common. Large, mixed flocks of birds winter in canyon bottoms or other sheltered locations. Of 11 reptiles in the community, only the rubber boa appears to belong primarily to the bushland.

Several subspecies of mule deer range throughout the broad sclerophyll community. Typical mammals include the mountain lion, bobcat, coyote, gray fox, wood rat, skunk, and brush rabbit. The Merriam chipmunk, California mouse, and five-toed kangaroo rat are confined to chaparral. Many small birds and lizards live in the community and amphibians include the tree frog and certain salamanders. (Odum, 1945; U.S. Department of the Interior, 1974; Bureau of Census, 1947, 1965, and 1970; Everhart and Seamon, 1971.)

(b) Aquatic Wildlife

Aquatic wildlife forms are characterized by cold and warm water fish species. A variety of aquatic environments exist in small, sometimes intermittent streams, upper reaches of larger rivers, impoundments, and some natural lakes.

Waters are moderately rich in nutrients and micro-organisms; water quality may be fair to good. Some streams may carry heavy silt at times in brushland areas; the better quality and more stable waters are located in wooded areas.

Representative fish are trout, whitefish, catfish, suckers, carp, squawfish, shiners, minnows, dace, chubs, sculpins, sunfish, perches, basses, and pikes.

(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife

Threatened or endangered species of wildlife recognized in the woodland-bushland biome include at least the California condor and the peregrine falcon. Other such species which range into this biome are Utah prairie dog, San Joaquin kit fox, blunt-nosed leopard lizard, Colorado squawfish, humpback chub, and Woundfin (U.S. Department of the Interior, 1974).

(d) Domestic Livestock

Livestock distribution and use in the woodland-bushland biome is similar to that in the desert biome. The pinon-juniper type serves as spring and fall range for both sheep and cattle and as summer range for cattle only in some areas. Some winter sheep grazing occurs in the southern half as well as some yearlong cattle grazing. Horse grazing is minor, although portions of some wild horse areas are located in this biome.

Most of the forage species in the broad sclerophyll community are winter annuals. Therefore, most grazing occurs during the winter and early spring.

The number of cattle in the biome has been increasing and the number of sheep has been declining for several years. The number of domestic horses has leveled off after declining sharply.

Most ranches are cow-calf operations. Sheep ranches place emphasis on grass-fat lambs. In the broad sclerophyll community, many cattle ranches run steers or yearlings because of the seasonal nature of the forage.

(e) Wild Horses and Burros

The range of wild horses throughout the desert biome includes associated habitat inside the pinon-juniper regions of the woodland-bushland biome. Those horses restricted to rugged inaccessible areas of pinon-juniper are seldom observed by humans. Burro populations occur only in small isolated numbers in remote sectors of the biome. Official reports show barely 100 head of wild burros throughout the biome.

(f) Human

The population and economic aspects of this biome are dominated by the California coastal range, from San Francisco to San Diego. Over 46 percent of the total population of the 11 Western States reside in this region mostly in urbanized areas. Population density of the central coastal area averages 310 persons per square mile, while the southern coastal area averages 762 persons per square mile. Incomes are relatively high, 12 percent above the western average, and the percentage of families below poverty levels is lower.

Only 1 or 2 percent of total employment is engaged in agriculture. The livestock-related economy is minimal. The region is estimated to import more than four times the amount of livestock produced within the region.

c. Ecological Interrelationships

Except for the California chaparral-bushland--a fairly contiguous community--the woodland-bushland communities occur principally as an ecotone between the desert or grassland biomes and the forest biome. The ecological interrelationships of the woodland-bushlands are closely related to those of the adjacent biomes.

Most of the vegetation is trees or shrubs. Storage of nutrients in the woody plants shows the nutrient cycle. Usable nitrogen is believed to be a limiting factor in productivity.

The woodland-bushland community often occurs on unstable soils and physiographic features. Disturbance of the vegetation often results in extensive erosion and subsequent establishment of desert-type communities, even at higher elevations.

The aquatic ecosystem in the woodland-bushland biome occurs primarily in perennial and intermittent streams generally originating in higher elevations. High intensity storms are common in the biome and result in heavy downstream siltation. Surface disturbance accelerates siltation. Information on the aquatic ecosystem and the microbial ecology of the woodland-bushland is limited and needs further study.

The California chaparral can be considered as an example of a climax vegetation resulting from the continuing influence of fire. The vegetative composition and hot dry summers present a recurring and extreme hazard. Fire removes the shrubby vegetation, the herbaceous vegetation develops rapidly and occupies the site until shrub dominance is reestablished. Removal of the heavily dominant shrub ecosystem by fire or other means can result in disastrous floods and extensive siltation.

Philpot (1973) used chamise, a major chaparral component, as a model of the role of fire in the chaparral type. Chamise has many characteristics which make it highly flammable, including a high heat and crude fat content, low moisture content during drought, a majority of its fuel surface area in smaller size classes, and horizontal and vertical continuity (Countrymen and Philpot, 1970). The scenario following fire begins when chamise sprouts from a root crown after stems and foliage have been killed by fire. Some new chamise plants are established when heat-treated seeds germinate. Due to volatilization of phytotoxic compounds in the soil by fire, several species of fire annuals (grasses and forbs) also germinate after the fire (Muller et al, 1968). The annuals occupy the site for about 5 to 7 years until phytotoxic compounds produced by chamise suppress them. Approximately 10 years after the fire, the stand is nearly pure chamise again. As the stand matures, the quantity of dead fuel increases with age. The longer that fire is deferred in this fire type, the greater will be the eventual fire intensities and fire sizes. A similar fire cycle has been described for manzanita (Vogl and Schorr, 1972).

Leopold (1924) described several shrubs, including juniper, mountain mahogany, oaks, and manzanita in the southern Arizona foothills. He considered the recurrence of fire as a major factor in maintaining open grasslands. Other authors have reported significant increases in juniper in New Mexico, Texas, Utah, Idaho, and Oregon. Several reasons have been advanced for encroachment by juniper, with the major ones being grazing pressure, climatic changes, and fire.

Several authors have reported the successional stages in pinon-juniper woodland after fire (Erdman, 1970; Barney and Frischknecht, 1974). Sucessional trends are similar for Arizona, Colorado, and Utah. Annual plants form the initial stage after fire, reaching maximum development in the first 3 to 4 years. The annual stage is generally replaced by a perennial grass-forb stage by the fifth or sixth year.

A shrub stage may follow the annual stage if shrubs are dominant to the exclusion of perennial grasses prior to the fire. If a perennial grass stand develops first, it is usually followed by sagebrush and then juniper. If the shrub stage develops, it may be converted to a grassland stage by a second fire. When protected from recurring fires, both the shrub and grassland stages will be reinvaded by trees (the pinon-juniper climax).

d. Human Interest Values

(1) Land Uses

Rough and steep topography limit agriculture activities in most areas to livestock grazing. Minor portions of the biome are irrigated.

Big game and upland game birds provide hunting opportunities in most parts of the biome. Areas near cities and towns are used extensively for outdoor recreation; recreation use probably will increase in the future.

Many areas in the biome, such as the California "mother lode" country, were mined extensively for minerals over a hundred years ago. Most of the mining in that area is now restricted to individual part-time efforts. Underground mining of coal occurs in Utah and Colorado. Open-pit coal mining is increasing. Uranium is mined underground. Areas in Colorado, Utah, and New Mexico produce oil and gas and the potential for discovery of additional production areas appears to be relatively high. The western side of the San Joaquin Valley of California also has oil and gas bearing formations and a number of producing wells. Oil shale outcrops in large areas in Colorado, Wyoming, and Utah. Experimental work has been done over the past several years in the recovery of petroleum from some of these deposits. The BLM has recently issued leases on some of the oil shale in Colorado. Potentially land uses could be altered drastically on oil shale areas if commercial production occurs.

The biome contains extensive roadless or undeveloped areas with primitive qualities. Some streams in these areas may meet criteria for wild rivers; a number are now under study. The California oak-chaparral tends to be more developed and has fewer areas with primitive or semi-primitive qualities.

Woodlands in the biome provide a small, but locally important, source of cordwood and fenceposts. Pinon-pine nuts are harvested by Indians and others.

Small, isolated ranching or mining towns are scattered throughout the area. Suburban expansion is occurring in the biome in California and in the Salt Lake City area.

(2) Aesthetics

The woodland-bushland visual environment is one that varies greatly. It ranges from a semiarid to a wooded foothills landscape.

Since valley bottoms in the West are also principal travel routes, much of the woodland-bushland type is exposed to view of the traveling public. In some areas, this view is from a considerable distance. In others, it is directly adjacent to the travel route.

Landform of the woodland-bushland communities varies from relatively flat valley bottoms through the low-rolling foothills to deep-cut canyons and high mesas. Most typical of these would be the rolling foothill area.

Texture varies as the density of the stands vary, from a continuous dense canopy to an open, scattered random pattern.

Color varies almost as much as landform and texture. Where there is a fairly continuous canopy, the gray-green of the vegetation is predominant. As the stands thin, color of the soil or rocks becomes dominant.

Lines are evident only where there is an abrupt change in the vegetation type or where there has been some disruption of the vegetation, i.e., roads, powerlines, chaining, etc. Scale is more easily defined and much more obvious in the woodlands than in the grasslands or desert.

(3) Geological

Most geological features of interest are similar to those found at similar elevations in the surrounding desert or grassland areas which have been previously discussed. For example, the woodland-bushlands may cover the tops of high mesas which are an integral part of the dramatically eroded areas on their flanks. In the California foothill woodland areas, there are numerous faults. Large faults, such as the San

Andreas fault passing through both prairie and woodlands, exhibit visible displacement.

(4) Archeological

Prehistoric peoples who used the juniper associate and oak woodlands were, for the most part, the same types who inhabited the hot and cold desert. Different activities tended to take place in the woodland-bushland biome such as hunting or gathering of wild nuts and seeds, but one also finds agricultural areas cleared in the juniper areas so there is no clear-cut division of usage.

In the broad sclerophyll areas of southern Oregon and California are indications of the same prehistoric peoples as in the California and Palouse prairie grasslands--an Old Cordilleran Tradition base that developed into an Archaic Tradition which continued to current times.

(5) Historical

Historically, the woodland-bushlands were probably among the last areas to be settled because of the difficulty of converting them to agriculture. Heavy brush and the lack of water made the biome less valuable for agriculture, and grazing was the predominant use in most cases. Consequently, most of the historic events that took place in the woodland-bushland tended to be associated with livestock trailing and Indian-wars, rather than settlement oriented.

The broad sclerophyll community in California includes the "mother lode" country of the 1849 gold rush. The area is replete with old ghost towns, and remains of mining activities such as dredge piles and huge hydraulic cut banks.

(6) Cultural

This biome has similar cultural values to those of the desert. Of more unique significance, brushlands and wooded foothills of the southwestern portion of California lie along the route of the Spanish Roman Catholic missionaries of the 18th century. Many missions have been restored along El Camino Real, while other sites remain as interesting ruins of more historical than cultural or religious significance.

4. Coniferous Forest Biome

In general, conifer forests of the west occupy mountains and the higher plateaus, and the regions of relatively abundant moisture of the Pacific Coast and Alaska. Three sub-biomes are recognized: Montane, Northwest Coastal, and Taiga. The location of these biomes are shown in Figures II-26 and II-27 and their aspect is shown in Figures II-28, II-29, and II-30.

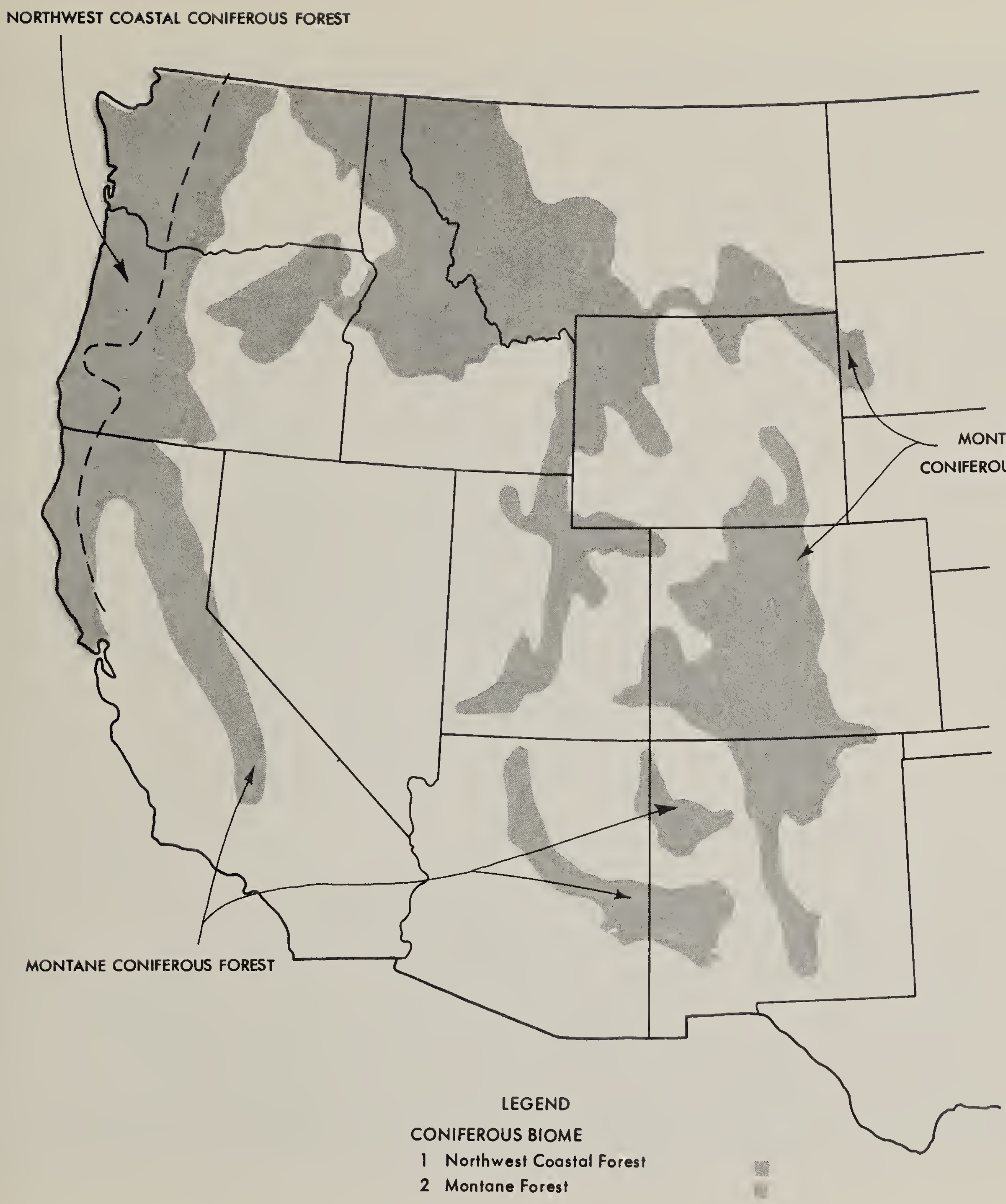

NORTHWEST COASTAL CONIFEROUS FOREST
MONTANE CONIFEROUS FOREST
MONTANE CONIFEROUS FOREST
LEGEND
CONIFEROUS BIOME
1 Northwest Coastal Forest ▨
2 Montane Forest ▨

Figure II-26

CONIFEROUS BIOME IN THE WESTERN UNITED STATES.

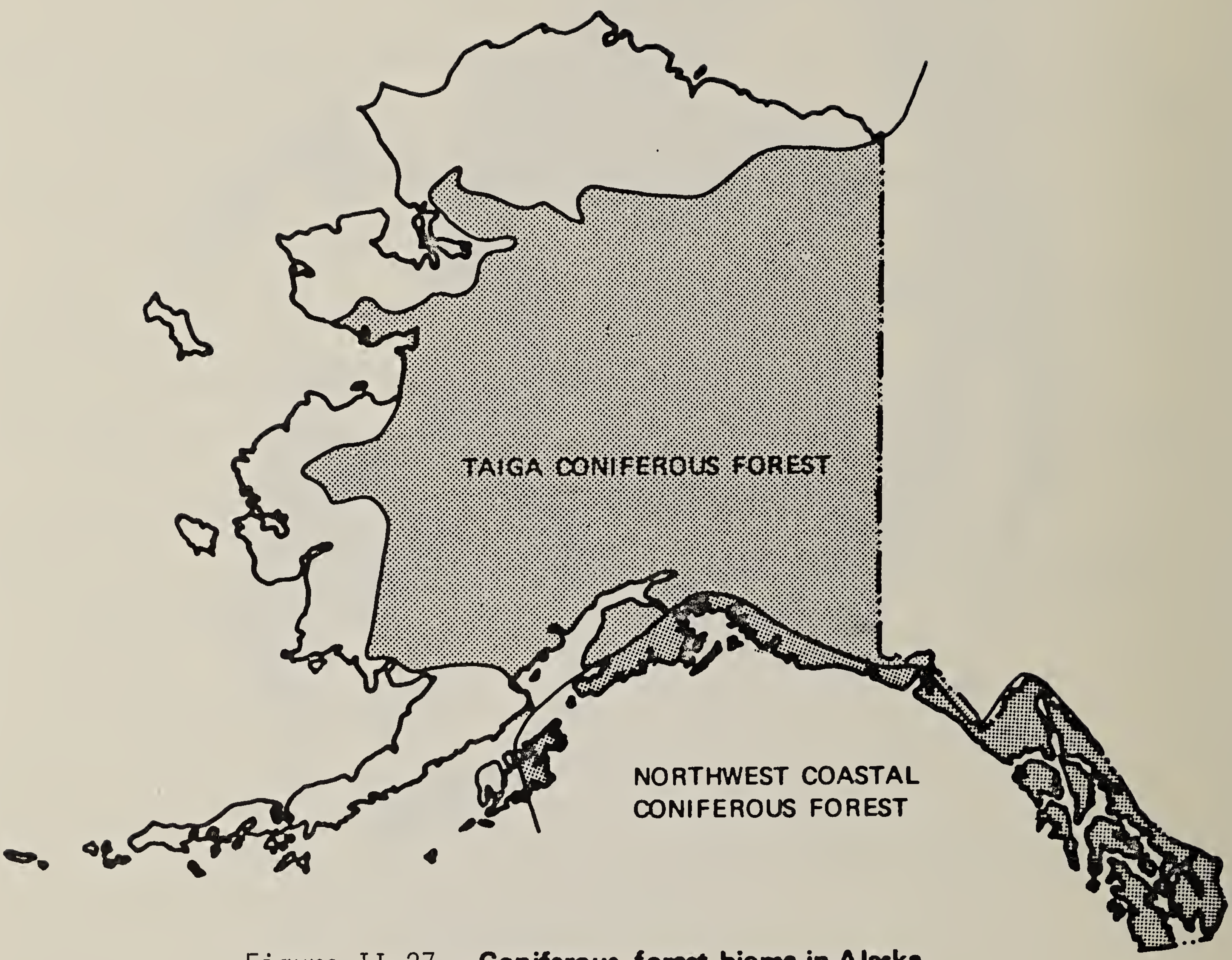


Figure II-27 **Coniferous forest biome in Alaska**

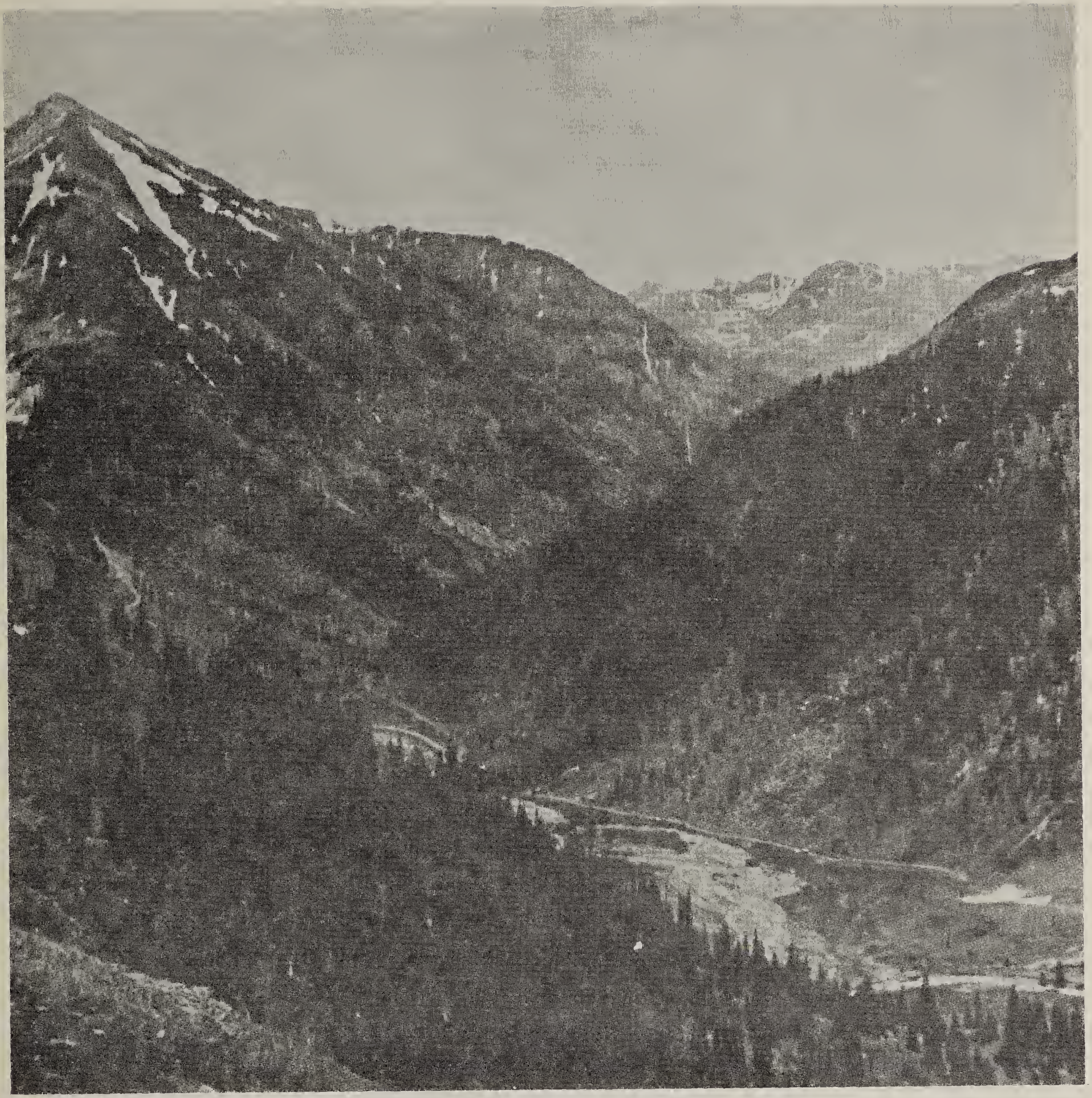


Figure II-28. The montane coniferous forest

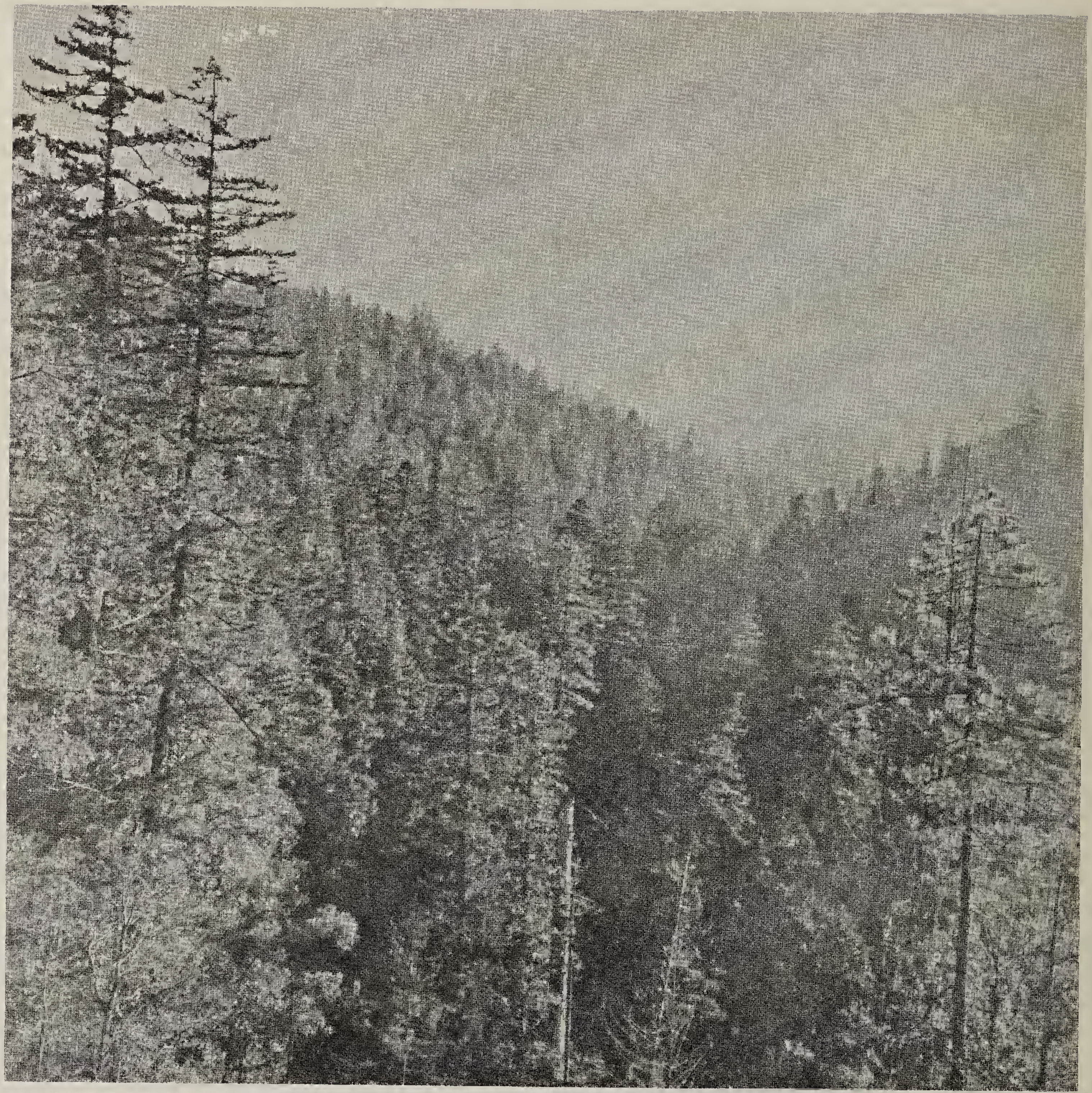
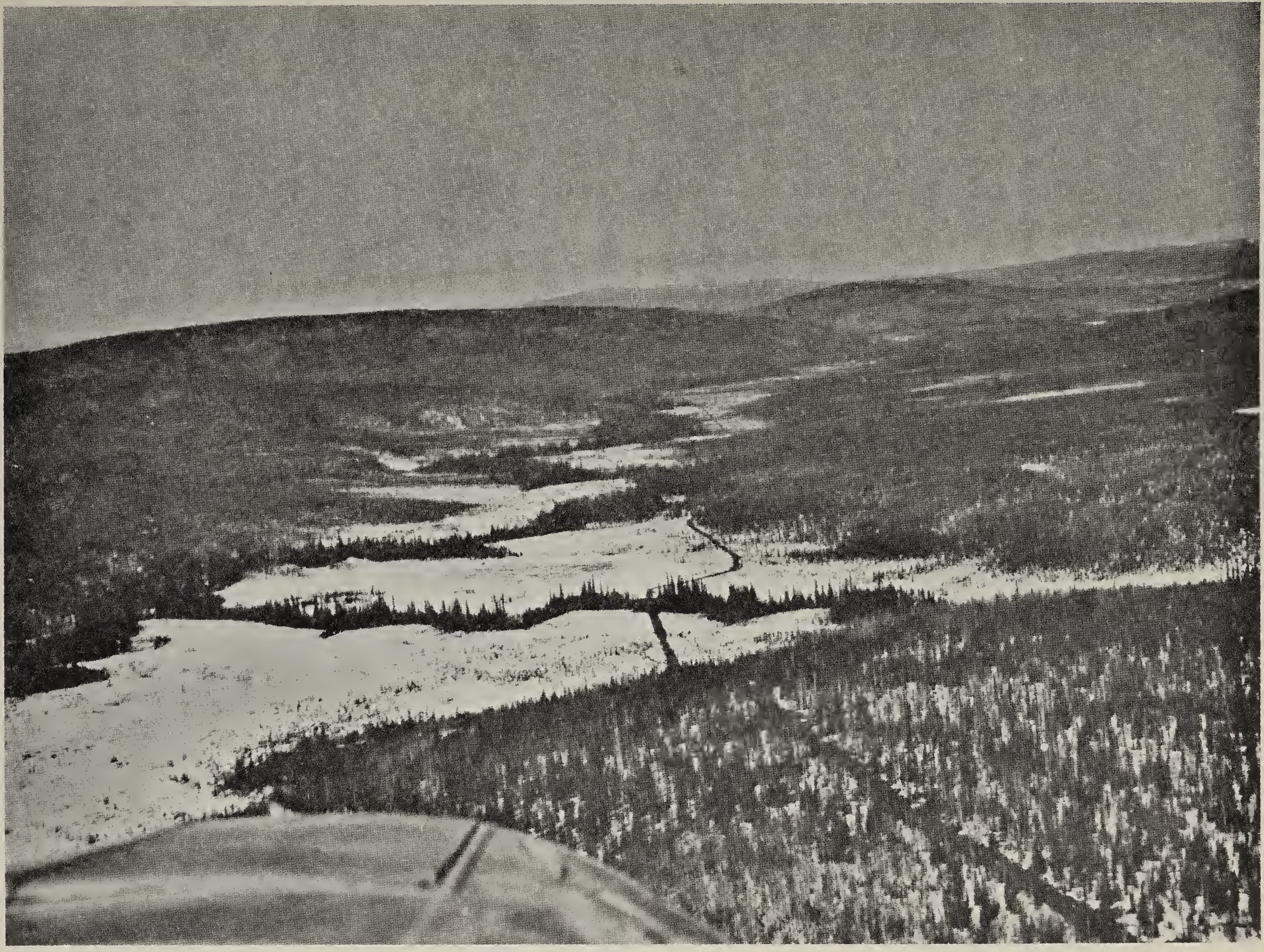


Figure II-29. The northwest coastal coniferous forest



Bureau of Land Manogemement Photo

Figure II- 30 The taiga coniferous forest

a. Non-Living Components

(1) Topography

The Cascade and Siskiyou Mountains, Coast Range, and the Sierra Nevada are moderately to steeply sloping with relief from base to peak varying from 1,000 feet to over 3,000 feet. Volcanic cones are distinctive features of the Cascade Mountains. On the Columbia Plateau, the topography is moderate to gentle. In the northern Rockies and most of the southern Rockies, the mountains are moderately to steeply sloping, with relief in some areas exceeding 3,000 feet.

Along the southern and southeastern coast of Alaska, the topography of the forest area varies from low mountains to high mountain with steep slopes, and relief varies from 1,000 feet to over 3,000 feet.

In interior Alaska, the commercial forests are located in narrow bands along the river drainages and on the flat plains. The non-commercial forests are found on hills and mountains with relief ranging from 500 to 3,000 feet.

(2) Soils

Soils in the coniferous forest biome range from the Inceptisols in cold wet climates to the Mollisols in warm dry climates.

Inceptisols and Ultisols generally occur in the higher elevations and in areas receiving considerable precipitation. Ultisols have clay-enriched subsoils and are acid in nature. Characteristics of the Inceptisols vary greatly. Inceptisols and Ultisols occur in northeastern California, western Oregon and Washington, and from the Canadian border in northern Idaho and northwestern Montana to central Idaho. A few areas of Spodosols are intermingled with the Inceptisols and Ultisols. Inceptisols are found throughout Alaska where mineral soils occur.

Alfisols occur in areas receiving less rainfall than areas in which Ultisols have formed and therefore are more basic in nature than in the latter. Alfisols have a clay-enriched subsoil and a grey to brown surface soil. Large areas of Alfisols are located on the east and west sides of the Sacramento Valley in California and on the east front of the Rocky Mountains in Montana, Wyoming, and Colorado.

Mollisols are basic soils which are organically rich, and dark colored. Mollisols are located in the southern Rocky Mountains in Utah and Arizona.

Entisols are young soils lacking distinctive subsoil horizons. They occur on recent deposits of alluvium, on very steep areas having soil creep, and on recently stabilized sand dunes. These soils occur in western Colorado, northwestern New Mexico, and central Utah.

Aridisols are generally associated with the desert. However, Aridisols support coniferous forest in parts of New Mexico and Arizona.

Permafrost conditions occur discontinuously through portions of the Taiga Forests of interior Alaska. Soils in the valleys and the lower mountain slopes are covered with a thin to thick blanket of vegetative material that acts as an insulating mat. In most of interior Alaska, this mat protects and stabilizes the underlying permafrost. When the vegetative cover is disturbed or removed, the permafrost is exposed and melts during the summer. (Soil stability classes, the soil orders and series, and major soil characteristics are described in the Appendix.)

(3) Minerals

Mining, mineral processing, and refining have significantly affected the human environment in and near many local communities. Copper, coal, gold, silver, lead, zinc, molybdenum, and phosphate are the principal products. In the early history of mining in these and many other unnamed localities, mining was generally carried on by underground methods, whereas today in some of the above localities, mining is being done by open-pit methods. These changes have aggravated waste and tailings disposal problems.

(4) Water

The water resources of the coniferous forests provide for most of the water needs for the western United States. Major rivers and streams flow from the forests into the grassland, desert, and woodland-bushland biomes. Most streams of the coniferous forests are perennial, although some may be intermittent in regions where extended dry periods occur during certain seasons. Natural lakes are an important part of the surface water resource of the coniferous forest biome.

Average annual runoff from the coniferous forests ranges from about 5 inches in the southern Rocky Mountains to more than 150 inches in parts of northwest Washington and southeastern Alaska. Most of the runoff occurs during the spring and early summer months in the higher elevations and in central Alaska where precipitation falls mostly as snow. However, in the lower coastal mountains of northern California, Oregon, Washington and southeastern Alaska, where precipitation occurs during the winter predominantly as rainfall, most of the runoff occurs from November through March.

The quality of most surface waters in the coniferous forest is good to excellent. Average dissolved solids content generally is less than 100 ppm. The suspended sediment concentrations in coniferous forest streams are generally less than 280 ppm.

(5) Climate

Moist Pacific air moving in a west to east path results in high rainfall in mountain ranges along the northwest coast from Alaska to California. After the dry season reaches its climax in July and August, the rainy season comes on gradually and reaches its peak in December. Average annual precipitation ranges from 30 to 40 inches in the San Francisco area, 60 to 140 inches in the Olympic Mountains of Washington, to 80 to 150 inches in the south-central coast of Alaska. Temperatures range from a low of minus 15° F. along the Alaska coast to 30° F. at San Francisco; high temperatures can reach into the 90's throughout the area. Mean daily temperatures range from 20° to 35° in January to 50° to 60° during July. During the winter, the wind sometimes attains hurricane force along the ocean coast. Northerly winds prevail--in summer months--especially in the daytime. Thunderstorms are infrequent and usually weak along the western part of the area.

The climate of the Taiga forest is moist with severe winters. Average annual precipitation ranges from 7 inches in the upper Yukon Valley to 16 inches in the Matanuska Valley (Figure II-31). Winter temperatures range from -75° F. along the basin of the Yukon to -35° F. in the Matanuska Valley. Summer maximums are 90° to 100° F. The mean daily temperatures vary from -15° F. in January to 50° F. in July (Figure II-32). Winds generally are out of the east during the winter months at about 5 mph.

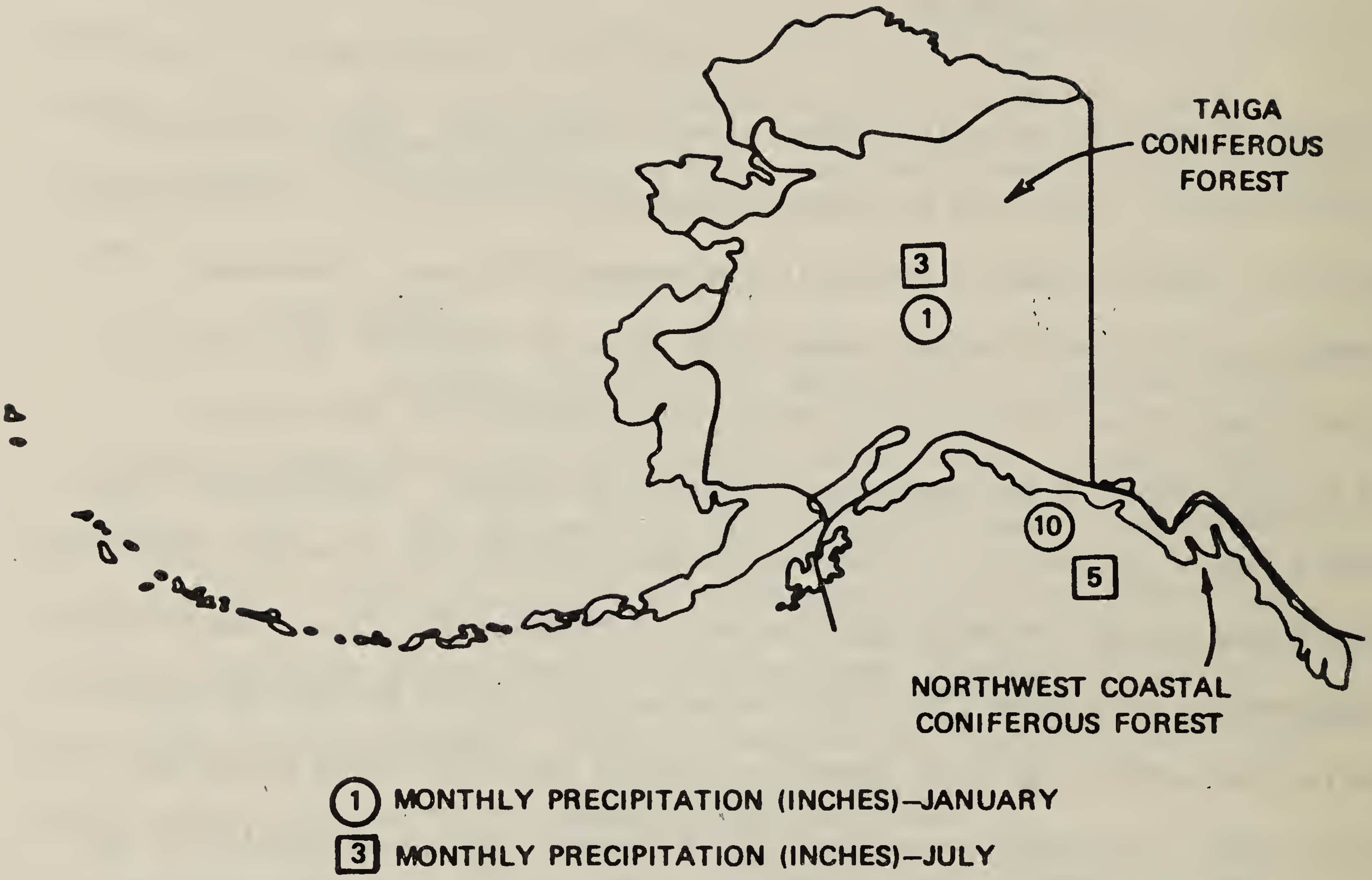

TAIGA CONIFEROUS FOREST
3
1
10
5
NORTHWEST COASTAL CONIFEROUS FOREST
① MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)—JANUARY
3 MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)—JULY

Figure II-31. Average January and July precipitation in the coniferous forest biome — Alaska

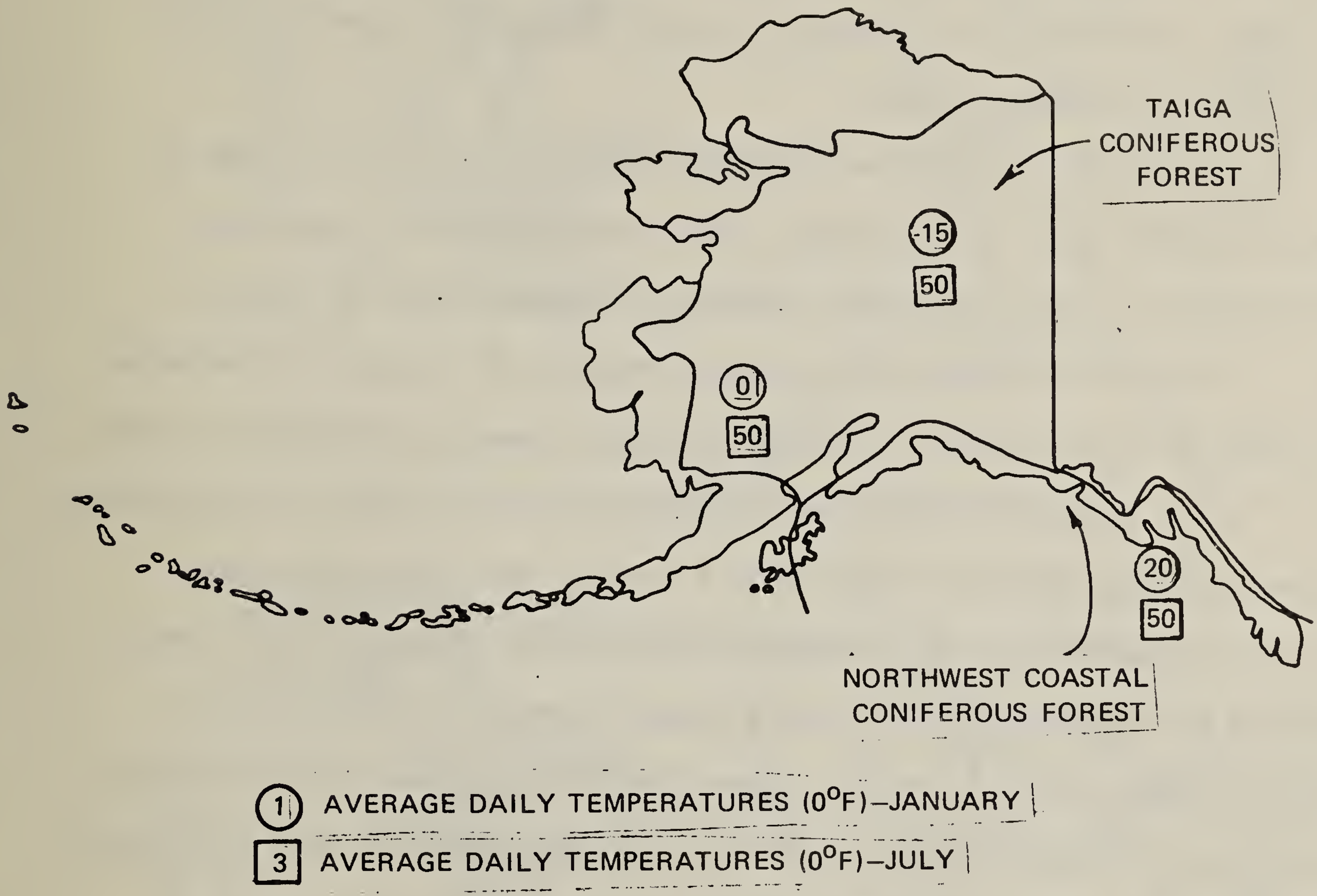
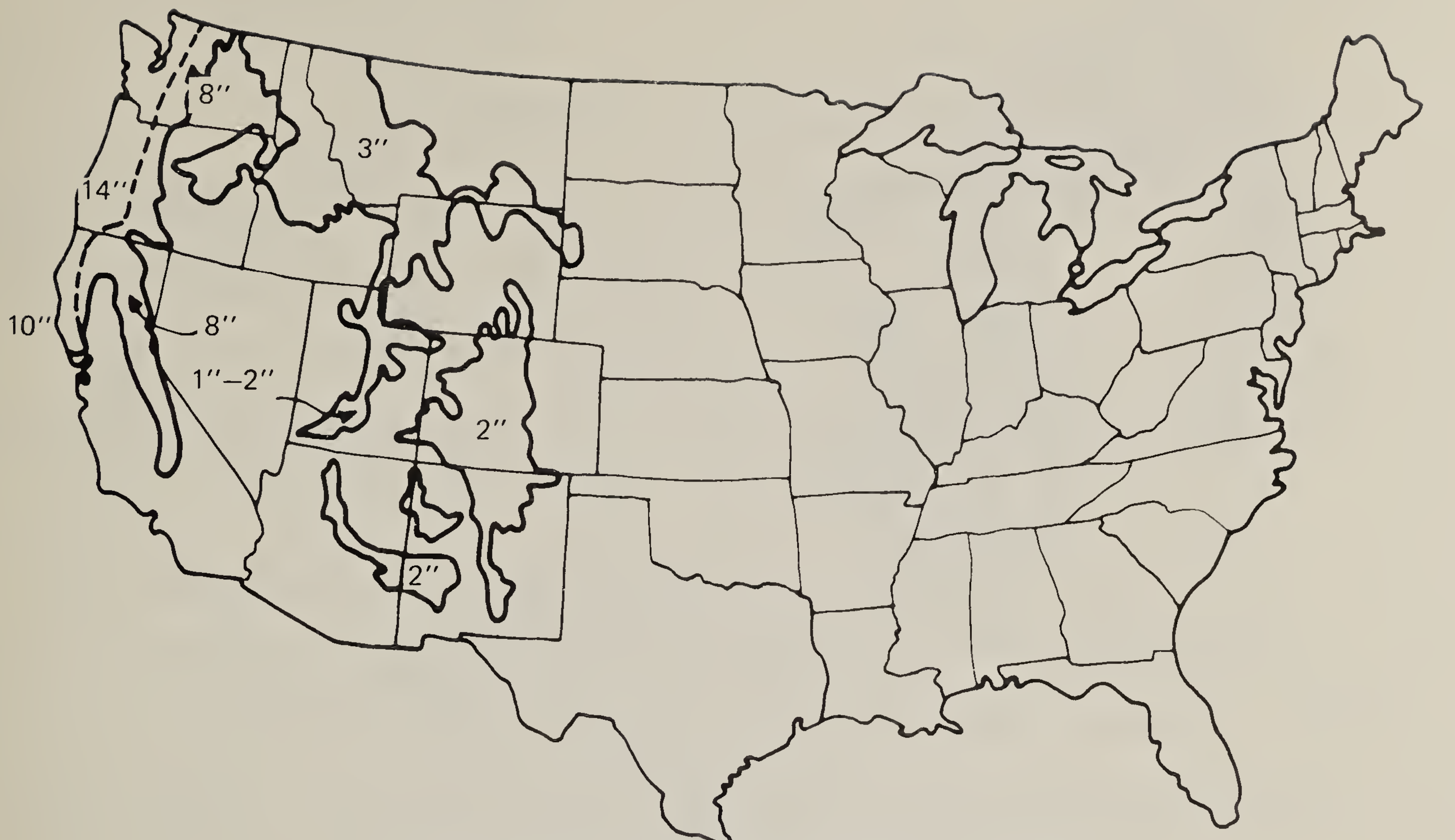

TAIGA CONIFEROUS FOREST
-15
50
0
50
20
50
NORTHWEST COASTAL CONIFEROUS FOREST
1 AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (0°F)–JANUARY
3 AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (0°F)–JULY

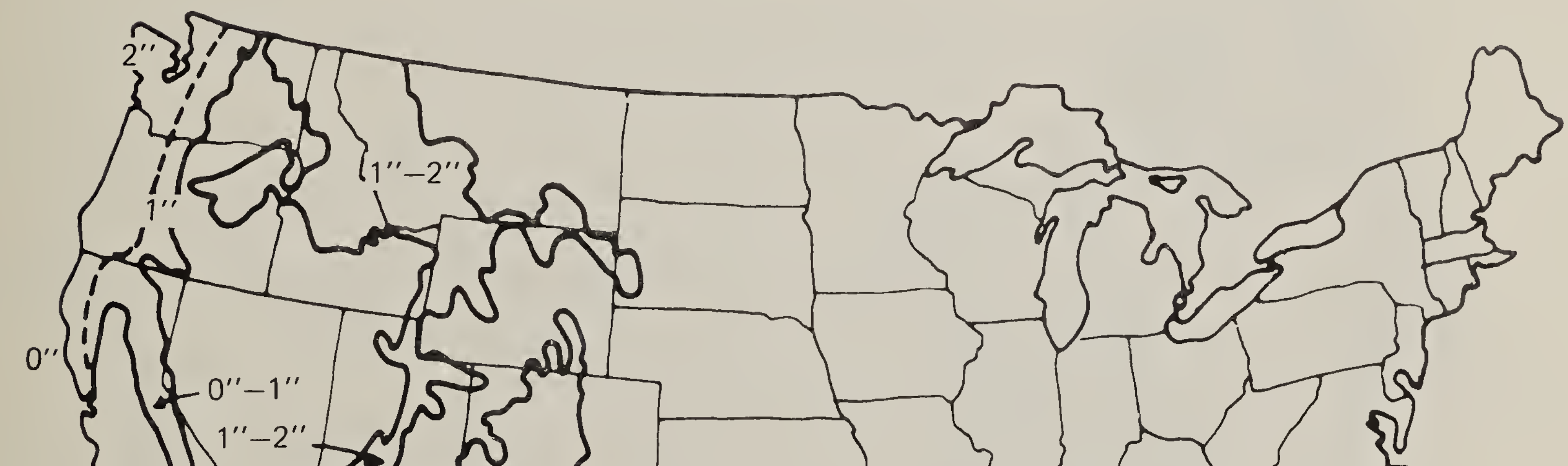
Figure II-32. Average daily temperatures in the coniferous forest biome in January and July — Alaska

During the short summer season, winds out of the west bring moist maritime air in from the Bering Sea. During the summer, thunderstorms occur at an average of 5 to 10 days each year. The daily hours of sunshine in June in the interior of Alaska range from 16 hours in the lower latitudes to 24 hours in the northern latitudes. There are nearly as many cloudy days as clear days in the course of a year, and this reduces the incoming solar radiation during summer months.

The climate in the montane coniferous forest is directly related to elevation; the higher the elevation, the colder and wetter the climate. Precipitation at the lower levels generally averages about 16 inches a year. The higher elevation Sierra Nevada receives 50 inches, the Cascades 90 inches, and the Rockies 30 inches. Average January precipitation varies from 8 inches along the Sierras and Cascades to 1 to 3 inches in the Rockies. Average July precipitation ranges from 1 inch or less along the Sierra Nevada and Cascades to 2 to 3 inches in the Rockies (Figure II-33). Average daily minimum temperatures during January range from 20° F. at the lower elevations to 0° F. at the higher elevations (Figure II-34). Maximum temperatures during July average 85° at lower elevations to 70° F. at higher elevations. The mean daily temperatures average about 10 degrees warmer during January and 10 degrees colder during July. Topography and convective activity--especially during the summer months--affect wind directions and velocities. At the mountain summits, winds generally are from the west and frequently are very strong in the winter and spring. Thunderstorms occur frequently in the montane coniferous forest. An average of 50° to 70° occurs in the forested areas of Colorado and New Mexico each year.

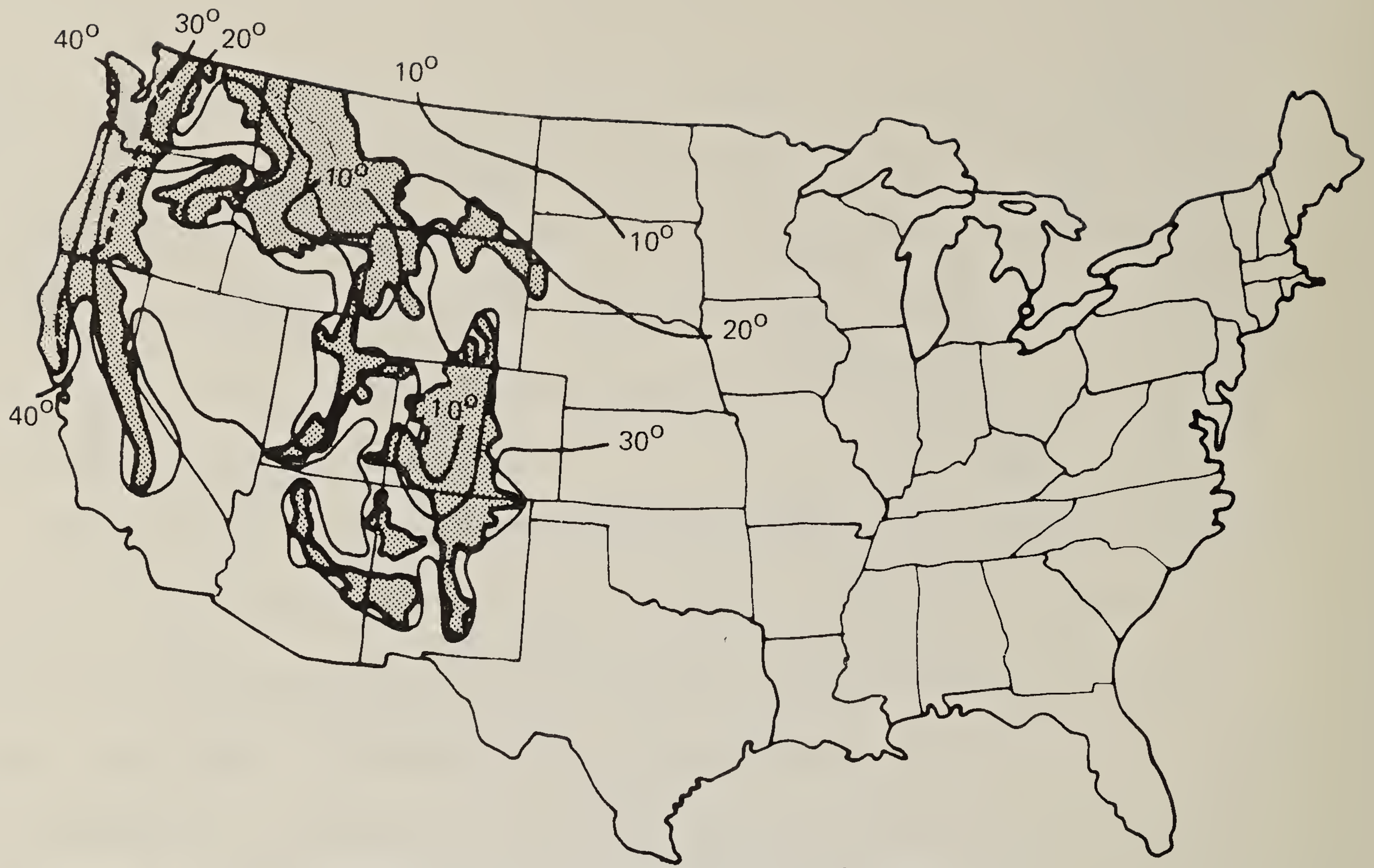


MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)—JANUARY



MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)—JULY

Figure II-33.
Average January and July precipitation in the coniferous forest biome—conterminous United States



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (0°F)—JANUARY

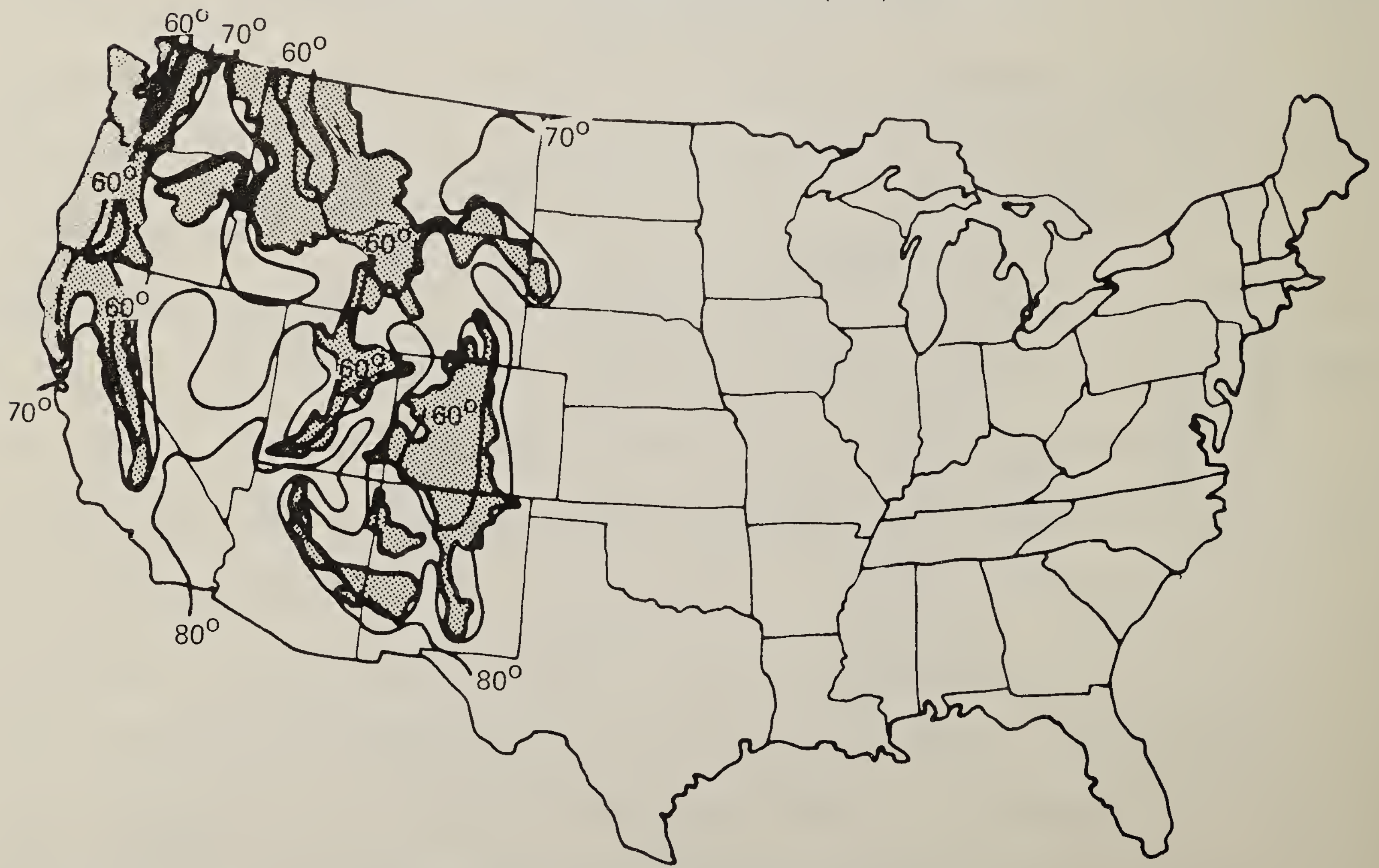


Figure II-34. AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURES (0°F)—JULY

Average daily temperatures in the coniferous forest biome in January and July– conterminous United States

b. Living Components

(1) Vegetation

The dominant flora in this biome are coniferous trees, especially spruces, firs, and pines. The conifers form a relatively continuous canopy over the forest floor.

Productivity varies from the generally fast-growing forest of the northwest coastal sub-biome to the less productive forests of the montane and taiga.

The composition of the forest vegetation is influenced to a large extent by elevation. Elevational differnces lead to the development of four basic vegetational zones in many mountainous areas. Proceeding upward from the lowlands, the zones are the woodlands, forest, subalpine forest, and alpine meadows.

Many forests contain numerous water bodies and streams and a variety of aquatic plant species.

Natural forces such as bark beetles, defoliating insects, disease, and fire kill unusually high numbers of trees in some years. However, the outbreaks are part of a continuous cycle to which the coniferous forest ecosystem is adapted through rapid regeneration and succession.

Timber has been, and is being, harvested in much of the biome. However, many sections of the coniferous forest are still in their natural state. The forest environment provides aesthetic and recreational values and protects extensive watersheds by stabilizing the soil. The vegetation also provides shelter, protection and food to the many forms of wildlife.

Predominant tree species vary among the three basic forest types in the coniferous forest.

Primary species in the lower and middle elevations of the montane forest are Douglas-fir, Engelmann spruce, western larch, ponderosa pine, white pine, lodgepole pine, and aspen. Sub-alpine and alpine areas in the higher elevations are interspersed with stands of sub-alpine fir, whitebark pine, and Engelmann spruce. In addition to being an important timber producing region, the montane forest includes large areas administered for recreation and wilderness uses.

The northwest coastal forest is characterized by lush vegetation. Douglas-fir, western hemlock, Sitka spruce, western red cedar, and redwood are important tree species. A dense vegetal understory is made up primarily of mosses, salal, and salmonberry. This forest constitutes one of the most productive timber growing regions in the world.

The Taiga forest includes white spruce, black spruce, paper birch, balsam poplar, and aspen. Permafrost and high water tables influence the distribution of the tree species. Sedges and grasses grow in areas undergoing a succession from lake to bog. The entire forest is essentially virgin. Fire and microclimates have created a discontinuous forest cover interspersed with expanses of open muskeg and tundra locally similar, in many respects, to portions of the tundra biome.

(2) Animals

(a) Terrestrial Wildlife

Extending as it does from timberline to the ocean and from above the Arctic Circle south nearly to the Mexican border, the coniferous forest biome provides habitat for a wide variety of terrestrial animals. Under pristine conditions, the basic requirements of food, water, and cover are usually adequately met for most indigenous species. Some adaptable species are found throughout the biome; others are more specific in their requirements and therefore less wide-ranging. In general, the biome is inhabited by the following major families:

- Mammals: Cervidae (deer, elk, moose, and caribou), Ursidae (bears), Canidae (wolves, coyotes and foxes), Felidae (wildcats, cougars), Mustelidae (weasels, skunks, marten, mink, fisher, wolverine), and various rodents (squirrels, mice, shrews, etc.), rabbits and hares.
- Birds: Accipitrinae and Buteoninae (hawks and eagles), Tytonidae and Strigidae (owls), Tetraonidae (grouse, ptarmigan), Picidae (woodpeckers), and Fringillidae (finches, sparrows).
- Reptiles and Amphibians: Bufonidae (toads), Ranidae (frogs), and Colubridae (garter snakes).

Wildlife typical of the biome are generally adapted to a closed canopy of coniferous trees interspersed with openings. Some species, particularly the herbivores, respond to the edge effect created by forest meadows, logging, or fires that favor development of an understory of nutritious vegetation. Other species, including the raptors and larger predators, may respond adversely to loss of the forest overstory. Most forest wildlife can adapt to certain habitat changes, but extensive land management activities can be detrimental to many species, especially when accompanied by vehicles and people. Many fur-bearers and birds in this biome require a semi-aquatic habitat, and streams, ponds, and lakes increase the variety of wildlife.

The animals of the Taiga forest can tolerate the cold of subarctic and arctic winters. Invertebrates and many of the vertebrates are dormant during the winter months and active during the warm season, in an annual cycle that brings a spring influx of migratory birds and speeds their departure in autumn. The following animals are typical of the Taiga:

- Mammals: Arctic or barren ground caribou, moose, barren ground grizzly bear, timber wolf, lynx, wolverine, Alaska marten, Alaska porcupine, varying hare.

- Birds: Gryfalcon, snowy owl, Arctic horned owl, spruce grouse, ruffed grouse, ptarmigan, Arctic three-toed woodpecker.

- Reptiles and Amphibians: True Frog.

Dall sheep and mountain caribou are found principally in the partially timbered mountains of this sub-biome. The herbivores of the Taiga are principally browsers, but lichens and sedges are important items in the diet of caribou and sheep. Predator-prey relationships are pronounced, with lynx and owl populations dependent upon the fluctuating numbers of the varying hare, and wolves preying principally on the larger herbivores.

A much greater variety of habitat exists in the montane coniferous forest than in the Taiga or northwest coastal sub-biomes. The variety of vegetative types favors a high degree of use by numerous species; some 56 species of birds have been recorded as breeding in the central Rocky Mountains. The following are representative wildlife:

- Mammals: Rocky Mountain elk, mule deer, whitetail deer, Bighorn sheep, mountain goat, black bear, cougar, coyote, fisher, pika, cottontail rabbit, snowshoe (varying) hare, red squirrel, various mice.

- Birds: Golden eagle, screech owl, grey-crowned rosy finch, three-toed woodpecker, ruffed grouse, American magpie, Clarks nutcracker, Canada jay.

- Amphibians and Reptiles: Pacific tree frog, California mountain kingsnake.

Many other wildlife species inhabit various niches in the sub-biome. The southwestern Oregon-northern California montane area hosts the ringtailed cat and Douglas ground squirrel in naturally-limited environments. The same area may support blacktailed deer concentrations rather than the representative mule deer populations.

Some northern Rocky Mountain habitats are utilized by grizzly bear and mountain caribou (both rare), moose, hoary marmot, and wolverine. The open forests in the southern part of the sub-biome and at the lower elevations are inhabited by mammals, birds, and reptiles which prefer drier sites; typical are the ringtailed cat, Kaibab squirrel, pinon jay, rattlesnake, and various lizards.

In much of the sub-biome, deep snows preclude yearlong residence, especially for large herbivores. In many areas, deer and elk annually migrate downward from high summer range to suitable winter cover and forage for survival.

Natural water supplies are usually ample for wildlife populations in the northwest coastal forest. Where the original forest canopy is intact, dense shade results in poorly developed understory vegetation and scant forage for herbivores. Contrary to some popular misconceptions, fires and logging have greatly improved wildlife habitats in much of the sub-biome by removing the closed forest overstory, thus promoting the rapid growth of nutritious forage plants. The principal wildlife species are related to those of the Rocky Mountains.

- Mammals: Roosevelt elk, blacktailed deer, black bear, cougar, lynx, bobcat, coyote, mountain beaver, snowshoe hare, mink and various small rodents.

- Birds: Pacific horned owl, northern spotted owl, Cooper's hawk, bald eagle, sooty grouse and band-tailed pigeon.
- Amphibians and Reptiles: Pacific giant salamander, Puget Sound garter snake.

Other species inhabit specific vegetative zones in the sub-biome; e.g., the fisher and flammulated owl in silver fir and hemlock zones below timberline, the wolverine in the alpine zone above timberline, the grizzly bear in the Sitka spruce-hemlock zone of southeastern Alaska. The cougar, northern lynx and Alaska grizzly bear are wilderness species that need the seclusion and escape cover provided by dense forests.

(b) Aquatic Wildlife

The waters in most of the streams and rivers in the montane coniferous forest biome are usually of high quality and low temperatures. Aquatic ecosystems are diverse and complex. They usually contain a fair grade of aquatic food. High elevation streams support trout, whitefish, and sculpin. Lower streams support chub, carp, dace, suckers, and salmonids. Other common fish in the biome are black bass, sunfish, catfish, pike, and minnows.

West Coast streams produce anadromous steelhead and five commercially important species of salmon: the chinook, sockeye, chum, pink, and coho. Migratory populations of coastal cutthroat trout are present in many coastal streams from California to Bristol Bay, Alaska. The anadromous fisheries are unique and directly dependent on the forest watershed.

Inland waters of the coniferous biome that do not empty directly into the sea are characterized by high quality, low temperatures, and a fair grade of aquatic food.

The Taiga forest provides aquatic ecosystems characterized by high quality water of low temperatures in lakes, ponds, and marshes in various stages of natural succession. The larger river systems support commercially important runs of Pacific salmon, among them the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon fishery. Sockeye and chum salmon are the most numerous anadromous species. Typical residents are arctic grayling, whitefish, sheefish, and lake trout.

(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife

Endangered species include the Columbia white-tailed deer, American peregrine falcon, greenback cutthroat trout, Kendall Warm Springs dace, Northern Rocky Mountain wolf, and the grizzly bear.

(d) Domestic Livestock

Most domestic livestock grazing in the coniferous forest occurs on the mountain meadows interspersed as small islands throughout the biome and in open forest stands where forage species grow among scattered trees. Generally cattle graze in the lower elevations and most of the sheep in the higher elevations. The alpine zone is grazed almost exclusively by sheep. Most livestock grazing occurs between June 15 and October 1. Some horses graze in the biome in connection with recreation activities. Although horse use is generally minor, it tends to concentrate in popular areas. Over the years, livestock use declined on the coniferous forests as portions were withdrawn from grazing for watershed protection purposes. This trend could continue as demand for water increases in the West.

(e) Wild Horses and Burros

Some bands of wild horses in the desert biome will range into remote areas of the montane coniferous forest as part of their seasonal habitat. Because of the higher elevations in the coniferous biome, adverse winter climatic conditions restrict year-round use of the biome by wild horses except in those mountain areas where exposed south-facing slopes may afford marginal habitat.

(f) Human

About 20 percent of the western states' population resides in this biome, principally in the Pacific Northwest. Population densities vary, as they do in the grassland biome. Unlike the grassland biome, the rural population has increased since 1960 instead of decreased, with the exception of the Idaho mountainous area. Except for the Pacific Northwest and the California portions of this biome, income levels are lower than average and the percent of families below poverty levels is higher, but differences are not as great as in the grassland biome.

The economies of this biome are heavily dependent on primary type industries. In the Pacific Northwest and mountains of California and Idaho, the timber industry dominates the primary sector with agriculture second. In the mountainous areas of Arizona and Colorado, mining is the major primary industry very closely followed by agriculture. In Montana, Utah, and Wyoming, agriculture--principally livestock production--is at least of equal importance with mining and timber. Except for the Pacific Northwest, the percent of employment in agriculture is above the western average, but not nearly as high as in the grassland biome. Income derived from livestock production ranges from a low of two-tenths of 1 percent of total income in the Pacific Northwest, to about 6 percent of total income in the Idaho portion of the biome. The NRL supply 1,110,000 cattle AUM's and 250,000 sheep AUM's which represent about 6 percent of the total livestock feed consumed in the biome.

The Seattle and Portland metropolitan areas are located in a broad valley extending from Puget Sound to central western Oregon. The valley contains the bulk of the intensive agricultural land in the region. Low cost hydro-electric power, abundant water resources, and deep water ports have contributed to industrial growth in these urban areas.

Most communities in the montane coniferous forest are also small and serve the logging, ranching, or mining which may occur in the area. Recreation expenditures also play a significant role in community support throughout this biome.

Essentially uninhabited outside the Anchorage and Fairbanks urban areas, the vast region of central Alaska has a population density of only 0.5 persons per square mile. Scattered and remote white and native settlements are located along major river valleys and the limited road systems. In percentage terms, Alaska's rate of growth has been rapid in the past decade with a 33 percent increase in population between 1960 and 1970, for a total populatkon of 300,000. Over half of these, 52 percent, live outside urban areas (Bureau of the Census, 1972).

Native inhabitants of the sub-biome are of the Na-Dene Indian linguistic stock and are highly dependent on fish and wildlife for their livelihood (U.S. Geological Survey, 1970). Summer employment fighting the numerous Taiga wildfires is a source of income to the men. Additional employment is available in the numerous small sawmills that operate part time in the Interior to provide logs and lumber for local use.

The lack of adequate road transportation in this area of Alaska has limited development largely to those areas that are reachable by the few existing roads. Air travel is used extensively throughout the Interior. Consequently, much of the region remains wild, remote and inaccessible and represents one of the largest remaining contiguous wilderness areas in the world.

c. Ecological Interrelationships

The western coniferous forest communities are characterized by tree species generally providing dense canopy cover and heavy shade. However, woodland-bushland and grassland communities are interspersed through the biome, especially in the montane coniferous forest.

Precipitation in the coniferous forest ecosystem is high, except in the Taiga, and generally there is adequate moisture for maximum production of the living components. The forest watershed is a primary source of water flowing through biomes at lower elevations.

Moderate amounts of soil organisms occur. A large volume of nutrients is contained in the biomass of large trees. The turnover time in ratio of biomass to production is slow and over-exploitation could reduce productivity by physical removal of the nutrients from the ecosystem.

Coniferous forest ecosystems generally occur on moderate to steep slopes and often on unstable and erodable soils. Physical disturbance of the forest can increase stream temperatures and sediment concentrations and can adversely affect aquatic ecosystems. Aquatic ecosystems in the biome are complex and diverse. Anadromous fisheries are dependent upon the forest watershed, especially in the northwest coastal forest.

Fire is an important ecological factor in the biome, since it can destroy a stabilized habitat by removing the predominant forest cover and result in creating new biological communities. However, the increased diversity of plant species, higher protein content and edge effect created by fire can improve the habitat for wildlife. The results of fire are especially important in the northwest coastal coniferous forest, an area of high rainfall, but where an annual dry season in July and August may create critical fire hazards. On the other hand, fire is considered by many forest ecologists as necessary to perpetuate the lodgepole pine type in the montane forest. Favorable climatic conditions generally enhance rehabilitation and natural successional recovery in the northwest coastal and montane forest ecosystems.

Daubenmire and Daubenmire (1968) indicated that fire incidence in the Northern Rocky Mountain stands reaches a probability of certainty in 450 to 500 years. In many stands the fire cycle is much shorter than this; as short as 8 to 15 years in ponderosa pine stands.

Certain tree species in the northern Rocky Mountains owe their present widespread occurrence, if not their very existence, to fire. These include western larch, lodgepole pine, and western white pine. Fire is responsible for the occurrence of ponderosa pine over the greater part of its range in the northern Rocky Mountains; without fire, Douglas-fir and grand fir would occupy areas where ponderosa pine now occurs but is not climax. Fire is also responsible for larger acreages of Douglas-fir stands and to a lesser extent grand fir stands where these species are not climax. It has also favored the distribution of Engelmann spruce at the expense of subalpine fir.

In the Pacific Northwest Douglas fir is mainly a pioneer or seral species that reproduces after fire or other disturbances. Much forest land in western Washington and Oregon is occupied today by relatively young seral stands that have followed clearing, logging, and wildfire (Franklin and Dyrness, 1973). Carelessness, often associated with clearing and logging, has resulted in extensive fires during the dry, warm summers and falls. Single burns usually reforest well from individual trees or groups of trees left by the fast-moving fires; areas burned repeatedly often remain treeless for many years. (It is such multiple burns in the Rocky Mountains that contribute to excellent browse conditions and elk habitat.)

Fire also has been important in shaping the vegetation in the ponderosa pine zone in Washington and Oregon. Competing tree species, such as grand fir and Douglas fir, are considerably less fire tolerant, especially in the sapling and pole size classes (Franklin and Dyrness, 1973). As a result, periodic fires in the past served to maintain ponderosa pine in ecotonal areas where, without fire disturbance, the climax tree species would have attained dominance (Weaver, 1955, 1959, 1961).

The usual forest vegetation on dry sites in Alaska is white spruce, paper birch, and balsam poplar. Following a fire, fireweed and willow reinvade the site, and an almost immediate replacement by aspen and birch. Eventually white spruce stands are established, but the process is often slow. On wet sites, and because of the semi-serotinous cones on black spruce, the pattern is generally one of rapid replacement by black spruce after fire. The present day mosaic of vegetation in interior Alaska is closely related to past fire history. Nearly all stands are less than 150 years old, and most represent earlier stages of fire succession.

In addition to effects on plant succession, fires in the Taiga significantly affect permafrost and soil nutrients. Burning the insulating organic layer of permafrost soils increases the depth of the annual thaw, or active layer. There also seems to be a release of nutrients and a fertilizing effect of fire on the organic soils in Alaska.

Thus, a high percentage of the vegetation, within all forest zones of the coniferous biome, is at one stage or another of succession following past fires.

d. Human Interest Values

(1) Land Uses

Mining of gold and silver, and later timber harvesting, were the principal attractions of the western mountains. Although many of the early mining settlements have either disappeared or are ghost towns today, others, more favorably situated, survived. In certain locations, mining still provides significant income and employment. Many rural communities in Alaska, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Wyoming, Washington, and Oregon which had their greatest population prior to 1920 have since decreased. Large national forests and parks in the area have virtually no permanent year-round habitation. Forest products, mining, agriculture, and tourism are the mainstays of the economy.

Communities tend to be small, and are oriented to logging, ranching, or mining which may occur in the area. A phenomenon that began after World War II and has increased alarmingly in some parts of the region having non-existent or weak local land use controls has been the development of "speculative" homesites. Frequently located in remote rural areas, these recreation sub-divisions more often than not have failed to develop as portrayed in the sales brochures.

Recreation-tourism is growing rapidly in importance throughout the biome. In areas with outstanding resources, such as the Yellowstone Park area, or Aspen, Colorado, tourism is the mainstay for local communities. The Pacific Crest Trail, routed along the crest of the Cascade Mountains, stretching from Canada to Mexico, leads to points of scenic beauty accessible only by pack horse or foot and annually receives increased use. Throughout the montane region Federal, state, county, and municipal organizations as well as private enterprises have been active in the development of scenic and recreation resources. Hunting, fishing, sightseeing, picnicking, and camping, and winter sports are the predominant types of recreation activities. The Pacific Coast forms the western boundary of the Coastal sub-biome. The proximity to the ocean adds to the recreational diversity of the area. Outdoor activities such as swimming, fishing, and camping are some of the more common forms of recreation activity. In Alaska's vast Interior, recreational use can be expected to increase rapidly. Current estimates show 9.8 million acres of natural lakes and reservoirs, 50,000 miles of fishing streams, 255 million acres of big and small game habitat (containing 760,000 big game animals) and 67 million acres of waterfowl habitat located on the public lands, most of which are within the Taiga region. Estimated recreation visits to the public lands within the region during 1971 exceeded 5.8 million. In addition, the streams and lakes yielded an estimated 69.5 million pounds of commercial fish harvested in 1971 (Bureau of Land Management, 1971).

(2) Aesthetics

The montane coniferous forest and, to a lesser degree, the northwest coastal coniferous forest, provide some of the most spectacular scenery in the western United States. Such natural attractions as Yellowstone Park, the Grand Canyon, and numerous other lesser known sights located throughout the montane region annually attract hundreds of thousands of sightseers. Further west the Coastal redwood forests of northern California and the rainforests of the Douglas fir region of western Oregon and Washington offer a more or less continous panorama of towering forest broken by occasional streams tumbling from the Coast Range Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. Less apparent from the ground except in localized areas, man's intrusion into the coastal forest with roads, power transmission corridors, and timber harvest activities create harsh contrasts when viewed from the air.

Landforms vary from the rounded foothills of the Cascades and Coastal Range to the angular peaks of the Rockies, from relatively flat mesas and basins to nearly vertical canyons. Natural lines occur more often in the environment of the montane than in either the coastal or Taiga sub-biomes. These may occur as abrupt changes in vegetation types caused by soil changes, avalanche paths, or rock intrusions. They may occur as horizontal deposition lines on the face of an exposed cliff or cut bank.

Scale is frequently so vast as to be overpowering to those more accustomed to urban surroundings. The extreme vertical relief common to the mountains is frightening to some. To others the solitude of the mountains and the remoteness of the Taiga coniferous forest offer a welcome contrast. The wide variety of forms, textures, colors, and natural lines are what make the scenic values interesting, while vastness of scale and distance bring feelings of isolation and solitude to those who live within or visit this region (Bureau of Land Management, 1972).

(3) Geological

The montane contains geologically interesting features left by glaciation. Included are morains, lakes, U-shaped valleys; erosion features like canyons, pinnacle peaks, and mudlows; volcanic features such as lava flows, eroded ash beds, dikes, exposed plugs, calderas, hot springs, and geysers.

The Taiga also shows evidence of glacial action. Such structures as moraines, drumlins, glacial lakes, and other features occur, along with features associated with permafrost and its actions such as pingos, thaw lakes, beaded drainages, etc.

The northwest coastal is edged with an interesting eroded coastline of natural arches, isolated rock islands, sand dunes, and steep cliffs. The higher elevations contain canyons, volcanic features, caves, and faulting evidence (Bureau of Land Management, 1972).

(4) Archeological

Early man's entry into the New World from Asia via a Bering Strait land bridge, estimated to be 1,000 miles wide when the seas were at their lowest, is believed to have occurred between 20 and 40 thousand years ago. Radio-carbon dated remains going back to about 10,000 B.C., show well-developed stone-chipping techniques and hunting skills adapted to the taking of large animals. Most evidence comes from game kill sites and stratified cave deposits (U.S. Geological Survey, 1970).

The montane forest was utilized for food gathering and hunting by the desert culture that developed in the trans-Rocky Mountain west.

In the Taiga, the Old Bering Sea culture developed into the early stages of Eskimo culture based on the hunting of sea animals. Further inland in the Alaskan interior the sub-Arctic culture, based on the Old Cordilleran and Big Game hunting traditions, developed into the Northwest Microblade tradition of people who lived by hunting caribou, elk, buffalo, and fishing. The Microblade tradition is felt to have provided the core for the Denetasino tradition which became the Athabascan speaking Indians. Archeological sites are mostly campsites along streams and lakes and on ridgetops with occasional rock shelters.

The northwest coastal coniferous Forest was the home of the Northwest Coast culture. Essentially a river or river-mouth culture, oriented around salmon fishing, the Northwest Coast culture is noteworthy for its vigorous and distinctive art and great use of wood. Village sites were located along streams and near sheltered inlets along the coast and consisted of both pit and surface houses. Occasional rock shelters and some campsites away from the streams are found.

(5) Historical

The montane shares its history with that of the nearby grasslands and desert. Many of the early settlements started as mushrooming mining camps that later blossomed into the present day cities of Baker, Lewiston, Boise, and Helena. Most of the early mining camps became empty shells as the ore petered out and their inhabitants moved on to greener pastures. Some of these "ghost towns" such as Montana's Virginia City have survived the ravages of time and today are popular tourist attractions.

Other early settlements grew up around military forts and trading posts located along exploration and immigration routes to the West. Today many of these early sites have been given national designation as historical sites and monuments.

The early history of the Northwest Coastal developed around fur trading, lumbering, and to a lesser degree, mining. Spain, England, Russia, and the United States all laid claim to this region through discovery, exploration, and occupation. One of the earliest white settlements was Astoria, established as a fur trading post by John Jacob Astor's Pacific Fur Company. This company was later sold to the Hudson's Bay Company which relocated the headquarters a hundred miles up the Columbia from Astoria and established Fort Vancouver, which exists in the present as a national historic site (Oregon State University, 1968).

Approximately 20 years after the establishment of Fort Vancouver the few American settlers in the Oregon country, tired of living under British laws and the authority of the Hudson's Bay Company, met at Champoeg, near Newberg, and voted to establish a provisional government until Congress would extend jurisdiction over them. This was the first American government to be established west of Iowa. Today Champoeg is a State park (Oregon State University, 1968).

Scattered throughout the coastal forest are remainders of the region's early history. Old mining and logging camps, remnants of military posts, and preserved homes of early pioneers are some examples.

The Taiga of Alaska was initially claimed and explored by Russia. Early trading posts and missions (some still in use) were established during the period of exploration. After purchase by the United States the area experienced a gold rush which created numerous "boom and bust" settlements, of which the relics of many still exist. Many of the present native settlements occupy sites that were established hundreds of years ago. Some remain little changed from primitive times.

(6) Cultural

Numerous Indian groups currently make their home in various locations scattered throughout or nearby the montane forest. Most of these reside on the following reservations which extend into the montane forest: Coleville, Yakima, Coeur d'Alene, Nez Perce, Flathead, Warm Springs, Crow and portions of the Navajo, Uintah and Ouray, Pueblo, Fort Apache, and Tule River Indian Reservations. Many of these groups derive part of their economic and spiritual sustenance from the coniferous forest.

The Taiga forest of Alaska contains one of the largest remaining native American groups still living in much the same way as they have since contact times. They depend to a large extent upon the Taiga for their livelihood.

The northwest coastal forest contains two small Indian reservations, the Quinalt and Hoopa Valley Reservations. Both rely to some degree on the coastal forest for their livelihood.

5. Tundra Biome

The Tundra biome encompasses all of the area north and west of the Taiga forests in Alaska. This treeless zone extends poleward from the Brooks Range to the Arctic Ocean, and includes the Seward Peninsula, the Bering Sea coast, the Alaska Peninsula, the Aleutian Islands chain, and the lower portion of Kodiak Island. The extent of this biome is shown in Figure II-35. Figures II-36 and II-37 are photographs of arctic Alaska and western Alaska tundra landscapes respectively.

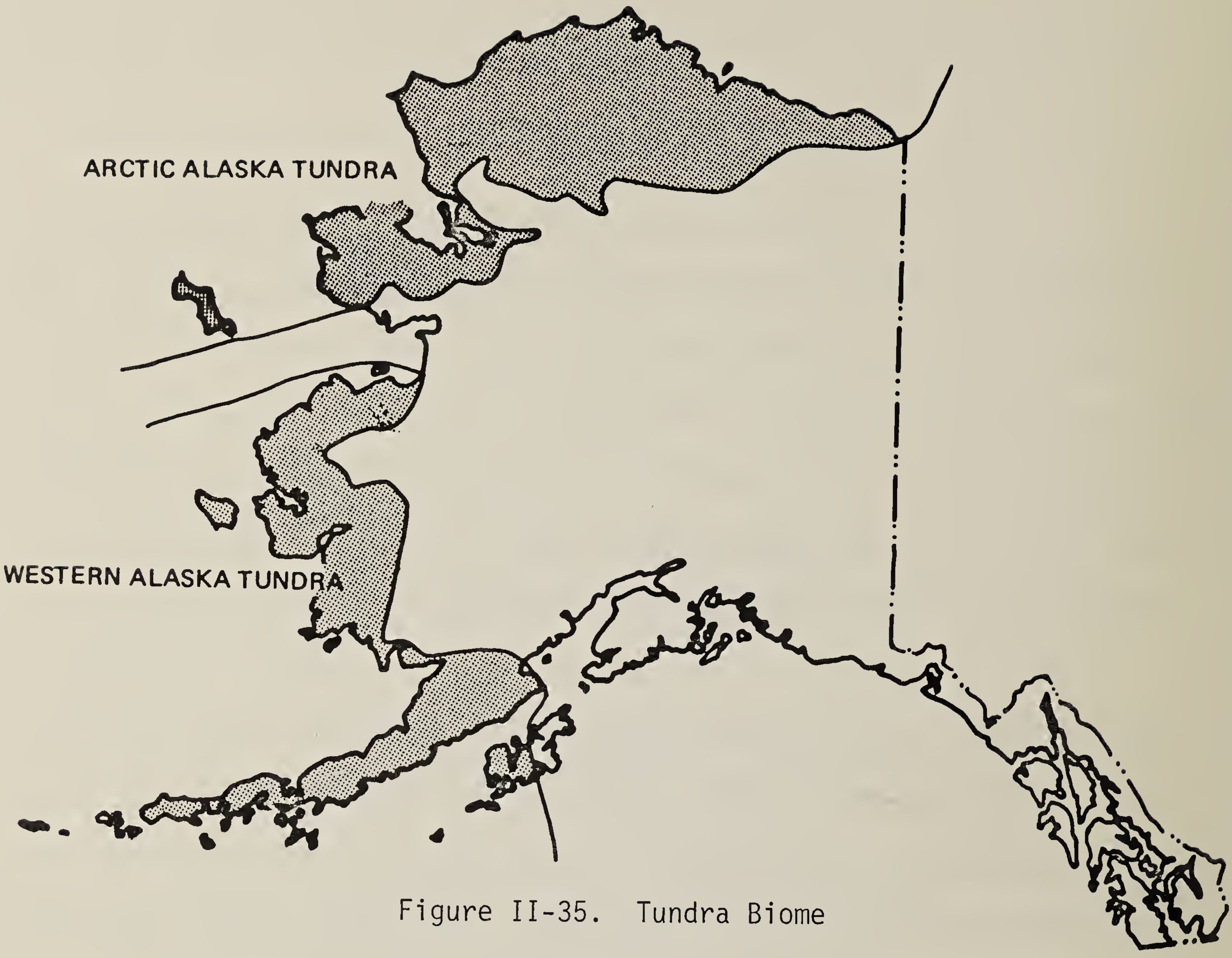
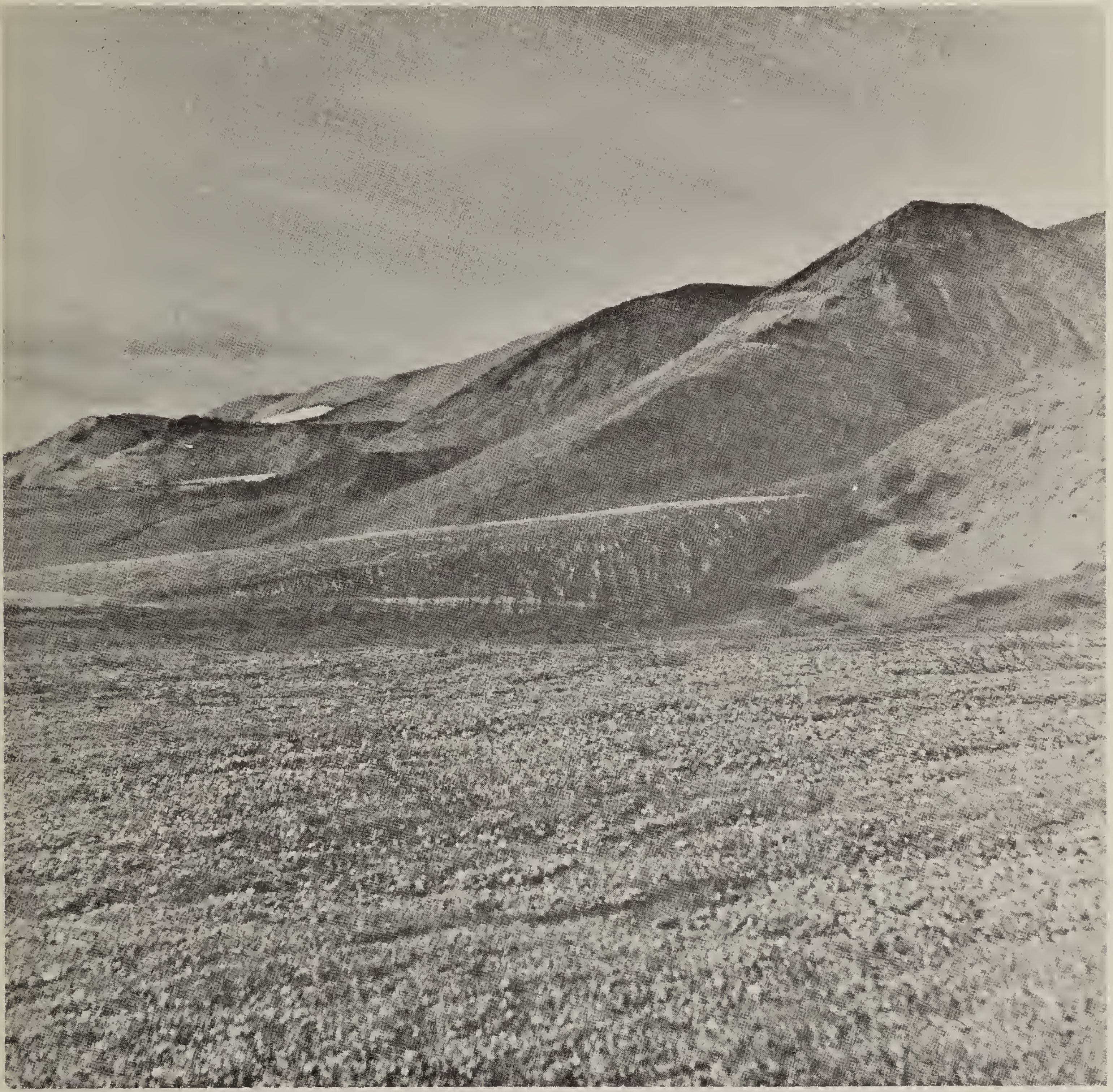
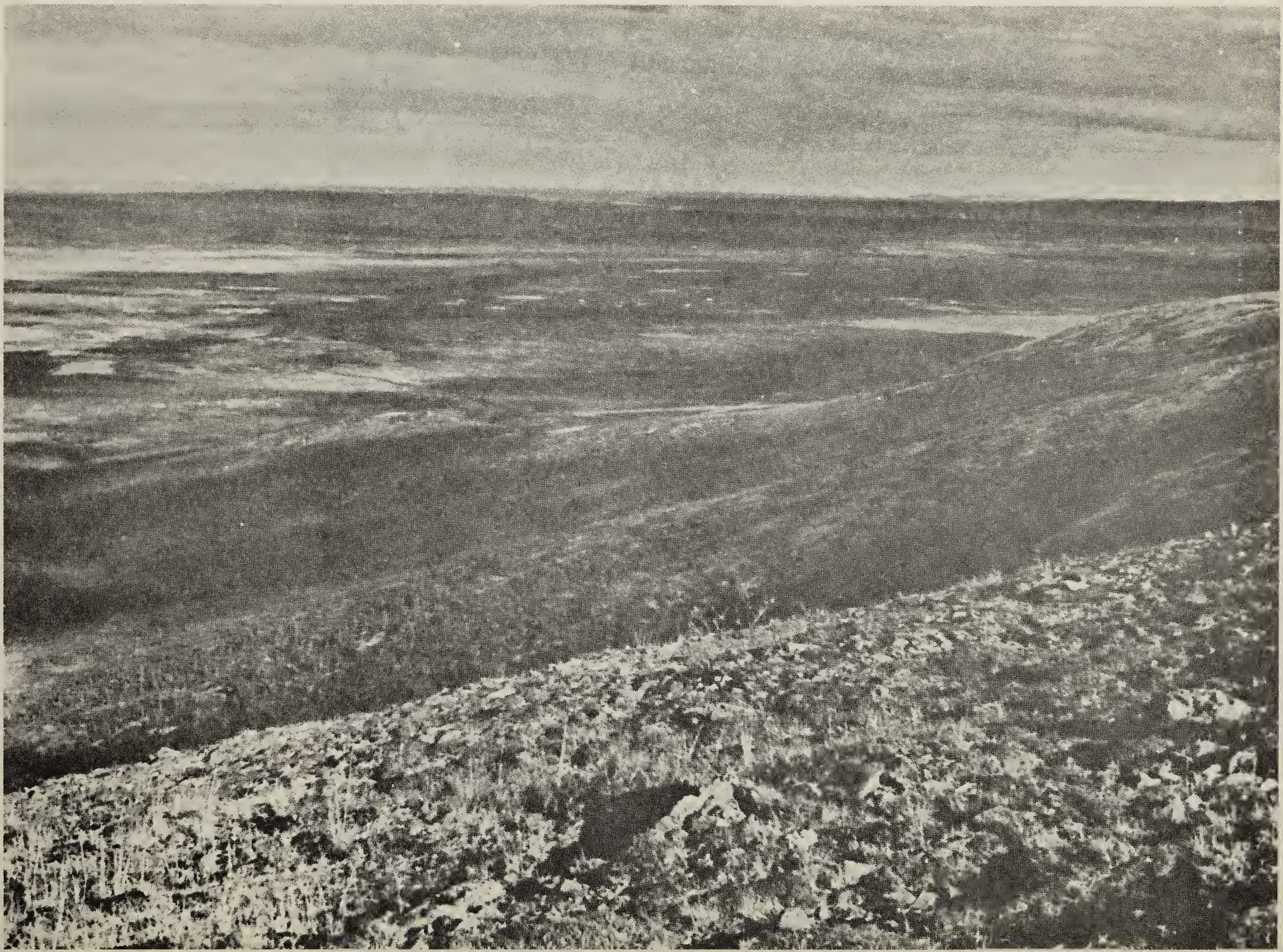


Figure II-35. Tundra Biome



Bureau of Land Managemement Photo

Figure II-36. The Arctic Alaska tundra



Bureau of Land Managemement Photo

Figure II-37. The Western Alaska tundra

Virtually all of the Tundra region of northern Alaska has been in Federal ownership until recently. However, state land selections and native claim selections surrounding coastal settlements will reduce the acreage of Federal lands over the next several years, under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act.

a. Non-Living Components

(1) Topography

In northern Alaska, the tundra extends from flat coastal areas along the Arctic Ocean to moderately and steeply sloping mountains with 1,000 to 3,000 feet of relief at the west end of the Brooks Range. Flat, open plains extend southward along the west coast and along the northwest coast of the Seward Peninsula. Low to high, gently sloping hills with 500 to 1,000 feet of relief are the predominant topographic features of the north and central parts of the Seward Peninsula. The peninsula's southern coast is predominantly low, gently sloping mountains with 1,000 to 3,000 feet of relief. The steeply sloping mountains along the west end of the peninsula lack vegetative cover; the tundra vegetation in this area is restricted to a few valleys and the gently sloping hills, and flat areas near the coast. South of the Seward Peninsula, the topography varies from flat plains along the Yukon and Kuskokwim Rivers to high, moderately sloping mountains with over 3,000 feet of relief along the southwestern coast. In the Aleutian Islands, topography varies from smooth, gently sloping plains along the northern coastal areas to high rugged mountainous areas; relief varies from island to island.

(2) Soils

The soils of the north slope coastal areas; the areas around the mouth of the Kobuk, Noatak, Yukon, and Kuskokwim Rivers; the north coast of the Seward Peninsula; and the north coast of the Aleutians, are formed on Quaternary sediments. Soils in the Brooks Range and on the Seward Peninsula are formed mainly on sediments of Upper Paleozoic Age. The mountains which reach the ocean along the southwest coast of Alaska are composed of Cretaceous Age sediments while the islands of the Aleutian chain are predominantly Quaternary and Tertiary Age volcanic rocks.

Permafrost, an important characteristic of the tundra, is found throughout the biome. There are some areas where it is not continuous due to climatic and terrain factors. The permafrost zone along the northern coastal area is as much as 2,000 feet thick. Though it is generally a contínous layer to far south of the Brooks Range, it thins southward as the ice-soil ratio decreases.

Disturbance or removal of the mat of vegetative material which insulates the permafrost can cause rapid soil erosion and massive slumping. The soil's susceptibility to such damage is directly proportional to its water content. Dry, gravelly permafrost soils are affected little by disturbance-induced thawing. Wet, silty (or ice-rich) permafrost soils are highly susceptible to oozing slumpage when thawed (Hubbert, 1967).

(3) Minerals

The leasable minerals, coal and phosphate, are found primarily in the Cretaceous and Tertiary sediments on the north and south slopes, respectively, of the Brooks Range in Arctic Alaska. North slope coal lies in the same general area found to contain large oil and gas reserves. The Arctic coal ranges from anthracites through subbituminous to medium and high volatile bituminous. Sulfur is found near the western end of the Alaskan Peninsula and is the result of volcanic activity.

The locatable minerals, gold, copper, platinum, silver, lead, zinc, tin, fluorspar, barite, antimony, and iron are to be found in western Alaska on the Seward Peninsula. These are related to the Paleozoic sediments.

The famed Alaska North Slope oil and gas field underlies the arctic Alaska tundra. A relatively small segment of the Alaskan pipeline will pass through this area.

Areas having oil and gas potential located within this sub-biome are in large part included within the following categories: (1) Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 4; (2) Arctic National Wildlife Range; (3) state land selections under ANCSA; (4) regional land deficiency withdrawals under ANCSA; (5) native claims under ANCSA; (6) withdrawals for possible inclusions in the Four National Systems (D-2 lands) under ANCSA and (7) village land deficiency withdrawals under ANCSA. Currently, however, no Federal lands are available for leasing.

No significant oil and gas potential areas have been identified on the Seward Peninsula. Some small oil and gas deposits have been identified, however, exploration activities in this area undoubtedly will await exploration of the better areas in Alaska, as well as development of oil and gas transportation and production facilities that would bring costs down, making the smaller oil fields economically competitive.

(4) Water

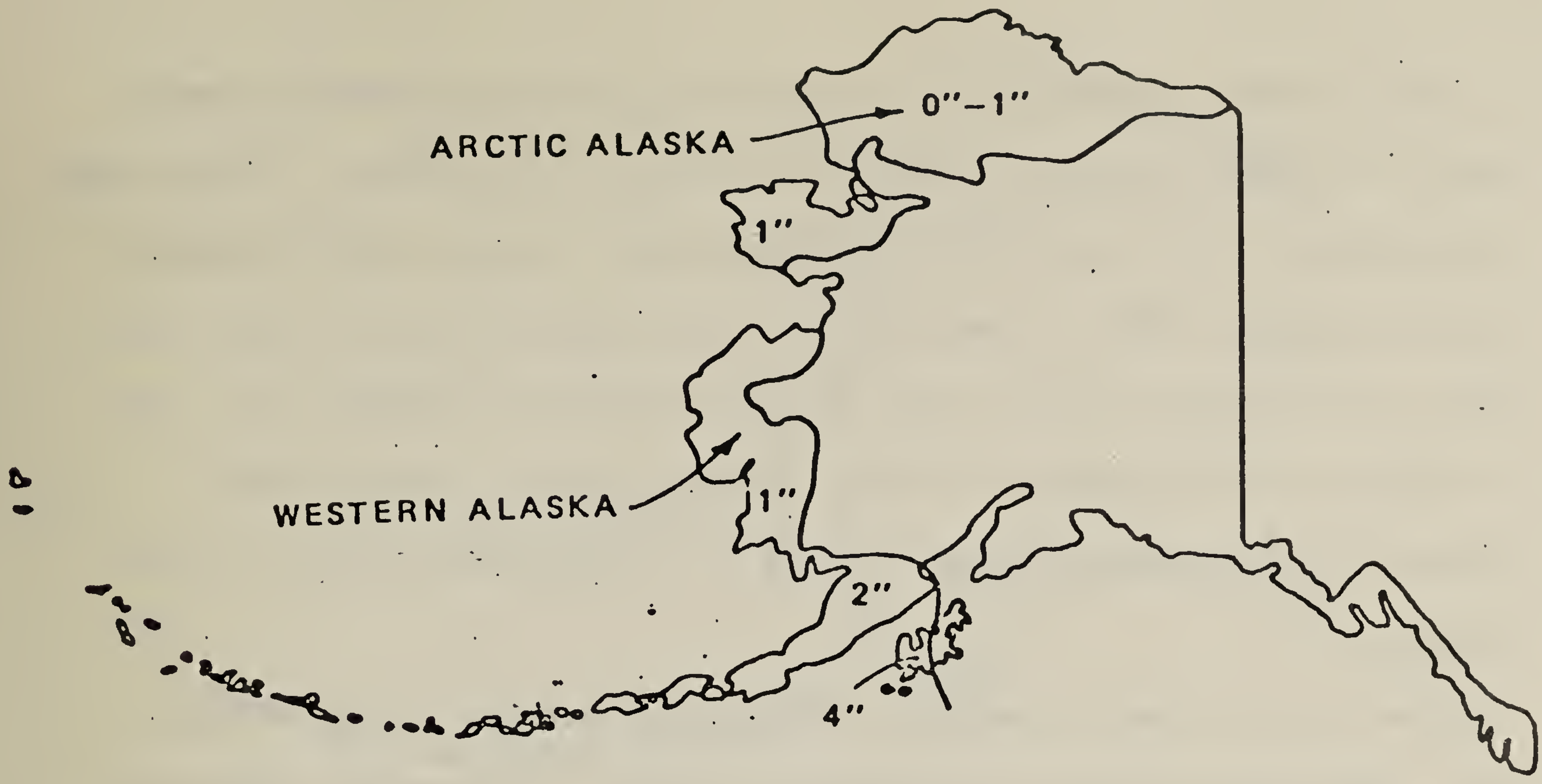
Surface waters of the tundra biome empty into the Bering, Chukchi, and Beaufort Seas. Lakes, ponds, and marshes are very important to wildlife. Average annual runoff varies with annual precipitation. However, little is known about actual water yields in the tundra areas. Because of the low evaporation and evapotranspiration, the tundra is considered a water surplus area.

The quality of most surface waters is good. The suspended-sediment content of glacier-fed streams and rivers is high. Streams that flow from extensive swampy areas are usually high in organic and iron content because the drainage of such areas often is restricted by impermeable subsurface materials, including permafrost.

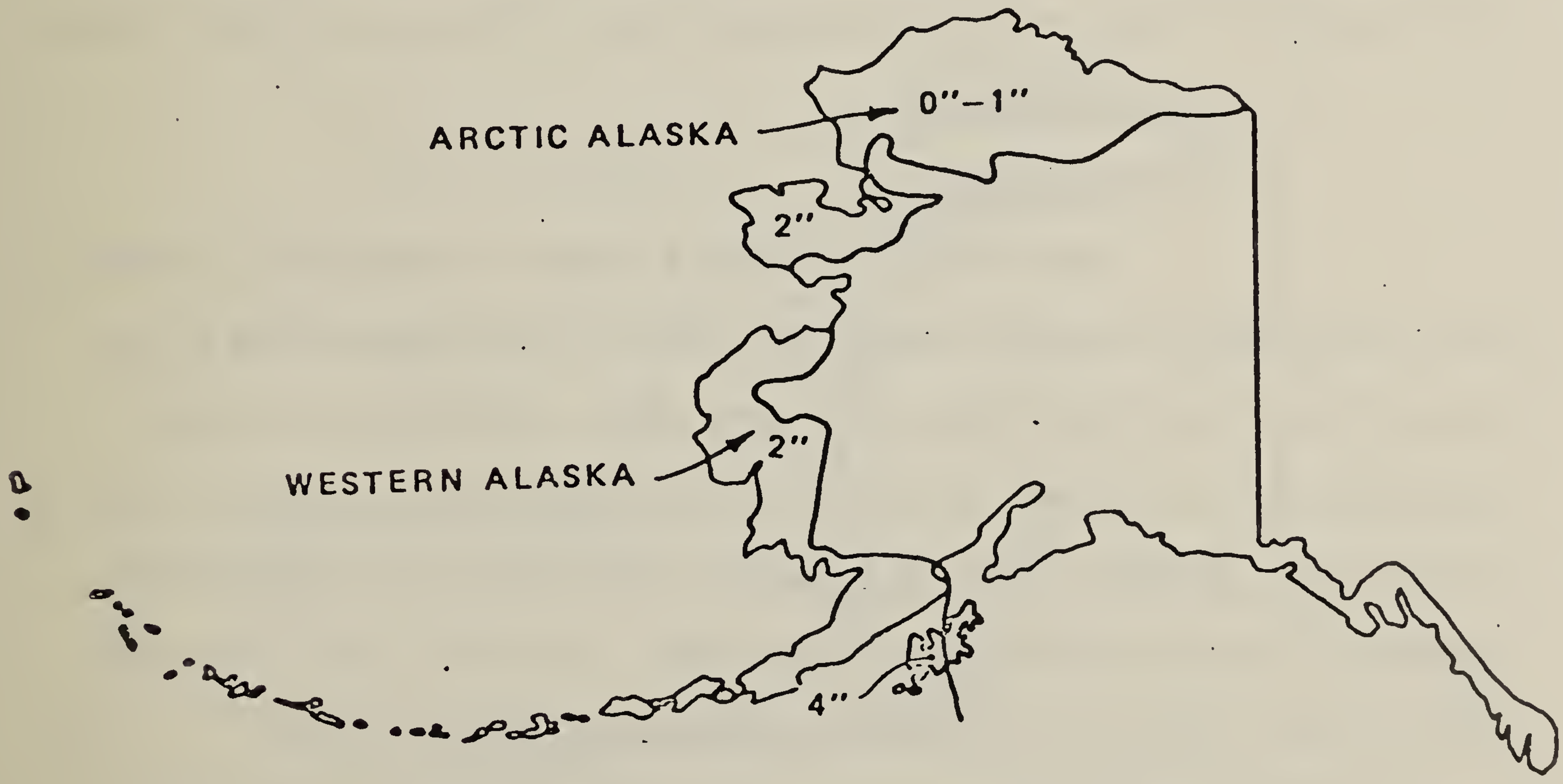
(5) Climate

The tundra biome has a relatively dry polar climate in the north and a rainy climate with severe winters in the south. The average annual precipitation ranges from 8 inches along the Arctic coast to 16 inches at Nome, 20 inches at Bethel, and 60 inches at Kodiak.

During winter, the Arctic high pressure system brings a dry, cold flow of air to the northern part of the biome. At the same time, the high pressure system picks up moist air from the Gulf of Alaska and deposits it along the western coast. In the summer, a low pressure system develops in the Bering Sea and produces a flow of moist air over the west and south coasts and the interior of Alaska. As a result, considerable precipitation falls in July, August, and September (Figure II-38).



MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JANUARY



MONTHLY PRECIPITATION (INCHES)–JULY

Figure II-38. Average January and July precipitation in the tundra biome

While summer temperatures are not greatly different from one Tundra region to another, there are greater variations in the winter. In the north during January, air flow from a cold continental air mass causes temperatures to average -10° F. Mean monthly temperatures during the winter are warmer in the south; at Nome, the January temperature averages -5° F. and at Kodiak, the temperature in January averages 30° F. (Figure II-39). Average July temperatures range from 40° F. in the north to 50° F. in the south.

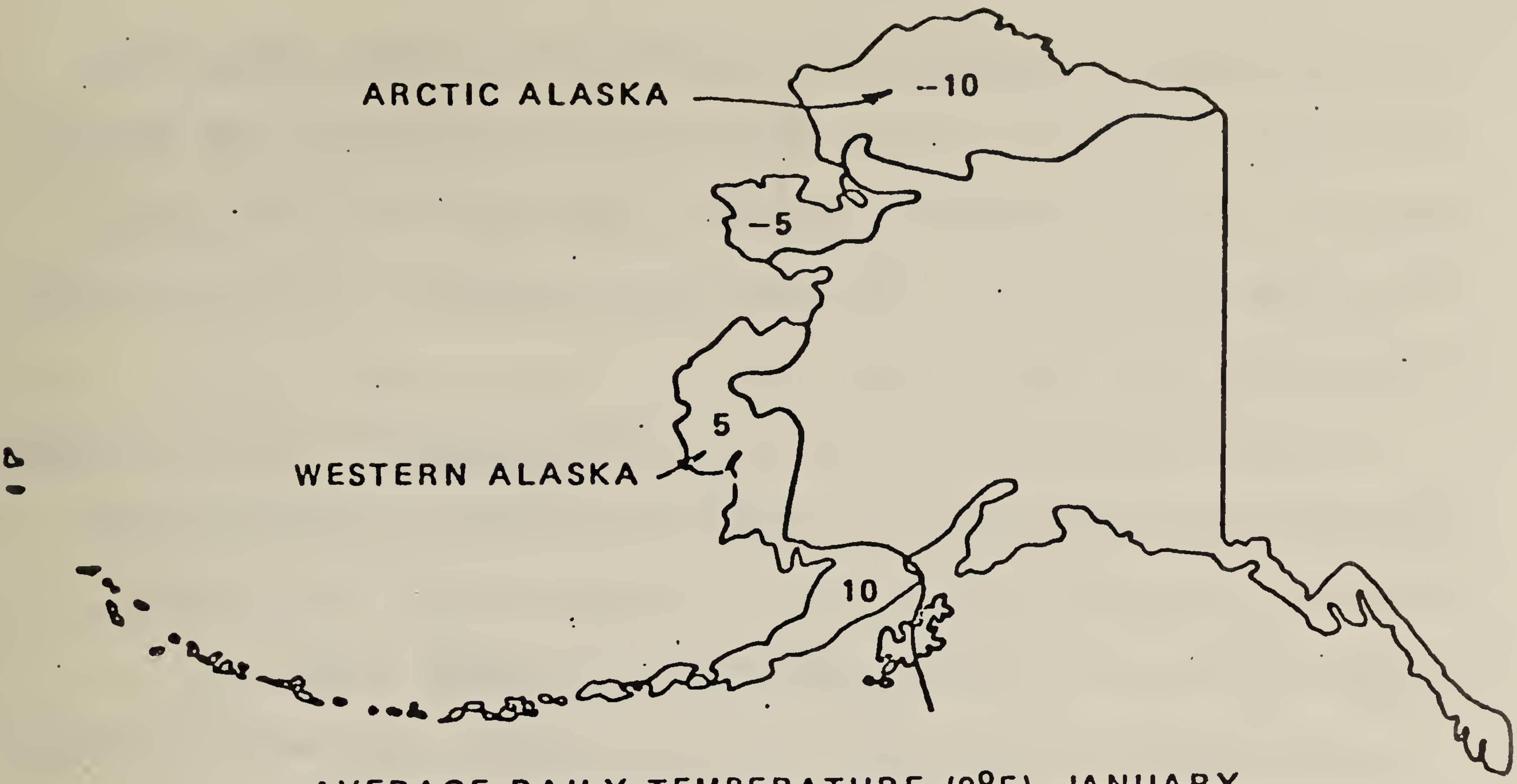
The growing season along the western coast averages about 100 days a year. Under the influence of prolonged daylight in the summer, the daily temperature range is small and vegetative growth is rapid. Growing seasons along the Arctic north slope are shorter than on the west coast, ranging from less than 30 days on the north slope to over 150 days on Kodiak Island.

b. Living Components

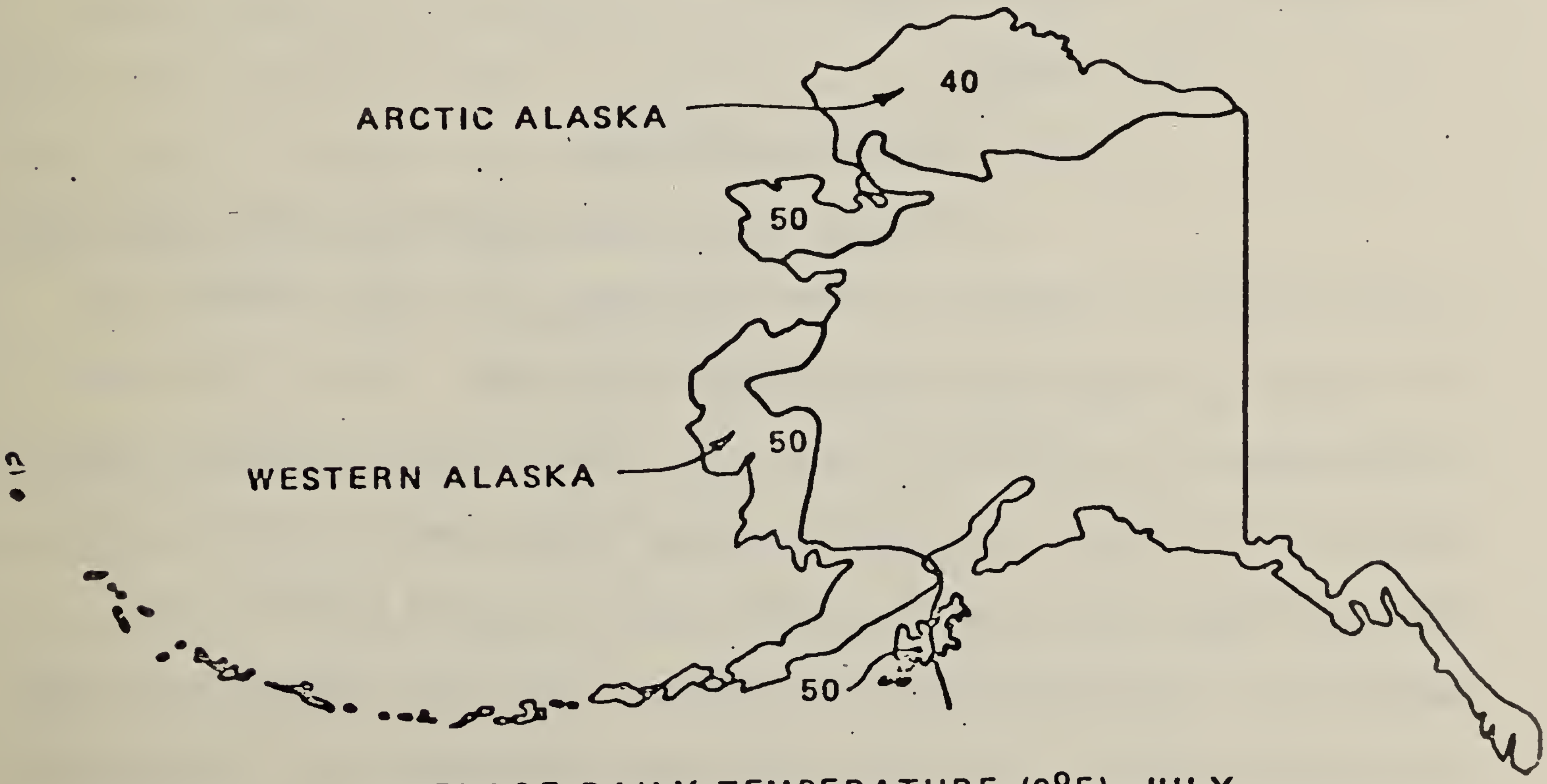
(1) Vegetation

Vegetation in the Tundra biome is structurally simple and is dominated by grasses, mosses and sedges of low stature (The Structure and Function of the Tundra Ecosystem, 1971). Herbaceous and woody vegetation such as willows and birch is also present but is generally low or prostrate. However, 10 to 12 foot tall willows may form impenetrable thickets in gullies and other sheltered areas. In other places there may be much bare, stony soil with only meager amounts of plant life.

Essentially an Arctic grassland, the treeless Tundra supports many lichens and mosses. During the short growing season, temperatures often are near the lower limit of biological activity (32° F. average in the warmest month). Nearly all plants are perennial, and annual production is low.



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)–JANUARY



AVERAGE DAILY TEMPERATURE (0°F)–JULY

Figure II-39. Average daily temperatures in the tundra biome in January and July

Most plants appear xerophytic, having stiff, hard, leathery leaves with thick cuticle. The short growing season forces the plants to rush through their life cycles; in many cases they are often frozen again while still in their flower or fruit stage. The total annual increment of energy captured by the ecosystem is small.

A thick, spongy mat of living and undecayed vegetation often saturated with water and interspersed with ponds characterizes the low Tundra when not frozen. The high Tundra on steep slopes may support only a sparse growth of lichens and grasses, with many visibly barren areas.

The vegetation of the Tundra forms an insulating layer which is critical to the stability of the ecosystem. Removal or compaction of the vegetative structure can cause the permafrost to melt, leading to erosion and breakdown of the permafrost layer.

(2) Animals

(a) Terrestrial Wildlife

Tundra may have little vegetative cover with only a scanty growth of lichens and other low plants. Yet, many mammals and birds remain in the Tundra biome throughout the year. These include the caribou, musk ox, arctic hare, arctic fox, lemming, and ptarmigan. Other characteristic mammals of the Arctic slope include the polar bear, arctic wolf, wolverine, Alaska red fox, marmot, Parry's ground squirrel, red-backed mouse, and several moles and shrews. The smaller mammals make their winter homes underneath the snow cover where temperatures are not so severe.

The uplands are inhabited by caribou (except in winter), Dall sheep, barren ground grizzly bear, marmot, ground squirrel, rock ptarmigan, horned lark, and Lapland longspur.

Seal, walrus, and polar bears inhabit the coastal margins or the drift ice, where they feed mainly on marine life.

The populations of some animals vary greatly from one year to another. Examples of predator and prey which experience marked population fluctuations include the lemming and its predators, the owls and jaegers, and the showshoe hare and its predator, the lynx (U.S. Dept. of Agric., 1965).

Large numbers of many kinds of insects live in the low marshier elevations of the Tundra. Most hibernating insects withstand temperatures down to 50° F. below zero. Mosquitoes, gnats, flies, beetles, bees, wasps, moth larvae, spiders, and mites may overwinter in plant tufts and under stones and driftwood. Aquatic insects and larvae either burrow into mud or pass the winter in the egg stage.

Large numbers of birds migrate to the Tundra to nest and rear their young during the brief summer. Waterfowl are particularly numerous. Few birds remain in winter; even the snowy owl may move southward. However, willow ptarmigan usually are present year-round.

(b) Aquatic Wildlife

The Tundra lakes, ponds, and bogs do not support large populations of aquatic life due to a lack of minerals and nutrients. Resident fish grow slowly but may grow to a large size when left undisturbed. Characteristic fish are chars, grayling, and whitefish. The chars are lake trout (mackinaw) and arctic char. The arctic grayling is abundant and well distributed in Tundra waters. Shellfish inhabit the major rivers. The chum and pink salmon fry migrate from streams to lakes and spend 1 or 2 years in the lakes before they migrate to the sea.

(c) Threatened or Endangered Wildlife

Endangered species include the Arctic peregrine falcon, which breeds above the Arctic Circle, the American peregrine falcon, and the Aleutian Canada goose, which nests on some of the islands in the Aleutian Islands chain. The status of the polar bear, pine marten, wolverine, and Canada lynx are undetermined. The musk ox, once extinct in Alaska, has been reintroduced. It is uncertain whether the species will be reestablished (U.S. Dept. of the Interior, 1974).

(d) Domestic Livestock

The only domestic livestock in the Alaska Tundra are native-owned reindeer. They are loosely herded in an attempt to keep them separated from the wild caribou herds. Reindeer will commingle and interbreed with caribou, and will revert to the wild state if allowed to roam free.

Reindeer were introduced to Alaska from Lapland to provide a reliable source of meat for the Eskimos and to make them less dependent on wild species. By law, only native Eskimos are permitted to herd reindeer.

(e) Wild Horses and Burros

There are no wild horses in the Tundra biome.

(f) Human

Conditions of the Tundra biome have limited settlement to small villages along the coastline and major rivers. Most inhabitants, aboriginal and non-native alike, are dependent on the surrounding natural resources for subsistence or livelihood.

Eskimos, who make up about one-half of the State's native population, live along the Bering and Arctic seacoasts. Other natives live along the

Yukon, Kuskokwim, Kobuk, and Nootak Rivers. The Aleutian people are the smallest native group and have traditionally lived along the Alaskan Peninsula and Aleutian chain of islands.

The native Alaskan population increased 27 percent from 1950 to 1960 and 19.5 percent from 1960 to 1970. Improved health care has partially arrested high infant death rates, but the native population continues to have more health problems than the national norms.

c. Ecological Interrelationships

The fragile characteristics of the Tundra require specific concern and intensive analysis of environmental impacts of any land disturbance caused by human activities.

Temperature exerts a powerful limiting effect on the Tundra ecosystem; relatively few kinds of organisms have adapted to the extreme cold. The permanently frozen subsoil, or permafrost, limits the amount of unfrozen surface soil available for producing living components, and it restricts the infiltration of water to groundwater reservoirs. A comparatively small amount of water cycles through living plants and animals or percolates through the soil mantle. A large part of the water cycle consists of surface runoff and surface storage within the Tundra ecosystem. Yet, dry summer winds may produce high rates of evaporation, so that water is sometimes a critical factor in nutrient cycling.

Solar radiation is unique in the Arctic Tundra. The almost continuous light throughout the short 45 to 90 day growing season is intense and high in ultraviolet rays. This solar radiation has an overwhelming influence on production in the terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems. The first 2 or 3 weeks of the growing season and the previous summer stand reserves are critical to the energy flow.

The food chain is relatively short, and any radical change in numbers at any of the three trophic levels (producers, consumers, decomposers) has violent repercussions on the other levels and hence on nutrient cycling. Alternative food sources often are limited (Odum, 1959, 1971). The Tundra ecosystem is extremely delicate and responds dramatically to seemingly minor disturbances. The response is, in part, caused by increased energy flow into the upper substrata after the insulating covers of vegetation and peat are grazed, physically disrupted, or removed. The increased energy flow results in accelerated thawing and erosion of the underlying ice-rich permafrost (Research Programs..., 1971).

Tundra ecosystems are a complex mosaic of vegetation, soil, micro-relief and aquatic environments. The flora and fauna and scenic attractions are fairly well known, but ecosystems have not been sufficiently studied. The impacts of a single action on a specific area may be foreseen, but cumulative effects often are unknown. Therefore, any proposed actions should be evaluated in terms of a possible rapid deterioration of the environment and an extremely slow rate of recovery (Hendricks, 1965).

Few cases have been documented regarding fire's role in the Tundra. Scotter (1971) reported that fires are rare and usually limited because of the mixture of wet and dry tundra and barren areas of rock or sand. Barney and Comiskey (1973) documented the occurrence of lightning fires in the Tundra, but the extent of such fires is unknown. Wein's (1971) research in cottongrass tussock Tundra established that burns tend to be light because of the wet soil profile, and no vascular species are completely eliminated by fire. Major vascular species of the community showed rapid post-fire recovery, although reestablishment of lichens and mosses take a long time.

Wein concluded that if other Tundra communities regrow in similar fashion, a burn may be difficult to detect in a very few years after a fire.

Cochrane and Rowe (1969) reported that although conditions are not conducive to burning, fire can and does occur along the northwest shore of Hudson Bay and probably throughout the Tundra:

> "While fire can occur on a variety of topographic sites, its patterning over the landscape appears to be controlled by the vegetation itself. The combustibility and quantity of tundra vegetation fuel is variable, and only lichen mats, low heath and mixed lichen-heath communities appear capable of propagating continuous fire. These communities are normally present on relatively exposed sites where: (a) winds are strong, (b) the soils are well drained and (c) the greatest depth of thaw above the permafrost level occurs. The most likely fire weather is in the long days of summer when evaporation has depleted moisture from the top few inches of soil on ridge crests and slopes."

Their field observations suggested that Tundra fires moved downwind easily but backing fires were stopped by minor obstacles. Low embankments, frost fissures, rock outcrops, and gaps in the vegetation cover provided effective barriers to the advance of fire in an upwind direction.

d. Human Interest Values

(1) Land Use

Fishing and hunting historically have been the sole means of survival for natives on the Tundra. Income and cost of living for Alaskans of European descent is much higher than in the lower 48 states. The Eskimo trying to live according to non-native economic standards, on an Eskimo income, is in a serious predicament. Public assistance represents a significant portion of the natives' cash income, and employment opportunities are poor (U.S. Dept. of the Interior, 1972). Conflicts between native culture and modern society present a difficult problem. Many native peoples wish to adopt certain aspects of modern society, but differences between cultures make the transition difficult. Native cultures and values are understood by few non-natives.

Minerals and mining have been responsible for much of the exploration and development of the Tundra. Gold discoveries on the Seward Peninsula resulted in a flurry of development. This was followed by intensive prospecting throughout the region. Several minerals in addition to gold were discovered and mined. More recently, sizable oil and gas reserves were discovered at Prudhoe Bay, on the north slope, as discussed earlier. Considerable development is expected as these reserves are tapped.

Tourism is expected to be an important source of income in the future. Hunting and fishing are steadily increasing, aided by the use of small aircraft and all-terrain vehicles, such as the snowmobile.

(2) Aesthetic Values

The landform in the Tundra is low, rolling, or nearly flat topography similar to that of the grasslands. The texture is the extremely fine, soft texture of the Tundra vegetation. Color is the soft, gray-green monotone of vegetation interrupted only by an occasional stream. Lines are almost non-existent. Scale, as in the grasslands, is difficult to define. Because the Tundra is so plain and so uniform, almost any disruption or intrusion immediately becomes the focal point for the observer. Except for landforms such as the Brooks Range and other more gentle mountains and hills, the Tundra does not hold a great deal of interest for most viewers (Arps, et al., 1970).

(3) Geological

Features of geological interest are limited. There are the normal effects of glaciation, coastal erosional features, and such results of extreme freezing action on the land surface as pingoes, which are small raised islands of ice. The Aleutian Islands chain contains evidences of volcanic formations. At the base of the Alaska Peninsula is Katmai National Monument containing the Valley of 10,000 Smokes, which has active volcanic features. Two small areas of sand dunes are located along the Tundra-Taiga transition zone.

(4) Archeological

The Tundra biome is basically synonymous with the Eskimo and Aleut culture areas, or the Arctic Tradition. The Aleuts, linguistically related to the Eskimos, live on the Aleutian Islands chain. Because of its proximity to Siberia, western Alaska continually received stimuli from the Old World (Willey, 1966).

There are evidences of both the Old Cordilleran Tradition and the Big Game Hunter Tradition in earliest Alaska. This was followed by the Northwest Microblade Tradition, characterized by numerous microblades struck from conical cores. The next tradition, known as the Arctic Small Tool Tradition, is characterized by a unique style in fine pressure-flaked flint and small tools. Last to be found is the Eskimo Tradition, which probably began some 4,000 years ago. All of the traditions occurred along the seacoast for the most part. All cultures lived by hunting large sea animals, catching fish and hunting caribou and other animals inland. Many of the better gravel bars and sand pits were occupied by pit and surface houses for thousands of years, each beach strand frequently representing a different time period or culture.

(5) Historical

The history of the Tundra includes early periods of exploration by the English, Russians, and Americans. A trading period involved mostly the Russians and later some Russian settlements. Purchase of the Alaskan Territory by the United States in 1867 brought increased exploration by the Americans. Gold rushes in the late 19th century and early 20th century stimulated some settlement. World War II and the ensuing "Cold War" brought the military to remote locations. Japanese military forces occupied parts of the Aleutians during World War II. Designated historic landmarks found within this biome are listed in the National Register of Historic Places.

(6) Cultural

The Eskimos and Aleuts are among the largest groups of native peoples living a life style resembling that at contact times. However, changes have occurred more rapidly in recent years. Old subsistence patterns have begun to break down. More dependence is put on white man's foods, equipment, and clothing. The sled dog is disappearing as the snowmobile takes its place. The kayak and umiak are giving way to the outboard motorboat. The culture and traditions are disappearing, perhaps to be lost forever.

A cultural reinforcement effort has been launched, however, to teach forgotten native crafts, and to maintain and document the native languages and folklore.

D. References

Allee, W. C., et al., Principles of Animal Ecology. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: W. B. Saunders Company, 1949.

Arps, J. J., N. Mortada and A. E. Smith. "Relationship Between Proved Reserves and Exploratory Effort." Society of Petroleum Engineers, Paper 2995. 1970.

Barney, R. J. and A. L. Comiskey. 1973. Wildfire and Thunderstorms on Alaska's North Slopes. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Research Note PNW-212, 8 pp.

Barney, Milo A. and N. C. Frischknecht. 1974. Vegetation Changes Following Fire in the Pinyon-Juniper Type of West-Central Utah. J. Range Management, 27(2):91-96.

Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Department of the Interior, Preliminary Draft - Upland Oil and Gas Leasing Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement, 1972, pg. 151.

Bureau of Land Management, USDI, Public Land Statistics, 1971, pg. 63 and Table 40.

Cable, D. R. 1972. Fire Effects in Southwestern Semidesert Grass-Shrub Communities. Proc. Ann. Tall Timbers Fire Ecological Conference No. 12, pp. 109-127.

Cochrane, G. S. and J. S. Rowe. 1969. Fire in the Tundra at Rankin Inlet N.W.T. Proc. Ann. Tall Timbers Fire Ecological Conference, No. 9, pp. 61-74.

Costello, David F. The Desert World. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell Co., 1972.

Countryman, C. M. and C. W. Philpot. 1970. Physical Characteristics of Chamise as a Wildland Fuel. USDA Forest Service Research Paper. PSW-66, 16 pp., illus.

Cramer, Owen P. 1974. Air quality influences. 51 pp. in Environmental effects of forest residues management in the Pacific Northwest--a state-of-knowledge compendium. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PNW-24. Pac. NW For. and Range Exp. Stn., Portland, Oregon.

Darley, E. F., F. R. Burleson, E. H. Matter and others. 1966. Contribution of Burning Agricultural Wastes to Photochemical Air Pollution. J. Air Pollution Control Association. 16(12):685-690, illus.

Daubenmire, R. F. and J. B. Daubenmire. 1968. *Forest Vegetation of Eastern Washington and Northern Idaho*, Washington State Agriculture Experiment Station, Technical Bulletin, 60, 104 pp.

Dix, R. L. and R. G. Beidleman (eds.) *The Grassland Ecosystem: A Preliminary Synthesis*. Colorado State University, Range Science Department, Science Series No. 2. Fort Collins. 1969.

Erdman, J. A. 1970. Pinyon-Juniper Succession after Natural Fires on Residual Coils of Mesa Verde, Colorado. Brigham Young University Science Bulletin, Biol. Ser. 11(2):1-23.

Everhart, W. H. and W. R. Seamon, *Fishes of Colorado*. Colorado Division of Game, Fish and Parks. Denver, Colorado. 1971.

Franklin, J. F. and C. T. Dyrness. 1973. Natural Vegetation of Oregon and Washington. USDA Forest Service Gen. Tech Rep. PNW-8, 417 pp.

French, Norman R. (ed.) *Preliminary Analysis of Structure and Function in Grasslands*. Colorado State University, Range Science Department, Science Series No. 10. Fort Collins. 1971.

Friedmann, J. and W. Alonso (ed.). *Regional Development and Planning*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The Massachusetts Institute of Technology Press, 1964. p. 223.

Geological Survey, U.S. Department of the Interior, *The National Atlas of the United States*, 1970 Edition, p. 132.

Hendricks, T. A. Resources of Oil, Gas and Natural-Gas Liquids in the United States and the World. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 522. 1965. pp. 1-20.

Hodge, C. (ed.), and P. C. Duisberg (Assoc. ed.). *Aridity and Man; Challenge of the Arid Lands in the United States*. American Association for Advancement of Science, Horn-Shafer Co. 1964.

Hubbert, M. King. "Degree of Advancement of Petroleum Exploration in the United States", American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Vol. 51, No. 11, 1967. pp. 2207-2227.

Humphrey, R. R. 1962. Range Ecology. New York: The Ronald Press Company, 234 pp.

Leopold, A. 1924. Grass, Brush, Timber and Fire in Southern Arizona. J. For. 22(6):1-10.

Lovelock, J.E. 1971. Air pollution and climatic change. Atmos. Environment 5(6):403-411.

Lower Colorado Region Comprehensive Framework Study, Appendix XIII, Fish and Wildlife. Pacific Southwest Interagency Committee, Water Resources Council. 1971.

Lutz, H. J. Ecological Effects of Forest Fires in the Interior of Alaska. USDA Tach. Bull. 1133. 121 p. 1956.

Muller, C. H., R. B. Hanawalt and J. K. McPherson. 1968. Allelopathic Control of Herbaceous Growth in the Fire Cycle of California Chaparral. Bull, Torrey, Bot, Club 95:225-231.

Odum, Eugene P. The Concept of the Biome as Applied to the Distribution of North American Birds. Wilson Bulletin 57. 1945.

Odum, Eugene P. Fundamentals of Ecology. Philadelphia and London: W. B. Saunders Co., 1959, 1971.

Oosting, H. J. The Study of Plant Communities. San Francisco: W. H. Freeman and Co., 1950. p. 389.

Oregon State University, Atlas of the Pacific Northwest, 4th Edition, 1968, p. 16.

Petterssen, Suerra. Weather Analysis and Forecasting. McGraw-Hill Book Company. 1940.

Philpot, C. W. 1973. The Changing Role of Fire on Chaparral. University of California, Riverside, California.

Prakash, C. B. and F. E. Murray. 1972. Studies on Air Emissions from the Combustion of Wood-Waste. Combust. Sci. Technol. 6(1/2):81-88.

Research Programs Constituting U.S. Participation in the International Biome Program. Report No. 4 of the U.S. National Committee for the National Academy of Sciences. Washington, D.C. 1971.

Sauer, C. O. 1950. Grassland Climax, Fire and Man. J. Range Management. 3:16-24.

Schroeder, Mark J., et al., 1964. Synoptic Weather Types Associated With Critical Fire Weather. USDA Forest Service. Pac. SW For. and Range Expt. Sta., Berkeley, California. 492 pp., illus.

Shelford, Victor E. The Ecology of North America. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1963.

The Structure and Function of the Tundra Ecosystem. U.S. Tundra Biome Program of the U.S. International Biome Program and U.S. Arctic Research Program. Vol. 1 Progress Report and Proposal Abstracts. December 1971.

U.S. Bureau of the Census, U.S. Department of Commerce. Statistical Abstract of the United States, 68th, 86th and 91st editions. U.S. Government Printing Office. 1947, 1965, and 1970.

U.S. Bureau of the Census. 1970 Census of Population, PC(1)A1, U.S. Summary. U.S. Government Printing Office. 1971.

U.S. Bureau of the Census, U.S. Department of Commerce, Statistical Abstract of the United States. 1972. pp. 13 and 18.

U.S. Department of Agriculture. Climate and Man. Yearbook of Agriculture, U.S. Government Printing Office. 1941.

U.S. Department of Agriculture. Land Resource Regions and Major Land Resource Areas of the United States. Handbook No. 296. U.S. Government Printing Office. Washington, D.C. 1965.

U.S.D.A., U.S. Forest Service. Pinon-Juniper Type of Arizona--Effects of Grazing, Fire, and Tree Control. Production Research Report No. 84. September 1964.

U.S. Geological Survey. The National Atlas of the United States of America. U.S. Government Printing Office. 1970.

U.S. Department of the Interior. Final Environmental Impact Statement of the Proposed Trans-Alaska Pipeline. Washington, D.C. 1972.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife. Threatened Wildlife of the United States. Resource Publication 114. Washington, D.C. March 1973; Fish and Wildlife Service. United States List of Endangered Fauna. Washington, D.C. May 1974.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Services. Distribution and Status of the Important Fish and Wildlife, Missouri River Basin. Billings, Montana. 1952.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. United States' List of Endangered Fauna (Yellow Book). Washington, D.C. May 1974.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Services. Distribution and Status of the Important Fish and Wildlife, Missouri River Basin. Billings, Montana. 1952.

Vogl, R. F. 1967. Fire Adaptations of Some Southern California Plants. Proc. Ann. Tall Timbers Fire Ecological Conference, No. 7, pp. 78-109.

Vogl, R. J. and P. K. Schorr. 1972. Fire and Manzanita Chaparral in the San Sacinto Mountains, California. Ecol. 53(6):1179-1188.

Wein, R. W. 1971. Fire and Resources in the Subarctic-Panel Discussion. IN: Proceedings, Fire in the Northern Environment, A Symposium. pp. 251-253. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Portland, Oregon.

Willey, Gordon R. An Introduction to American Archeology, Volume 1, North and Middle America. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1966.

PART III

ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS OF THE FIRE MANAGEMENT PROGRAM

This section assesses the impacts of the proposed fire management activities (presuppression, suppression, postsuppression, and prescribed fire) on the non-living and living components of the five biomes.

A. Impacts from Presuppression Practices

1. Soil

Prevention and presuppression actions having a direct bearing on soil condition include hazard reduction and facility construction.

Hazard reduction involves either slash disposal or reduction of natural fuels. Perhaps the most critical practice relating to soil impacts is the piling and burning of slash. Since heat intensity and duration determine depth of lethal heating for organisms and extent of removal of any organic layers, such concentration of fuel increases these impacts. The soil under such burned piles is often rendered incapable of supporting vegetative reproduction for several years.

All burning to reduce vegetative residues leads to some loss of nutrients such as nitrogen, boron, sulfur, and phosphorus (Moore and Norris, 1974). However, certain important nutrients are usually made more available to plants and stimulate establishment and growth unless too soon lost through leaching from the soil. These nutrients include calcium, potash, phosphorus and nitrogen.

Wetability of soils tends to decrease with fire intensity, as does infiltration capacity.

The construction of roads, trails, fire breaks, and other facilities accelerates soil erosion from cleared areas. Such operations are also conducive to increased soil compaction from heavy equipment operation and rainfall action on bare soil.

2. Water

Hazard reduction by the use of fire should be conducted to minimize adverse effects. Burning of slash or natural undergrowth is done when the soil mantle is moist and the fire intensity may be kept relatively low. Under such control, conditions are not likely to develop where massive runoff and erosion will occur, nor where the soil will be damaged by heat to the extent of significantly increasing water repellancy.

Ash residues release nutrients benefiting vegetation. Ash and soil particles entering streams and lakes may produce undesired sediment loads and salinity charges. Pesticides, fertilizers, and petrochemicals are potential causes of water pollution.

Mechanical construction of fire control facilities will have some impact on water. Roads and fire breaks are the facilities usually involved.

3. Air

An obvious technique for reducing size and number of wildfires is to remove or reduce the hazard--the material that would burn--or break it up into smaller compartments by removing strips of it. Similar operations are involved in removing the hazard from areas where the risk also is very high, e.g., cleanup of roadsides and around heavy use areas. Removal or reduction of the fire hazard in forest and range areas is often done by the skillful use of fire.

Where fire is used, smoke is emitted, but the amount and behavior of the smoke varies greatly--with fuel type, its moisture content, fuel size, arrangement, and loading, ventilation, the manner of burning, and the size of the area to be burned. Impact of the smoke on the environment also varies with weather factors affecting dispersion, with amount and kind of pollutants already in the air, and with location of emitted smoke in relation to places where additional smoke is definitely not wanted. Impacts of smoke have been considered sufficiently important in metropolitan situations to require severe regulation or even prohibition of open burning. It is therefore imperative that the impacts of the fire management program on air quality are closely examined.

Where prescribed fires[1/] are used as a presuppression-prevention activity to reduce fuel hazards, particulate production from the fires can cause adverse impacts on air quality. The major impact of particulates is in the reduction of visibility, affecting recreationists, airports, highways, forest dwellers, and communities downwind from burn areas. Smoke from prescribed fires also can adversely affect people with respiratory ailments.

However, prescribed burning for hazard reduction is undertaken to offset detrimental effects of smoke emissions from subsequent uncontrolled wildfires. Wildfires produce three times as much pollutant material as prescribed fires per unit weight of fuel, and usually consume about three times as much fuel (Cooper, 1972). Thus, one of the beneficial impacts of prescribed burning lies in the scheduling of fires to minimize adverse effects on air quality, and limit the unscheduled emissions of particulates from wildfires. Selecting time of ignition, fuel moisture conditions, season of

---

[1/] Since impacts are similar for prescribed fire use in the presuppression and prescribed burning portions of the BLM's fire program, they will be discussed here to avoid later duplication.

year, location and duration of fire, and meteorological conditions can control particulate production and smoke dispersion.

Regulatory effects of wildland smoke on biological organisms have received scant attention. But recent investigations (Parmeter and Uhrenholdt, 1975) indicated smoke might have important ecological implications:

- Surfaces exposed to smoke were found unsuitable for the germination of spores of several kinds of fungi.

- The mycelial growth of a damping-off fungus was inhibited on surfaces previously exposed to wood smoke, and direct exposure of the mycelium to smoke arrested growth.

- Smoked portions of pine stems showed marked changes in numbers and kinds of micro-organisms that could grow on them compared with unsmoked controls.

4. Vegetation

Major changes are occurring in many vegetation types due to the general reduction of acres burned in recent years. The reduction in burned area can be attributed partly to improved detection, pre-attack planning, and prevention efforts. However, since these improved efficiencies are actually realized during the suppression actions, impacts related to reduction in size of areas burned will be covered in the suppression section. This approach will minimize the repetition of similar impacts.

An additional impact is the removal of vegetation during the construction of detection facilities, access roads, guard stations, fuel breaks, and helispots. There is also the corollary impact on the visual scene as landscapes are modified by presuppression measures.

The prevention measure of fuels management is recognized as a major solution to conflagrations. Fuel management involves the alteration of living and dead vegetation to enhance man's ability to contain conflagrations. The potential effectiveness of the fuel management concept has been summarized (Martin and Brackebusch, 1974):

> "An effective program of forest fuels management is our most promising long range fire management tool. Fuels accumulate in our forests but are often disturbed by man. Reduction of the accumulations historically has been through fire--sometimes gentle and frequent where accumulations were low, conflagrations where accumulations of fuel were heavy. We have attempted, in the past, to (prevent conflagrations by building efficient and effective fire) control organizations. Effectiveness of these organizations is evident from fuel accumulation, so that we presently have powerful fires that overwhelm our firefighting organizations. Since manipulation of weather or climate is beyond man's present capability, our greatest opportunity for fire management and conflagration prevention must be through fuel management. By managing forest fuels, we work within the natural system in our forests rather than attempting to buck it through the brute strength of fire control organizations. Fire is a natural component of the forest system. Use of prescribed fire may accomplish many silvicultural, ecological, aesthetic or sociological purposes better than either a wildfire, in its sporadic way, or manual-machine manipulation. Properly used, fire removes the smaller fuel components. Improved utilization will remove larger components. Utilization, fire and other treatments all have a place in reducing residue fuels.
>
> There are two main avenues through which we might alleviate our residue-fuel problems:
>
> 1. Fire considerations (as well as other environmental effects of forest residue) must be taken into account with the initial considerations for management of a forest area.
>
>   (a) Models are being developed for management decisions involving realistic evaluations of fire potentials.
>
>   (b) Appropriate actions can be taken to reduce fuel loadings in patterns designed to reduce potential wildfire spread and damage.
>
>   (c) Personnel qualified to evaluate objectively fire potential and develop plans for fuels management can be employed.
>
> 2. Improved utilization practices must be used. Management plans should be modified to require maximum removal of material."

Fuel management practices are most often carried out on national resource lands in coniferous forests, in the chaparrel type, and along rights-of-way. Fuel hazard reduction practices include: roadside clean-up, prescribed burning for slash disposal, removal of some dead snags, minimizing horizontal and vertical fuel continuity through pruning, thinning and elimination of undergrowth, fire breaks, fuel breaks, and closer utilization of logging residues. Such practices must be prescribed in such manner as to complement the requirements of the ecosystems being managed (i.e., consideration given to impacts on nutrient cycling, energy flow, food chains, habitat needs, etc.).

Presuppression-prevention practices in fragile tundra environment can be very severe wherever the insulating mantle of tundra vegetation is destroyed or disturbed. The placing of buildings or access roads without proper regard to the underlying permafrost will cause a sinking and slipping of the underlying soil.

Recent studies, primarily in regard to the Alaska pipeline to Prudhoe Bay, have shown roads, etc., can be built in this biome but certain conditions must be met so the underlying permafrost is protected. The location of firelines, camps, etc., must likewise be considered or permanent harm results.

Beneficial impacts of fuel management can be:

- Reduce number of fires.

- Reduce the frequency of conflagrations through reduction of large concentrations of hazardous fuels with fire breaks and fuel breaks.

- Reduce spot fire problems through elimination of some snags.

- Inhibit damaging insect outbreaks.

- Slash burning provides a mineral seedbed for the establishment of seedlings.

- Slash burning may stimulate browse species for wildlife.

Adverse impacts of fuel management can be:

- Heavy equipment used can result in tree injuries such as skinned bark and root damage.

- Logging slash treatments consisting of chipping, chopping, chaining, compacting, or rolling may reduce the fire hazard, but adversely affect tree regeneration and site productivity. Buildup of a deep mulch or organic layer, could choke out vegetation and cause a bacteria buildup that ties up available nitrogen.

- Slash fires can damage or kill trees that land managers had not planned to burn.

- Complete removal of forest residues (clean logging) may deplete the storehouse of available nutrients.

5. Wildlife

a. Terrestrial

The principal presuppression-prevention impacts on wildlife are due to hazard (fuel) reduction, construction of facilities, and human presence.

Hazard reduction consists of removal of fuel in the form of slash, underbrush, dead snags, and the clearing of all vegetation in strips for firebreaks, accomplished by mechanical or chemical means or by fire.

Favorable impacts are those habitat changes resulting in the opening up of dense brush or slash, improving animal movement and access to water; firebreaks and fuel breaks providing travel lanes in forests and variety in life forms (e.g., grass openings in forests); and, disturbed areas producing new or rejuvenated high-quality forage. In some situations firebreaks become greenbelts and are pastured. However, fuel reduction operations can also cause direct losses to wildlife--particularly to nests and young animals. This occurs through ground level disturbance and through snag removal. Snags are very important to many mammals and birds for nesting and denning, perching or resting and sleeping. Indirect impacts are due to habitat destruction by power equipment, herbicides or burning. This loss of food and cover is generally temporary and localized.

Construction of facilities, such as roads and trails, lookouts and other presuppression-prevention building projects, produces much the same impacts on habitat, good and bad, as discussed for hazard reduction. All of these operations of detection, prevention, and construction, in all biomes, cause temporary or intermittent disturbance to wildlife due to human presence. This includes the general activity of work crews and patrols, and the noise of machinery. Over a longer period, the provision of access encourages an influx of hunters and other recreationists.

b. Aquatic

Hazard reduction actions such as slash burning and herbicide spraying can adversely impact shoreline vegetation of lakes and streams. Removal of streamside cover and canopy allows streambank erosion with subsequent stream siltation and increased solar radiation which could cause water temperatures to rise to a critical level for fish (Kopperdahl, et al., 1971).

Fire prevention is essential for the maintenance of a stable productive aquatic habitat. Little is known about beneficial effects of burning streamside vegetation on aquatic habitat.

6. Domestic Animals

Livestock will use firebreaks and access roads built to lookouts and guard stations to gain access into previously ungrazed or lightly grazed areas. This will have a beneficial impact on the animals because additional forage will be available.

Better livestock distribution would result, which could reduce heavy grazing use in other areas. However, conflicts with other resource uses can occur in the areas made available to livestock by the firebreaks and roads. These conflicts could involve wildlife, wild horses and burros, recreation, watershed, etc.

Hazard reduction by burning would have a short term adverse effect of temporarily reducing the grazing capacity immediately after the fire. However, the long term impacts would be beneficial in that the amount and quality of available forage would increase. Garrison and Smith (1974) pointed out the burning of slash reduces the impact of woody debris as an obstacle to grazing animals and influences composition of the vegetation that occupies the site in the process of secondary succession.

Another beneficial impact of hazard reduction would be the reduction of the risk of a large destructive fire that could spread into valuable grazing areas and do considerable damage to forage resources.

7. Wild Horses and Burros

The impacts of the presuppression-prevention program on wild horses and burros are minor. There may be some disturbance by detection aircraft, although detection flights are normally made at altitudes that would not frighten the animals.

The construction activities involved in building firebreaks and roads to lookouts or guard stations in areas inhabited by wild horses and burros may frighten the animals. The increased access provided by the roads and firebreaks will afford the public with a better opportunity to observe wild horses and burros. However, the increased presence of humans may force the animals into more remote areas.

Better wild horse and burro distribution would result, which could reduce heavy grazing use in other areas. However, conflicts with other resource users can occur in new available areas.

Hazard reduction would have a short term adverse effect of reduced forage capacity. However, the long term impact would be beneficial since the amount and quality of forage would increase.

8. Human Interest Values

a. Sociological

All sociological aspects and land use patterns must be considered in analyzing potential environmental impacts of the fire management program.

All phases of fire operations affect, to some degree, recreation uses and values. Impacts, where they do occur, will be most significant in: areas of intensive recreational use, areas of unique or rare resources, and areas of concentrations of resources which make up high recreational potential.

In recent years BLM lands have become very attractive to the public for recreational activities including offroad vehicle use, rockhounding and weekend camping. Access provided by presuppression-prevention activity can increase accessibility.

The development of access roads and trails during presuppression-prevention can also result in a hazardous situation for the general public. Offroad vehicle enthusiasts operating on low standard, non-maintained roads and trails often encounter washouts and slides that can result in injury or death.

New roads resulting from presuppression-prevention would undoubtedly result in a further demand for urban-character land uses. Uncontrolled expansion could result in strip development along roadsides with few social or aesthetic attributes and a general inefficiency in land use.

Presuppression-prevention activities impairing or destroying natural areas could have a significant adverse impact, if those areas have value for scientific or educational purposes.

All phases of presuppression-prevention fire management operations with the possible exception of airborne detection would have adverse impacts on wilderness areas. But even the noise from detection aircraft can be objectionable to recreationists. Programs using a minimum of support measures would have the least impact on wilderness values. The existence of permanent roads would negate wilderness status of the land; vegetation manipulation by artificial means and the construction of facilities would also decrease wilderness values.

Presuppression-prevention activities can impact economies dependent on agricultural and forest land by taking land out of production.

The potential for adverse effects to human health and loss of life must be considered on all projects using heavy equipment and hand-held power tools. Some beneficial impacts could also result from presuppression-prevention operations. Extensive recreation uses, particularly hunting, may benefit from improved access and improved habitat through fire operations. Fire access roads, if usable for timber harvest, could later benefit timber hauling.

b. Cultural Resources

In this portion of the report all geological, archeological, historical and cultural values have been combined under the broad heading of cultural resources to avoid repetition.

Geological values are susceptible to alteration and destruction as the result of presuppression-prevention fire management practices that can destroy or impair their value as human interest subjects. Power equipment and other earthmoving equipment used in the vicinity of delicate geological features, such as cave formations or erosional arches, can destroy or impair their interpretive value. Structures such as lookouts placed in close proximity to geological features tend to detract from their value for viewing and interpretive purposes.

Some geological phenomena are susceptible to collection and removal even though such actions are illegal or limited as in the case of fossils or petrified wood. Increased accessibility as a result of new roads and trails and other presuppression-prevention activities could contribute to removal or vandalism.

Archeological and historical sites are most valuable to both the scientist and the sightseer when they are undisturbed. In the past, roads and trails constructed on Federal lands have damaged or destroyed archeological and historical remains. This is a potential impact in practically all areas from presuppression-prevention activities involving excavation or soil disturbance. An adverse and beneficial impact may result from new access. It can result in vandalism, illegal looting of prehistoric and historic sites for souvenirs; it can also open such sites for public enjoyment.

New roads and trails and other disturbances on or near sites can destroy or damage the prehistoric or historic scene by introducing modern elements foreign to the period, thus detracting from the understanding and feeling the visitor obtains. Use of power equipment close to caves, walled structures and on top of sites can cause damage by shaking them down or by compaction of the soil, disturbing the stratigraphy and crushing artifacts within the soil. Ground disturbance activities at some distance from archeological or historical sites can trigger erosion which will either destroy the site or cover it with eroded debris. Indian campsites and "tipi" rings are frequently destroyed by offroad vehicle travel or any earthmoving activities. In the desert, the intaglios, huge rock alignment figures on the flat desert pavement, can be easily damaged by small amounts of vehicle and foot traffic, as these sites are sometimes only noticeable from the air.

Many archeological sites in the taiga and tundra are frozen, preserving the prehistoric materials in excellent condition, but also providing sites highly susceptible to erosion if the surface is disturbed and exposed to melting. Many of the sites are on gravel bars along streams, prime sources of material for road building and other construction activities.

In the coniferous forest there are many abandoned settlements resulting from the gold rushes and land settlement attempts. Fire access roads in the vicinity of these structures could result in vandalism and degradation of the historical resource.

Sometimes presuppression-prevention practices can help discover potential archeological sites, such as caves covered by heavy brush, without any adverse effects on the site itself (Carlsbad Current Argus, 1974). New roads may also improve initial attack capability thereby protecting archeological and historical values.

There are two basic items concerned with impact on cultural values: (1) impact on specific sites important to a group of people and (2) the impact on the life style of the group. Many of the native and introduced cultures in the country have areas or sites of religious, historical, symbolic or sentimental significance to them and their way of life. These sites and areas should be handled as archeological and historical sites for purposes of impact evaluation. Impact on life styles is difficult to assess for much of it is psychological and the affected values are judgmental.

c. Aesthetics

Aesthetic values are derived from how people perceive the environment and are regulated by form, shape, color, texture, composition, lines, etc. Actions producing a visible change in any of these elements of the natural environment can cause pleasant or adverse human reaction dependent on the attitudes and values of the individual.

There are three ways that presuppression-prevention activities can alter the landscape:

- The vegetation can be removed or changed.
- The soil can be moved.
- A structure can be placed on the landscape.

The degree to which any of these actions upsets the natural harmony of the basic components determines how great an effect the action has on the overall landscape and whether that effect is a negative impact or improves the visual environment.

While the landscape character is subject to change brought about by presuppression-prevention practices, areas that are still in near natural condition stand to suffer the greatest impacts to the visual environment. However, areas where the landscape has been altered for agricultural or developmental purposes may have taken on a new character which is pleasing to look at and might be disrupted as much as a natural area.

In hazard reduction projects manipulation of vegetation and the secondary adverse impacts on soil creates a visual change that can be disturbing to those familiar with a particular landscape to a point where they consider any change in a negative manner. Regardless of the technique used in site preparation, there is a period when the project area is freshly disturbed and man's activities are clearly evident. The degree of this degradation of scenic quality varies sharply with site conditions and the sensitivity of the method of brush removal. This impact could be short-lived in the grassland, but in the desert or tundra it can be a permanent scar.

The gentle slopes of the grassland require less movement of soil for road and facility construction than many other biomes, resulting in smaller scars on the landscape. However, it is often possible to see considerable distances in the grasslands, making surface disturbance quite obvious over a wide area.

Desert land forms are steep and high in many areas; many of the operations involving movement of earth could create a scar visible for great distances. Vegetation in the cold desert takes much longer to recover to its natural condition; in the hot desert, recovery involves even longer periods of time. Lines created by roads, trails, firelines and vegetative manipulation will be visible in the desert for a great length of time. In many areas of the desert, the color of the soil and rock is the result of long years of weathering and chemical interactions. When this surface color is disturbed, it is virtually impossible to restore and can take hundreds of years to recover naturally.

In densely vegetated woodland-bushland communities impacts can be more obvious. However, the density of the vegetation might also reduce the visual impact by restricting the viewing area.

Due to steepness of the terrain and the high relief profile in the coniferous forest, firelines and roads are often visible for extremely long distances.

There are also beneficial impacts of the presuppression-prevention activity on the visual environment. Sometimes access roads open up impressive scenic vistas. Vegetative manipulation can result in forage production, attracting wildlife which can be viewed by the general public.

When planning hazard reduction projects in extensive brushfields, the potential exists for increasing visual variety in the landscape. This is a positive step toward enhancing scenic quality. Monotonous brushlands are visually sterile with little variety in color or texture of the vegetation. The sight of a stand of young trees growing on a mountainside is a very pleasing experience to most people. Flowering plants often add diversity of color in recently cutover areas and cleared brushfields. Fall colors of many plants are striking against the green of the trees (Forest Service, California Region, 1974).

Fire detection activities of the presuppression program, whether aircraft or lookouts, have minimal impact on the visual environment.

d. Other

A complementary benefit of impact of the detection practice concerns human rescue. The article that appeared in the Rocky Mountain News, Denver, Colorado, August 1, 1975, demonstrates this point and is included below:

> "Ten rescued in wilderness area
>
> Ten persons, including a 10-month-old baby, were rescued Friday after being stranded for three days in wilderness area near the Utah-Colorado border.
>
> They were rescued by a Bureau of Land Management helicopter crew responding to the sighting of one of eight fires set by the group to attract attention, according to BLM official Gus Juarez.
>
> The group had survived three days on bacon, one can of pop, water found in cracks and two rabbits they shot. They were identified as Robert and Sharon Carter, Frank Stevenson, Sandra Harbin and six children ranging in age to 8. Officers said all were apparently from Grand Junction.
>
> The sheriff's office said the group became stranded Tuesday when the transmission of their 1962 model car was damaged by rocks on a sheep trail in the Pinon Mesa area 15 miles southeast of Cisco, Utah.
>
> The fires were set Thursday night and spotted early Friday by Howard Mann and Cy Hubbard of Gateway.
>
> The members of the group were in good condition but beginning to show signs of exposure, the sheriff's office said."

B. Impacts from Suppression Practices

Impacts from fire suppression activities can arise in several ways, One is the direct impact of suppression practices (e.g., line construction, retardant drops, burning out and backfiring, cutting trees along firelines or at helispots, and human presence) on various components of ecosystems. Another form of impact is more subtle. Successful fire suppression actions can exclude fires from areas where it was formerly common, causing indirect but major impacts on ecosystems over time. Suppression actions also protect society's investments in natural resources to produce certain goods and services.

1. Soil and Water

A direct adverse impact of fire suppression on soil properties is erosion due to fireline construction. Fireline construction by bulldozers, especially in northern or high altitude environments, can cause more damage than the fire in terms of soil erosion (Bolstad, 1971; Lotspeich, et al., 1970) studying the 1967 Chicken Fire in Alaska, found few signs of erosion in actual burned areas but drastic erosion and degradation along fire control lines and bulldozer trails.

Fire is often considered to have a detrimental effect on forest soils. Relating suppression actions to impacts on soil properties is a complex issue and considerations must be given to landforms, soil conditions, fire intensities, revegetation, and meteorological conditions following fires. Generally, the indirect impact of excluding fires from watersheds through suppression actions will be favorable when severe fires could lead to accelerated erosion rates, increased sedimentation in water bodies, and land slumps. Some of these impacts also could be initiated through the use of fire in fighting fire (i.e., backfiring or burning out operations to achieve black and safer firelines). But this impact is almost always minimal when compared to the acres burned by the uncontrolled wildfire.

It must always be recognized the longer fire is excluded from some wildland environments, the greater is the potential for more severe fires in the future. Philpot (1974) postulated that attempts at fire exclusion through suppression actions in southern California chaparral could result in watershed damage and downstream effects remaining high or increasing because the average size of large fires would increase.

Fire exclusion through suppression actions results in another, potentially adverse, impact on nutrient cycling on some sites. As the organic layer increases in the absence of fire, nutrients become unavailable to plants. Using the data of Cole, et al. (1967), Behan (1970) hypothesized that critical amounts of nutrients may become tied up in the forest floor; and that mineral absorption by plants might be restricted due to an eventual drain on the soil nutrient reservoir.

Geographical area adds further complexity to the assessment of indirect impacts of suppression actions on soils and water. Lutz (1956) indicated erosion on burned areas in Alaska was surprisingly small despite the fact soil properties would lead one to conclude they were easily eroded. Scotter (1964) reported erosion following forest fires in northern Saskatchewan was not serious; several years after a burn he found increased infiltration rates on burned soils vs. unburned soils and felt this would reduce threat of erosion. These infiltration data are in contrast to that of other workers in temperate zones where infiltration rates on burned areas have been lower than on unburned areas (Beaton, 1959; Burns, 1952; Kittredge, 1938).

It is from fires that must be fought with the usual suppression tactics that the greatest impacts on water may be expected. These fires are on an average more destructive and the control activities more critical in physical and chemical disturbance. Greater runoff and soil movement may occur as a result with greater soil compaction on roads, firelines, and fire campsites. Any use of fire retardants will add fertilizer elements that may react beneficially or destructively in different situations. Petrochemicals are a potential source of water pollution.

When fire retardants (diammonium phosphates and ammonium sulphates) reach lakes and streams in heavy concentrations, unacceptably high levels of nitrogen and phosphorous nutrients can occur in streams and lakes (Lotspeich and Mueller, 1971). Eutrophication is a more serious phenomenon in lakes than in streams, because lakes act as a sink collecting phosphates and high levels of this nutrient could change lake ecosystems.

When extensive areas are cleared of water-using vegetation, a condition of soil saturation can arise causing landslides where soils are susceptible to slippage (Rothacher and Lopinshinsky, 1974).

2. Air

Most wildfires, because of their size, timing, accompanying windy weather, and combination of moist, dry, green, and dead fuels burn inefficiently consuming tremendous amounts of fuel and producing great quantities of smoke emissions. In comparison, the emissions from power equipment used in line construction, the aerial and ground transportation vehicles, the assorted grenades, torches and fuses used for burning out, the dust produced along the roads, firelines, airports, and helispots, and the cooking, garbage disposal, and heating fires at fire camps are very insignificant and will not be discussed further here. Drift of spray from currently used retardants (discussed in Section I) is local and primarily has fertilizer effects. The primary air quality effect of suppression actions is in stopping the emissions of the wildfire, also long term effects due to fuel accumulation. Smoke produced by burning out operations essential to control of the fire is indistinguishable from the fire smoke and should be considered part thereof.

3. Vegetation

The impacts of suppressing fires can be summarized as mostly beneficial where it is desirable to protect investments in natural resources. However, the suppression action can have short term and long term adverse effects on vegetation.

Beneficial impacts of the fire suppression program are:

- Protecting natural resources being managed to produce forage and fiber. Ill-timed fires can substantially impair the capability of grasslands and forests to produce grazing and wood products.
- Ensuring a protective mantle of vegetation on watersheds.
- Maintaining conditions favorable to fire sensitive species.
- Perpetuating later successional stages, or climax vegetation.

Short term adverse impacts of the fires suppression activity are:

- Fireline construction with heavy equipment can have serious and direct consequences; one effect is the decline of site productivity as the soil mantle is drastically disturbed.

- The construction of fire camps and helispots can cause adverse impacts on vegetation; but these effects are usually more localized than the effects of fireline construction.

Long term adverse impacts are:

- Fuel accumulations occur, resulting in larger and more damaging fires.

- Nutrients are tied up in organic residues.

- Loss of life form diversity and species diversity occurs as fire suppression reduces acreage burned (i.e., shrubs invade grasslands, shrubs decline in forests, herbaceous vegetation declines in woodlands and forests).

- Fire-dependent vegetation is not as abundant on landscape. Some of the most commercially important tree species are postfire species (often dependent on fire).

The specific impacts of fire suppression in the five biomes outlined earlier are:

a. Grasslands

The impacts from fire suppression practices in all grassland types are quite similar. Grasslands, in the absence of fire, are invaded by woody shrub species to the detriment of the range productivity. Wright (1969, 1971, 1972a, 1972b) and his associates have studied this effect in detail in western Texas. In some instances the productivity has been so lowered that the ranges are uneconomic for livestock production.

b. Deserts

Adverse impacts from fire suppression practices in both the hot and cold deserts have occurred largely by the building of firebreaks, access roads, movement of mechanical equipment and men, and other normal disturbances by such suppression activities. The driest portions of the desert, both hot and cold, are the most fragile and here the recovery of the vegetation is exceedingly slow to recover. In regions of higher precipitation, where the true desert grasslands occur, such disturbances are not quite so damaging. Overgrazing along with fire suppression has caused the invasion of many species of woody shrub and cacti to the detriment of both livestock and wildlife production.

Humphrey (1937, 1949, 1958, 1963), Cable (1967, 1972), and others for over a period of more than a quarter of a century have considered fire of prime importance in the management of the desert grasslands of Arizona and New Mexico; in fact many of these desert grasslands are termed "fire-climax" grasslands. Following wet years, particularly wet summers succeeded by wet winters, fires can also be considered a part of certain saguaro cactus areas where even in these relative dry regions invasion by woody shrubs can occur. Lightning is now considered a major predator of the saguaro and where reduced grazing pressure allows dry grasses to accumulate fires can occur. Even here as in more temperate grasslands, fire retards and/or prohibits the invasion of woody species and cacti so fire suppression can create problems.

The cold desert grasslands of the plateaus of northern Arizona and New Mexico to the basins of the northwest into Canada are not as fragile. Studies in the more northern basins, etc., have not been as complete as in the southwest. However, these also show the invasion of shrub species in the absence of fire, except possibly in some local areas where the grazing pressure or other factors inhibits such invasion (Daubenmire, 1959).

Thus in both the hot and cold desert, fire suppression has and does cause a succession from grasses to more shrubby type vegetation. Before the advent of heavy grazing by livestock these grasslands had a very varied vegetation mosaic of grasses, forbs, and shrub species. Fire suppression and overgrazing has in many respects destroyed this mosaic and this impact is perhaps much more serious than that caused by the mechanical disturbances mentioned earlier.

c. Woodland-Bushland

For our purposes the woodland-bushland biome can be divided into three major subdivisions that vary in their fire relationships from the oak-chaparral (one of the most fire-adapted plant communities in the world) to the pinon-juniper, the plant species of which are fire sensitive in many respects. The oak-woodland area is halfway between the other two types in its fire relationships. These three divisions invade the grasslands in lower elevations and the forests in the higher zones.

(1) Oak-Chaparral

Fire suppression practices in this type have produced major impacts and some investigators insist the present devastating wildfires are caused by over-protection from fire. Philpot (1974) reported the chaparral becomes more and more flammable as it matures. "As fire suppression becomes more effective, the number of large fires should decrease but the size of large fires should increase," and "Unless fire policy is changed on chaparral lands, there seems to be little evidence that the recent history of large fires will not be repeated." The resulting erosion and other effects of these devastating fires has been well documented by the previously listed sources.

Much damage to the environment has been done also by the direct effects of fighting fires on the unstable steep slopes where these vegetations occur as well as the building of wide firebreaks on ridges and mountain slopes. The erosion effects in some of these areas in southern California are so large they have been photographed from 5,000 feet as large longitudinal gullies (Komarek, personal observation). In some regions the devastation by the firefighting practices of the past have been more evident than the effects from the fires themselves.

(2) Oak-Woodland

The impacts from suppression practices on oak-woodland areas vary because of soil types, slope, drainage patterns, etc. Because some of this type of vegetation occurs on relatively unstable soils, the damage by mechanical equipment in actual suppression of fires can be considerable. Perhaps the greatest impact such practices have is in withholding fire from what is essentially a fire environment. Under fire suppression and protection the oak-woodlands become choked up with a heavy undergrowth of brush. The famous oak-parkland and grasslands disappear, resulting in highly flammable conditions with heavy fuel loads. Even as an open parkland, the area is flammable because of the grasses, but fires are much easier to control in the finer grass fuels and the effect on the soil and related qualities of the fire are not severe.

(3) Pinon-Juniper

The adverse impacts of fire exclusion through suppression practices have been primarily caused by the invasion of pinon and juniper into grasslands, lessening their productivity greatly. The disturbance caused by mechanical equipment on these more or less arid environments coupled with grazing is at times quite severe. At the same time, it should be pointed out the overburning of such habitats coupled with overgrazing or grazing too early on the burn can also be devastating to the grassland and to the soil. Many such pinon-juniper lands have been cabled in recent years and managed as grasslands thereafter. Many such lands today are so well covered by pinon or juniper with little or no grass that there is little fire hazard or fires except under very extreme conditions.

d. Conifer Forests

A high percentage of the vegetation in the coniferous biome is at one stage or another of succession following past fires. Climax, or near climax, forest stands that have escaped fire for several centuries are rarely found in the biome, indicating the significant role fire has played in producing vegetation mosaics on the landscape. But even the absence of roads in many coniferous forests has not prevented the use of sophisticated technologies of fire detection and fire control, technologies including patrol planes, some equipped with infrared scanners, and airplanes and helicopters that can deliver firefighters, equipment, and fire retarding chemicals to even the most remote fires.

The effective reduction of fire on landscapes that historically were influenced by periodic fires will have a detectable and measurable modifying influence. The impacts of advanced fire control systems are least pronounced in sparsely vegetated high elevation forests and most apparent at lower elevations where mosaics of different age classes, species, and life forms are gradually becoming less discernible. Loucks (1970) observed that disturbances such as fire tend to recycle the system and maintain a periodic wave of peak diversity. He concluded any modifications of the system that eliminate random disturbances and recycling would be detrimental to the system. Some of the specific detrimental impacts of fire suppression on vegetation in the coniferous biome include:

- The total number of species will decline. A 65 percent decrease in species of plants and animals occurred following closure of the canopy in some lodgepole pine forests (Taylor, 1973).

- Fire serves as a decomposition agent in the cool environment of the coniferous biome (Habeck and Mutch, 1973). In the absence of fire, organic material accumulates, contributing to extensive and high intensity fires (Roe, et al., 1972; Wilson and Dell, 1971).

- Fire suppression has allowed vegetation under the forest canopy to become more dense (Marshall, 1963; Biswell and Weaver, 1968), enhancing horizontal and vertical continuity of fuel. This distribution of fuel increases the potential for crown fires (Kallander, 1969).

- Fire suppression has resulted in the virtual elimination of the light surface fire which historically maintained some forest types in an open grown condition (Vankat, 1970).

- The efficiency of fire suppression agencies can be leading to their own undoing because "the longer forests go without burning, the greater the fuel accumulation and the greater the hazard" (Towell, 1969).

- It has been suggested that plant species that have survived fires for thousands of years cannot only have selected survival mechanisms, but also inherent flammable properties contributing to the perpetuation of fire dependent plant communities (Mutch, 1970). Thus, fire dependent plant communities may burn more readily than nonfire dependent communities because natural selection has favored development of characteristics that make them more flammable. These highly flammable properties of some species can be detrimental to a community under a policy of fire suppression, because the accumulation of hazardous fuels over a long period leads to destructive fires.

- Aspen becomes decadent and declines as taller conifers shade it out (Houston, 1973).

- Shrubs in the forest generally decline when fires are suppressed due to shading effects from taller trees, lack of moisture or nutrients, and lack of fire required to germinate seeds (Agee, 1974).

- The amount of herbaceous vegetation decreases in the forest as basal area, crown cover, or amount of litter from the overstory increases, due to competition for light, nutrients, water, or inhibitory effects of chemicals in the litter (Cassady, 1951; Clary and Ffolliott, 1966; Jameson, 1966).

- Without fire the boreal forest would become more and more homogenous, the long-lived white spruce gradually replacing pine, aspen, balsam poplar, and birch (Rowe and Scotter, 1973).

- The energy buildup in the form of accumulated forest litter and some brush species that are favored by lack of fires is causing the fire control job to become more difficult and costly (Loope and Gruell, 1973).

e. Tundra

The impact of suppression practices can be very destructive in the tundra. Lotspeich and Mueller (1971) said "Findings from a study of fire effects on the aquatic environment lead to the conclusion that the fire had fewer deleterious effects than did activities from fighting the fire--improper locating of 'cat' lines as an example," and DeLeonardis (1971) in a study "Effects of Fire and Fire Control Methods in Interior Alaska" said:

> "The objective of fireline construction was to remove all burnable material from the path of the fire. In permafrost areas, this involved removing the entire insulating vegetative layer which led to the very rapid melting of the permafrost. The berms thrown up on either side of the catline created effective artificial channels. To compound the problem further, the lines were tied directly to the closest body of water for more effective construction.
>
> The conditions were ideal for an erosion problem resulting in siltation of streams. That is exactly what happened. In some areas underlain by deep silt permafrost soils, gullies 20-30 feet were created in just two years. . ." (underlining for emphasis by Komarek).

4. Wildlife

a. Terrestrial

Fire suppression or firefighting practices are chiefly fireline construction and aerial attack. These consist of use of machinery or handtools, retardant application by aircraft, and the setting of backfires. The impacts parallel those of presuppression, but with an urgent need of application and little opportunity for onsite planning or nonfire considerations. The enhancement or depreciation of wildlife food and cover due to fireline construction probably will be secondary to those due to the fire in most situations and biomes. Likewise, the disturbance of the aircraft, the fire crews and their work and camps, and any burnouts and backfires, would produce similar impacts to those of hazard reduction and firebreak construction described under presuppression.

The major impact of fire suppression practices lies in the long range, ecological consequences of permitting the vegetation to develop through succession into large expanses of mature homogenous types.

The policy of suppressing all fires was based on the idea fires were an unnatural presence. One purpose usually given was to conserve wildlife. Much of primitive America supported successional communities maintained by fire. Without fire, vegetation trends toward uniformity, resulting in fewer wildlife species than would be present with a mosaic of vegetation types and ages (Agee, 1974).

Komarek, R. (1963) has summarized this well-known concept, stating the management of wildlife basically is the management of vegetation, because wildlife depends on vegetation for survival. Wild animal populations are mobile and can move to areas more suitable to their environmental needs, but when ecological succession destroys their habitat over a wide enough area, they perish. Land management policies for wildlife must recognize the instability of the habitat and provide measures to maintain and control vegetation patterns. Fire was at least one of the prime ecological factors responsible for the original varied mantle of vegetation.

The earliest and best known investigation of the effect of succession on wildlife conducted in this country was in the southeast. There, annual burning in the pine forests prevents the grass understory from becoming a hardwood jungle, and holds plant succession at the most productive stage for bobwhite quail and other uses (Komarek, E., 1971).

Without fire most native grasslands are rapidly colonized by woody species. Fire suppression and the absence of deliberate use of fire to control vegetational succession has done untold damage to prairie wildlife. Historically, prairie chickens and sharptail grouse were abundant on the prairie where fires were frequent (Kirsch and Kruse, 1972).

Ward (1968) at Delta marsh, found ducks and muskrats increased following fire. Unless the large marshes of Manitoba, managed for waterfowl, include use of fire they will deteriorate and may even cease to be marshes.

In the desert grassland where woody species invade with fire control (Humphrey, 1963), a study by Soutiere and Bolen (1972) found that current year burns were favored over nonburned sites by nesting mourning doves.

Klebenow (1972) reported sage grouse on the cold desert were quick to occupy a burn. Moderate burning of dense sagebrush to open up small acreages in homogenous stands is beneficial to wildlife.

Gullion (1974) stated there is good reason to suspect the success of fire prevention programs is the major factor responsible for the continent-wide decline in deer numbers.

A dense continuous mature forest of Douglas fir is almost a biological desert. Lyon (1969) reported recovery of burned forests coincided with game population reductions. In the northwest coastal sub-biome, fire changes the successional pattern of vegetation and alters other components of the ecosystem, including the animals. Normally low populations increase rapidly following fire which produces earlier successional stages. These effects last 10 to 25 years until the canopy closes (Redfield, et al., 1970).

Various authors (Viereck, 1973; Scotter, 1970; Spencer and Hakala, 1964; Edwards, 1954 and others) have discussed the impacts of fire on wildlife in the taiga-tundra biome. Climax forest animals such as marten and its prey species, the red squirrel, are removed when the forest burns. Moose and beaver prosper during early stages of forest succession, the effects lasting 20 years or longer. Regarding caribou, some reports (Scotter, 1964, 1970; Buckley, 1958; Lutz, 1956; Edwards, 1954) state lichens are a principal winter food, they are highly flammable and recovery is extremely slow--perhaps 50 to 100 years, and therefore fires on the winter ranges are detrimental. Other authors, as Viereck (1973) and Skoog (1968), agree fire destroys the winter range, but the topography and natural fire barriers in the Alaskan interior prevent extensive continuous burns. Also, caribou exist on many plants besides lichens.

In addition, Oberle (1969) said many animals depend on lightning fires to maintain a constant cycle of vegetation types for food and cover.

b. Aquatic

Fire retardants in sufficient quantities are toxic to a variety of freshwater fish and a common freshwater crustacean (Gammarus). The basic element causing mortality in the fire retardants is ammonia. The younger life stages of fish and aquatic organisms appear to be more sensitive to retardants than the older, larger fish. Aquatic animal mortality is likely to occur when the retardant is delivered in large quantities directly into the water (Borovicka, 1974).

Stream and lake shorelines should not be used as natural fire control lines unless fire cannot otherwise be controlled. Removal of vegetation along waterways can cause unstable soil conditions and siltation of lakes and streams.

Construction of firelines and access roads can have adverse impacts on aquatic systems. Bachman (1958) observed significant reduction in volume of invertebrates in Idaho streams following sedimentation from logging road construction.

5. Domestic Animals

There will be some disturbance of livestock by fire suppression forces. Noise created by heavy equipment, crews, and aircraft will cause livestock to move to areas away from the activity. There may be some weight loss to livestock as a result of this disturbance, especially if they are forced to travel longer distances from water.

During suppression activities livestock management facilities such as fences and water developments can be damaged by suppression crews and equipment. When fences are knocked down livestock, primarily cattle and domestic horses, drift into the wrong management field or allotment and can mix with livestock owned by other ranchers. Livestock weight losses would occur, the amount depending on the difficulty involved in gathering and separating the animals and the distance that they had to be moved.

Sometimes wildfires completely destroy the vegetation in an allotment, forcing the livestock owner to remove his animals and find forage elsewhere. This creates an economic hardship on the livestock owned and can necessitate the sale of the animals if other grazing lands are not available.

Wildfires in the tundra biome in Alaska have an especially serious impact on reindeer ranges by destroying the lichens so necessary for reindeer survival. It takes many years for the lichens to return and, in the meantime, other suitable ranges must be found.

Suppression efforts often prevent destruction of valuable livestock forage by reducing the size of wildfires. The remaining forage is usually sufficient to take care of the animals or, if not, only partial removal of livestock may be necessary.

6. Wild Horses and Burros

The activities of suppression forces through the use of bulldozers, vehicles, crews, and especially low flying aircraft (helicopters and retardant planes) will frighten wild horses and burros causing them to leave the fire area and seek refuge away from the disturbance. This can result in the animals being separated from their preferred foraging areas or waterholes.

However, this would be a temporary inconvenience rather than a serious adverse impact because the animals could return to their preferred area as soon as the fire was out and the suppression forces had left.

Suppression efforts can save wild horses and burros from injury or death as a result of being burned by a fire. However, the chances of the animals being burned are rather remote unless the fire would force them into a fence corner or trap them against an obstacle such as a cliff or vertical canyon.

In some cases valuable wild horse and burro grazing areas will be saved by suppression efforts. This is an especially beneficial impact if the forage saved is within a critical habitat area such as a winter range.

Also, overgrazing by wild horses and burros of adjacent ranges will be prevented or reduced by successful suppression efforts, holding forage losses to a minimum.

7. Human Interest Values

a. Sociological

Large scale fire suppression operations may have temporary social and economic impacts in localized situations, bringing people and a surge of economic activity. Life of a fire varies greatly and may be from one day to several months. Control results in a reduction of economic activity, leaving a vacuum in a local area.

Population characteristics in most areas of major fires are characterized by low density levels. Many of the small communities affected may not be prepared for the social and economic impacts, while others affected more regularly are.

In the tundra in areas inhabited by indigenous Americans, cultural differences are most apparent. The impact is largely unknown except that it could tend to accelerate transition to a non-native culture.

Fire suppression operations in certain areas containing unique resource concentrations could adversely affect the recreation tourism industry.

It is possible to spill fairly large quantities of chemicals during various stages of transportation or application. As most fires are remote from population centers and agricultural crops, it is likely that spills could be confined to the locality. The exception is a spill into or very near a flowing stream. Fire camps and other suppression activities also can cause the contamination of potable streams resulting in sickness to human users. Use of scarce petroleum products is an adverse impact.

Extensive uses such as livestock grazing may be adversely impacted by intensive activity such as tankers and heavy equipment. Historical or seasonal patterns of use may be disrupted, as grazing areas are temporarily eliminated. In areas that have experienced very high and continuing unemployment rates, if more effort were made to train and use local labor sources where possible in fire activities, the effect could be beneficially significant on the local economy.

b. Cultural Resources

Influxes of people associated with major suppression activities may impact the cultural life styles of the local residents. New dollars may be the greatest impact especially in areas of extremely low income. There may be a tendency for natives in some situations to imitate the introduced culture. However, all aspects of the cultural transition may not be apparent until later. There also can be positive impacts. Money, jobs, and temporary investments in the community can create a positive impact by tending to stabilize the economy.

In the juniper community area, the density of the juniper stands almost predetermines that some trees will be knocked over during fire operations. Roots tend to be intertwined with the masonry walls of the archeological and historical structures. Pushing the trees over tears up the site and churns the various levels of deposit. Pithouses may be hidden from normal view until the uprooting of the trees.

c. Aesthetics

During suppression access, roads and firelines all have impacts on the landscape. Because both vegetation and soil are disturbed, there is a potential for long term impact. Placement of the fire camp, even though it is temporary, appears as an intrusion upon the landscape. The introduction of human activities into a natural landscape brings with it associated litter and waste materials.

Noise levels associated with suppression may be high in a local area, but normally do not carry any great distance. Smells are generally minor, but can be an irritant in areas where inversions concentrate and hold offensive odors.

The control of fire by aerial application of chemicals can be a temporary detriment to the scenic quality of the area. Under emergency conditions it is difficult to leave islands of brush or trees, however, these islands are often a key item in blending the area to its natural surroundings.

C. Impacts from Postsuppression Practices

Postsuppression practices consist principally of (a) rehabilitation to mitigate fire suppression site disturbance caused by firelines, fire camps, etc., and (b) emergency post-fire treatment of the burn to restore the site and protect it from further damage; this includes seeding and planting, water runoff control, and salvage logging in forest areas.

1. Soil

These rehabilitation practices are aimed at beneficially impacting burned areas. The renovation of firelines can involve the replacement of soil and components of the ground cover as well as seeding or planting to induce a vegetal cover. Burned area rehabilitation could depend totally upon natural recovery, but most likely will involve treatments of some extent on most such areas. Snag felling on forest and woodland areas may be accomplished, or a cultural practice such as plowing might be completed to prepare the site for seeding or planting. These treatments may be accompanied by fertilizer application, but not all are normally used to stabilize each burned area and overcome the adverse effects of fire and firelines.

2. Water

Rehabilitation measures are completed to overcome the persisting effects of fire that are undesirable. The objective is to provide a protective vegetation cover to minimize soil movement and better regulate the amount and timing of runoff. The water resource will benefit in some degree from these treatments. Salvage logging can adversely impact streams by disturbing streambeds and streambanks and by increasing water temperature, silt, and logging debris. Pesticides, fertilizers, and petrochemicals are potential sources of water pollution.

3. Air

An inconsequential contribution to atmospheric impurities can be emitted as exhaust from power equipment and ground and aerial transportation vehicles and from disturbed dust and ash. A beneficial air quality impact of postsuppression activities is to reduce the potential of wind erosion and attendant dust from bare fire trails and burned areas by quickly establishing a plant cover.

4. Vegetation

Postsuppression measures affecting revegetation of suppression or wildfire damage generally have beneficial impacts providing the practices used are designed to meet management objectives identified in the fire rehabilitation plan (see Appendix F).

The natural recovery of desirable vegetation through a program of protection and management is always given first consideration in the rehabilitation of burned areas. However, if it is determined desirable vegetation was destroyed by the fire or undesirable vegetation will take over, the seeding or planting of adapted vegetation is essential if resource management objectives are to be obtained.

Salvage logging, properly done, will reduce future fire hazards by eliminating some snags which are one of the primary points of ignition for wildfires. Also, the removal of weakened trees will reduce the habitat of insects. Site productivity can be reduced due to accelerated erosion, soil compaction, road construction, skid trails and landings, and slash accumulation.

In some desert areas the disturbance of the vegetation and soil by the actual suppression practices have created conditions that warrant postsuppression activities such as the seeding of firebreaks, camps, and disturbed areas. Such a practice can stop excessive erosion either by wind or water. The seeding of firebreaks can also prohibit or at least lessen the possibilities of these being taken over by poisonous or otherwise objectionable plants.

Beneficial impacts of postsuppression programs on vegetation:

- Recovery of vegetation through protection and management.
- Improvement of vegetative quality and quantity through seeding or planting.
- Hazard reduction--replacing high hazard vegetation (such as cheatgrass) with fire resistant species. Reduction of snags through salvage logging.
- Prevent invasion of noxious weeds.
- Reduction of disease and insect infestation in timber by salvage logging.

Adverse impacts on vegetation, primarily through salvage logging, can be:

- Site productivity is reduced by construction of roads, skid trails, and landings causing soil compaction and erosion.
- Logging debris accumulation reduces wildlife mobility and causes stream pollution.

5. Wildlife

a. Terrestrial

Fireline rehabilitation, consisting of replacing topsoil and litter components followed by seeding, and construction of water diversions to control erosion, benefit wildlife by restoring lost habitat. The new vegetation provides diversity, high quality food, and extensive edge habitat for wildlife.

Cleanup and seeding of fire camps and other disturbed areas similarly improve the habitat, and may even create new conditions attractive to species not present prior to the fire. The emergency seeding done within the burn is beneficial provided the pre-existing, ground-level vegetation has been destroyed. Recovery of the native mixture of vegetation usually is preferable to artificial seeding; however, the time lag may be a determining factor if the erosion potential is high.

Following crown fire in the forest biome, salvage logging of merchantable trees proceeds on an emergency basis. In some cases operations continue for several years. Some wildlife species will quickly repopulate a burn, although it may take several years for their numbers to build up. Construction of roads and landings, equipment operation, vehicle access, tree cutting, log hauling and removal of snags all may produce adverse impacts on wildlife through disturbance or destruction of habitat and disturbance due to human presence.

In the California chaparral, wildfire rehabilitation usually consists of aerial seeding to grass and spraying with herbicide to control brush sprouts. Studies indicated fawn production and the total deer population is markedly increased in such areas (Dasmann, et al., 1967).

Some 13 to 15 years following an extensive crown fire in the pinon-juniper woodland of Arizona, dense stands of seeded grasses were intensively used by deer up to one-half mile from live woodland cover. Use was proportionately greater on the burn during a severe winter (McCulloch, 1969).

b. Aquatic

Postsuppression reseeding of the watershed with grasses and forbs and the planting of trees and shrubs along streambanks will provide interim and long term protection of aquatic habitat and stream water quality.

Water control structures such as detention dams, dikes, and water diversion dams are valuable aids to prevent silt and sediment from washing into flowing streams and degrading aquatic habitat.

Salvage logging should follow accepted logging procedures to protect streams by avoiding logging in close proximity to streams or crossing streams with heavy equipment or skidding logs through or near a stream.

6. Domestic Animals

Fireline rehabilitation has some beneficial impacts on livestock. Benefits are realized when the native vegetation removed during line construction is replaced. This also prevents the invasion of undesirable plants.

In steep terrain, the stabilization of firelines by erosion prevention measures such as water bars and water diversion channels reduces erosion on adjacent lands, maintaining their forage production capabilities.

During the period when livestock are excluded from the rehabilitation area and have to graze in other parts of the allotment, competition for the remaining forage among all grazing animals will increase. Overgrazing and poor animal performance, such as weight losses, can occur.

The complete removal of livestock from an allotment can cause severe economic hardship on the owner of the livestock. Alternative sources of pasture may not be available and the livestock owner may be forced to buy expensive feed or sell his animals.

The adverse impacts on livestock are relatively short term, having an effect only until the rehabilitation objectives have been obtained.

The beneficial impacts are long term, and the livestock grazing capacity of fire rehabilitation areas are usually greatly increased.

Crested wheatgrass seedings on burned ranges on national resource lands in the cold desert biome, especially in northern Nevada, southern Idaho and eastern Oregon, have in many instances more than doubled the grazing capacity for livestock. Ranges requiring 10 to 15 acres to support an animal unit (one cow or five sheep) for 1 month prior to the fire required only 2 to 5 acres after the seeding.

Fences are constructed to protect burned areas. They also aid in achieving better vegetal and animal management.

Increased grazing capacity resulting from fire rehabilitation efforts provides opportunities for shifting of livestock use from adjacent overgrazed areas to the rehabilitated areas. This results in the improvement of resource conditions on the overgrazed areas as well as better plant and animal production on the rehabilitated area.

7. Wild Horses and Burros

The adverse impacts of fireline rehabilitation are negligible as this work is done during and after the mopup stages of the suppression activity. The beneficial impacts would be the same as for domestic livestock as discussed in the preceding section.

It may be necessary to exclude wild horses and burros from burned areas to insure successful natural revegetation or the establishment of seedings. The animals would be driven to adjacent areas and the burned area fenced to prevent their return.

The physical act of moving the animals to a different area will frighten them and disrupt their normal behavior patterns. The protection fences around the burn may hinder seasonal migration or exclude an important water source from their use.

Also, when they are forced to graze in another area, competition for forage, water and space will occur with other horses and burros, wildlife, and domestic livestock. This may result in overgrazing and watershed damage.

Most of the long term impacts of postsuppression programs are beneficial to wild horses and burros. The conversion of dense brushland monotypes such as pinon-juniper to grassland through seeding if necessary, greatly increases the quantity and quality of forage available to wild horses and burros.

In addition, the actual range or space available to the animals can be increased because the forage improvement within the rehabilitation area will decrease grazing and space competition on adjacent ranges.

8. Human Interest Values

a. Sociological

Although many of the benefits may be long term, rapid rehabilitation of any burned forested areas will provide numerous favorable social impacts. Use of scarce petroleum products is an adverse impact.

Rehabilitation following wildfires will help maintain employment, particularly in the timber producing areas. Demands for all forms of outdoor recreation are growing at an accelerated rate. Improving habitat for game species could improve hunting conditions. Reforestation projects could also provide future opportunities for bird watching, rockhounding, hiking, scenic photography, and other recreation activities. As areas are rehabilitated, uses can usually adjust to new patterns with minor impact.

b. Cultural Resources

A direct positive impact of postsuppression activities can be the identification, evaluation, and protection of key archeological sites found during forest reestablishment and other practices. An estimated 80 percent of the remaining surface archeological sites will be discovered by field surveys in areas where vegetation allows visual examination of the ground.

c. Aesthetics

Fire-blackened landscapes are rarely aesthetically pleasing, but they can be managed to minimize adverse impacts. Extensive scorching of tree trunks is another feature that may be aesthetically unacceptable to some segments of the public. In the hot desert successful rehabilitation is extremely difficult. Therefore, activities involving surface disturbances can yield impacts of a long term nature.

The discontinuance of fire operations may also have positive impacts on the visual environment. Rehabilitation of ground covering vegetation will tend to reduce the impact of the disturbed soil.

D. Impacts from Prescribed Burning Practices

1. Soil

The effects of fire on soil are largely secondary. They are, to a considerable degree, by-products of the more direct effects that fire has on vegetation and microclimate. It is difficult to distinguish the effects of fire on soil because they are similar to those produced by other influences such as grazing, logging, and any other activity that causes site disturbance. The effects may be good as well as bad.

Fire impacts on soil are controlled by a number of factors (Brown and Davis, 1973). Some major factors are:

- Fire Frequency:

The influence of fire may differ widely depending on burn frequency. Some vegetative types are subject to frequent burns, others are not. The organic mantle overlaying the mineral soil often constitutes a significant part of the combustible fuel available and it has a great deal to do with the impacts of fire on soil. Occasionally, a major part of this organic layer may be consumed by a fire but, under most conditions, lower layers are moist and an initial fire does not burn the entire mantle. A subsequent fire is usually much more damaging because it burns lower organic layers.

Repeated fires are not necessarily bad, however. Periodic fire to reduce competition from competing vegetation and to expose mineral soil is considered to be necessary for maintenance of the Douglas fir forests west of the Cascade Mountains and the pine forests of the South (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1973). Fire is also needed to remove competition and provide a mineral soil seedbed for the reestablishment of lodgepole pine where being replaced by spruce-fir forest, and to reproduce the redwood forests.

- Soil Heating:

Fires vary from those of low heat intensity and short duration in grass stands to relatively long duration and high heat intensities in forest slash and ground fuels. Low intensity, long duration fires occur in duff and peat.

Heat from burning is transmitted by convection, radiation, and conduction. Of the heat released, 70 to 80 percent is upward through convection. Heat transmitted downward to the soil is therefore limited. Temperatures above the soil surface in hot fires may approach 2,000° F. The soil surface may reach 400° F from radiated heat, while temperatures below the surface depend on conducted heat and decrease rapidly with depth.

The direct heating of soil by fire is usually a minor consideration. It becomes important only with fires of considerable intensity and duration. With such burns on heavier soils, colloidal structure may be changed and particles baked into larger aggregates. Frequently soil wettability is reduced under intense burns.

Lethal damage to soil organisms in most forest fires might extend down from 1 inch to as much as 3 inches, but it is possible the lethal temperatures could be encountered down to between 6 and 9 inches during prolonged fires in heavy fuels.

Some surface-soil temperature increase is experienced through blackening of the surface and consequent increase in heat absorption. This phenomenon is also aided by the removal of shade from the burned site. Whether these soil temperature increases are desirable or not depends on the net effect on establishment of natural reproduction. Destruction of the living cover is of much greater importance than a blackened surface in raising soil temperatures and dryness.

Warming of the soil after fire as a result of exposed conditions will accelerate decomposition of any remaining organic materials and can result in increases in soil organisms. This often permits the establishment of different vegetative cover.

- Ground Mantle Characteristics:

The layer of unincorporated organic material can vary from a negligible amount of litter in desert types to a foot or more of partially decayed vegetative material in some coniferous forests.

Environmental changes occur due to removal of ground mantle. Exposure of the soil surface may permit severe erosion along with accelerated surface water runoff. This is frequently a most serious and long-lasting result of fire. Surface compaction can occur when mineral soil is exposed, and infiltration capacity is often reduced by sediment laden runoff.

Exposed soil following fire will usually suffer a reduced moisture content. However, this added evaporational loss might be countered by the removal of vegetation having high transpirational rates. These influences make the effect of fire on soil moisture extremely variable.

Important chemical effects may be brought about by changes induced by fire in the vegetative cover. For instance, increased growth of grass and forbs following burning contributes more organic material and biological activity to the soil then did accumulations of pine needles before the tree cover was burned.

- Soil Characteristics:

The physical characteristics of the mineral soil itself strongly influence the effects fire may have on the soil. Texture, structure, and moisture content vary widely in different soils, as do such physical and chemical properties as thermal conductivity and colloidal content. Susceptibility of surface soil to changes as a result of heating is rather high due to its content of soil organisms, organic matter, and colloids.

Soil is generally a poor conductor of heat. While soil organisms may be affected, no actual combustion of organic matter below 1 inch could take place from most natural fires. Coarse textured soils heat more readily than the clays and as moisture increases thermal conductivity, moist soils are generally cooler soils.

Soil temperatures developed at different depths are illustrated by thermocouple measurements made during fires in California chaparral (Sampson, 1944). Table III-1 gives such depth and duration data for different kinds of chaparral stands.

- Release of Minerals:

The release of minerals in the ash generally results in a reduction in soil acidity and an increase in available plant nutrients. The released mineral elements are leached down into the soil. If they are not lost through the leaching and eroding process, replaceable calcium, potash, phosphoric acid, and other substances are temporarily more abundant for plant use. On heavier soils, they may persist for extended periods.

Table III-1. Litter and Soil Temperatures in California Chaparral Types during Burning*

Vegetation	Depth of thermocouples, in.	Maximum temperatures, °F	Minutes to reach maximum temperature	Minutes temperature remained over 150°F
Chamise, fairly dense grasses and weeds	On soil surface	635	9	3
	3/4 in. in soil	320	9	12
	1-1/2 in. in soil	230	16	17
Mixed chaparral of blue oak, dwarf interior live oak, wedgeleaf ceanothus with scattered herbs	1/2 in. in duff	840	4	40
	1/2 in. in soil	410	7	61
	1-1/2 in. in soil	235	14	74
Wedgeleaf ceanothus with scattered grasses	1/2 in. in litter	300	5	11
	1/2 in. in soil	200	1	5
	1-1/2 in. in soil	†		
Common manzanita, scattered grasses and weeds	1/2 in. in litter	960	8	34
	1-1/2 in. in soil	215	16	17

* After Sampson (1944).

† Below 150°F. Instrument does not record below this temperature, and hence no reading.

Although nitrogen is lost into the air from combustion of organic material, the amount of available nitrogen in the soil is usually increased following a burn. More favorable soil and vegetative conditions for nitrification appear to be the main reason. Reduced soil acidity may stimulate nitrification.

Mineral nutrients tend to cycle within an ecosystem rather than to flow through. They are taken up from the soil by plants, become a component of litter, and ultimately return to the soil. Rainwater and weathering processes provide minerals, while water and animals remove them. Minerals in litter and wood may be released slowly by micro-organisms or rapidly by fire. Heat from fire may also hasten the weathering of soil minerals. After a fire, there is usually an abundance of soluble minerals available for increased plant growth. A large part of these may also be removed by runoff and leaching (Despain, 1972).

The time of burning affects fires influence of soil chemical properties. On tall grass range, winter burning caused greater changes, with higher soil pH, organic matter, calcium, magnesium, potassium, and lower soil nitrogen than did burns at other seasons (Owensby and Wyrill, 1973).

2. Water

Impacts of prescribed fire on water, like those on soil, are largely secondary resulting from fire's primary influence on vegetation and the microclimate. Fire may affect the quantity and quality of water both on the watershed and far downstream.

The use of fire in resource management can have great significance with respect to water resources. Water yields can often be increased by removing stands of heavy water using plants and allowing replacement by those with lower water requirements. Currently prominent in such conversion efforts are chaparral and woodland types. These deep-rooted, woody species after burning may be largely replaced by herbaceous cover. Results generally involve a lowering of peak flows, greater and longer flow from springs, and improved moisture relations through better infiltration and percolation into the soil. Some other tree and shrub stands can also be beneficially treated for conversion to a more water-conserving condition.

Planned burning to remove underbrush from tree stands can alter the quality and yield of water by adding available nutrients, exposing soil to more direct raindrop action and increasing runoff and sediment loads. These impacts can be of short duration and eventually return to pre-fire conditions.

The total volume of water received on an area as precipitation will be redistributed within the ecosystem if vegetative cover is removed by burning. Although there have been few direct studies made of fire effects on water storage and yield of watersheds, observations during related studies and after fires have provided some general information. The most apparent changes have been in two factors, surface runoff and soil moisture.

Increased surface runoff can be expected from most fires. Not only is the obstructing vegetation removed, but a hot burn can make soils water repellant for a time.

Many areas dominated by herbaceous cover have been invaded by woody, deep-rooted brush and trees with a consequent drying up of springs and seeps. Fire often had held back invading trees and shrubs. Fire prevention and control, along with overgrazing by livestock, tipped the ecological balance in favor of woody plants. Frequently, this invasion was accompanied by large, oversurface flows of water. Springs often started flowing again in greater amounts and over longer periods of the year with the reestablishment of shallow-rooted vegetation.

Openings in the vegetation canopy influence moisture relationships of a burned area. The size, distribution, and orientation of such openings determine evapotranspiration rates and influence water yield of streams. Snow accumulation is modified along with time of snowmelt and amount of runoff. Most studies indicate that large openings in tree stands will advance the time of snowmelt, thus increasing peak flows and amount of early stream runoff. Some evidence shows that snowmelt is delayed a few days in small openings on leeward, north slopes in some intermountain areas.

Stream discharge fluctuations due to fire are often difficult to distinguish from normal annual fluctuations. However, when significant portions of a watershed are burned, changes in total discharge volume are often experienced.

The burning of plant cover may increase groundwater temporarily by removing plants that transpire heavily. However, this may be offset if evaporational losses are increased because the burn removed shading vegetation.

Time of burning can have a significant influence on soil moisture. Winter burns of prairie grassland, leaving the soil surface unprotected from losses by runoff, evaporation, and surface erosion for a long period before new growth begins, will lower average annual soil moisture more than burns later in the season (Anderson, 1965 and Anderson, et al., 1970).

Prescribed burning will either directly or indirectly have some effect on the physical and chemical nature of water from a watershed. The extent of water modification is dependent on a number of factors including:

- Extent and intensity of the burn
- Amount of resultant runoff
- Erosion susceptibility of soil
- Soil constituents
- Amount and kind of vegetal cover

Each of these has a definite bearing on the change a fire may make in the usefulness of water from a given area. Most of the immediate, short term changes induced by fire are undesirable. The long-range influence often enhances water quality over the condition existing before a burn. A change from woody to herbaceous cover will sometimes provide this. In any event, the ultimate result of fire appears to be more often desirable than detrimental with respect to water quality and other site factors.

Water quality is altered by fire through its influence on plant nutrients, salinity, sediment load, turbidity temperature, and oxygen content.

Fire is likely to release large quantities of chemical ions that may be lost from the soil surface and reach streams through leaching and soil movement in runoff. This introduction of nutrients into aquatic ecosystems may be excessive. The extent of leaching and soil erosion, and any consequent eutrophication of streams and lakes, will vary with a number of factors some of which are:

- Cation exchange capacity of soil
- Intensity of fire
- Proximity of fire to stream channels
- Period between fire and precipitation
- Intensity and duration of precipitation
- Period between burn and revegetation
- Nature of revegetation

When effected by micro-organisms, the recycling of mineral residue from vegetation is slow, but burning greatly accelerates the process. Organic materials, both living and dead, are rapidly oxidized by fire into ash. From this residue, subsequent precipitation dissolves some of the chemicals and carries it either into the soil or into streams. Concentrations of cations (calcium, magnesium, potassium, and sodium) may be greatly increased after fire for a few years with gradual diminishment to preburn levels (Rothacher and Lopinshinsky, 1974). These minerals can be in solution in streams or absorbed by sediment particles. Nitrate nitrogen concentrations also show increases for varying periods after many fires.

Currently, the most effective and widely used chemicals to control forest fires are made in formulations of ammonium sulfate and diammonium phosphate. These compounds are actually plant fertilizers and enhance the growth of trees and other plants, but their release into surface waters can yield toxic concentrations of ammonia and promote eutrophication (Blahm, et al., 1972).

Occasionally a situation may be encountered where the water of a stream is so pure as to be quite sterile for the production of aquatic organisms. Nutrient enrichment from burning adjacent plant cover could be a very favorable change. Such enrichment within appropriate limits might benefit many streams and lakes, depending upon the kinds of organisms stimulated and populations reached.

Changes in water salinity in streams and lakes due to the effects of fire could produce a minor adverse impact. The accompanying increased runoff would tend to counteract the effect.

Petrochemicals reaching streams or lakes would be a source of water pollution.

The ability of a soil surface to resist erosion depends on its textural structural characteristics and slope gradient. These determine infiltration and percolation rates, along with water-holding capacity. The differentials in erosion resistance between soils create productivity mosaics within systems. These appear as areas which are biologically sterile or in various stages of plant succession.

When water yields are increased, stream channel morphology may be changed by the erosive forces produced. This adds to the sediment load which may already have been augmented through surface erosion on the watershed. The movement of sediments usually aggravate the runoff problem by reducing soil porosity and clogging stream channels and lake beds.

The enrichment of streams and lakes from soil erosion is usually accompanied by increased water turbidity. Such reduced light intensity places a proportionate limitation on productivity of the aquatic habitat. It has been postulated that this modification of a production factor would tend to offset the growth stimulus provided by eutrophication.

Fires temporarily influence energy flow in an ecosystem by direct release of heat at the time of the burn; but also, more importantly, by reduction of shading from the vegetation cover. This results in higher temperature of surface water and soil, thereby influencing soil moisture relations and microclimate. The total effect on the system varies with the type and intensity of burn, slope, exposure, elevation, and soil properties.

If fine organic residues get into streams, biochemical oxygen demand will increase and influence stream biology. This added demand aggravates any overproduction situation engendered by stream enrichment as a result of fire. The aquatic ecosystem may become incapable of supporting a desirable array of organisms.

Several factors affect the quality of a stream as a fishery. Some of the more important are water temperature (both directly and indirectly as it influences oxygen availability), rate of flow, fluctuation of discharge, availability of shelter, and any sediment load. Fish distribution is controlled by channel morphology, deviation of flow, and presence of suitable food organisms. Of these various factors, fire can most directly change shelter through removal of vegetation adjacent to the stream. This could reduce local fish populations for short periods until resprouting of streamside shrubs has occurred.

Sediment load resulting from fire will or will not be detrimental to a fishery depending upon the amount and size of particles. Sand grains settle out quickly and usually do little damage. Silt-sized and smaller particles are suspended a longer time and may be carried to spawning gravels. Here it may seal the gravel beds and prevent oxygenated water from reaching the eggs.

3. Air

The effects on air quality of fire prescribed to accomplish resource management objectives are identical to the effects of fire used for hazard reduction discussed at length above. Though there may be a greater diversity in the kinds of burning operations, possibly more combinations of natural fuels and a greater frequency of low intensity area burning, no new air quality considerations are introduced.

As discussed elsewhere, if a wildfire occurs in a predesignated prescribed fire area and meets the specifications of the prescription in terms of fuel conditions, weather, and fire intensity, it may be designated a prescribed fire. One of the requirements for being designated a prescribed fire is that it conform to the limitations on smoke emissions imposed by a smoke management plan.

In remote areas, particularly at high elevations, no smoke limitations would normally apply. However, if the combination of existing or expected stability and winds are such that the smoke plume would extend into a smoke sensitive area, then the provisions of a smoke management plan apply.

Under the plan, the total amount of particulate that the atmosphere can accommodate in a single day is specified for the given conditions, for the individual administrative area. This means that the total particulate emitted from all prescribed fires plus all wildfires in that area may not exceed this total.

Prescribed fires lasting more than a single day must be reevaluated for compliance with air quality requirements each day. Suppression actions can be necessary to assure these limits are met.

4. Vegetation

a. Introduction

Prescribed burning, or the intentional ignition of grass, shrub, and forest fuels for specific purposes, has long been a recognized land management practice. The objectives of such burning are varied: reducing the fire hazard after logging, exposing mineral soil for seedbeds, eliminating hardwoods from forests of southern pines, controlling insects and diseases, thinning dense stands of saplings, improving yields and quality of forage, improving wildlife habitat, and modifying the composition of species in different plant communities.

Beneficial impacts of prescribed burning on vegetation are:

- Reduce fuel accumulations
- Control species composition
  - reduce fire sensitive species
  - improve seed germination of some species
  - stimulate germination; e.g., Ceanothus
  - open serotinous cones
  - favor shrubs and herbaceous plant because more light reaches the ground
- Offset or minimize adverse impacts of fire exclusion from suppression activities

- Accelerate nutrient cycling
- Stimulate net primary production
- Enhance wildlife habitat patterns
- Control insects and disease
- Regulate plant succession

Adverse impacts of prescribed burning on vegetation are:

- Remove desired species, especially if fire-sensitive
- Reduce site productivity where disturbed by mechanical equipment
- Removal of soil-protecting vegetation and litter
- Loss of nutrients

b. Grasslands

Studies on the southern temperate grassland by Wright (1972a) and others have shown the impact of prescribed burning, if properly conducted and at the right time, and under the right conditions, is most beneficial to the grassland by increasing productivity and inhibiting such woody species as mesquite and juniper. With the removal of such woody growths the grasses are stimulated and the grassland is renewed by the prescribed burning. The grasses are then more palatable, higher in protein and necessary mineral elements. Studies by Gartner and Thompson (1972) in South Dakota on northern temperate grasslands have shown similar results.

c. Deserts

The beneficial aspects of prescribed burning in the desert biome grasslands are as follows:

- Reducing fire hazard
- Removal of excessive organic matter where proper grazing management is practiced

- Rejuvenation of grass successions
- Inhibit the invasion of undesirable brush or woody species or cacti
- Increased palatibility of many species of grasses as well as an increase of protein and mineral content

The adverse impacts of prescribed burning of desert sites are usually caused by the improper use of fire where not needed, the wrong intensity of the fire, etc. This, however, is primarily the fault of the prescription or of the implementation of the prescription. Proper burning practices can be easily defeated with possible serious consequences by allowing livestock access onto the burned area too soon after the burn. Much degradation of western ranges has occurred because of heavy grazing on the tender grass shoots on burns before the plants are able to withstand such grazing. Under such conditions it is not the fault of the burning but of the livestock management. Not only can the desert grasslands be injured but more erosion and compaction can occur. Where woody species or cacti are invading the range, a prescribed burn of too low an intensity can defeat the control of such vegetation, and in fact enhance that invasion.

d. Woodland-Bushland

(1) Chaparral

Perhaps the most striking impact from prescribed burning in chaparral is the resulting hydrologic conditions where repeated studies have shown highly increased water yields in the younger and grass stages of succession in these vegetations. Increased water yields in the Salt River Watershed are the objectives of large scale programs of prescribed burning there.

The lessening of severe erosion, enhancement of wildlife habitat, and increased range capabilities have also resulted from such prescribed burning. Philpot (1974) has pointed out that the use of fuel management and prescribed burning in chaparral in the younger age classes of succession would lessen the danger and damages apparently inherent in wildfires occurring in older age classes.

(2) Oak-Woodland

The impacts from prescribed burning in oak-woodland are somewhat the same as in the chaparral. In large sections of California the ranchers burn such areas under the direction of the State Extension Service and the State Division of Forestry as well as with the cooperation of the State Environmental Protection Agency. Under this cooperative effort many thousands of acres are burned annually for the regeneration of the open grass parkland and the control in invading brush. The water yield is also increased.

The good effects of prescribed burning can be negated by poor prescriptions and poor livestock management. Stocking too early on the burn will harm the grass components; and brush because of little grass competition will increase. Many of these oak-parklands have so reverted to the brush stage they are termed oak-woodland-brush lands. Wherever the brush is controlled and an oak-parkland is maintained they are considered some of the finest of livestock rangelands. The control of the brush, if not overdone, also enhances this habitat for many forms of desirable wildlife.

(3) Pinon-Juniper

The impacts from prescribed burning in pinon-juniper can vary from adverse to very beneficial depending upon methods used to regenerate the rangeland. The use of bulldozers, cabling, etc., all creating considerable soil disturbance are not always beneficial. The usual practice in such areas is to pile the pinon-juniper, burn the piles and then reseed the range with both exotic and native range grasses. There does seem to be a trend toward using more and more native grasses.

Another method of reclaiming pinon-juniper land, which is nearly worthless in extensive areas, is to remove livestock and allow continuous ground fuel to develop and then broadcast burn. This is not always possible for the competition from old stands of pinon and juniper will preclude the development of enough grass for a good fire. This is why cabling and dozing has had to be practiced. The fundamental reason for this condition is that fire has been kept out of this type for too long a period both by fire control as well as by overgrazing. In many areas overgrazing alone has been the primary cause of such pinon-juniper invasion into grasslands and not fire suppression. Once the grassland has recovered and is well managed then prescribed burning becomes an excellent management tool. The good effects, such as better and more palatable grasses, better water yield, less brush invasion and thus more range productivity can all be negated by a prescription poorly activated and poor livestock management after the burn. It should also be stated that fire, even prescribed burning, is no miraculous tool and cannot always remove the effects of many years of poor land management practices alone, or even with the help of herbicides and mechanical equipment. The problems that have developed in all three of the divisions in this oak woodland-bushland biome have been caused by many years of poor land management. Neither fire alone, or with other help, or any other management technique, can repair quickly the damage done to the soils and vegetations (and fauna as well) for over nearly a century of poor range and wildland management.

e. Conifer Forests

In coniferous forests characterized by dry, cool growing seasons, the process of decomposition barely functions and fuels accumulate. Fire suppression actions have often led to excessive fuel accumulations in many environments (Dodge, 1972). Prescribed burning can be used to reduce the accumulating fuels under controlled conditions. Understory burning has been successfully demonstrated to reduce fuel accumulations in the larch/Douglas-fir type (Norum, et al., 1974). Duff removal has been successfully accomplished by prescribed burning in ponderosa pine (Davis, et al., 1968). Prescribed burning has reduced fuel loads by 50 to 85 percent in forests protected from fire for many years (Weaver, 1957; Biswell, 1963). Fall burns often consume more fuels than spring burns, because the fuels are drier. Up to 85 percent of the duff and 45-95 percent of the larger fuels were consumed by a fall prescribed burn (Kilgore, 1972).

Species composition can be materially affected by prescribed burning. Herbaceous vegetation almost always increases. Though some species decrease or remain stable, many increase after burning in a mixed conifer forest (Hartesveldt and Harvey, 1967). The release of nutrients, better carbon/nitrogen ratio, less litter, and more light resulted in the increase of herbaceous vegetation under ponderosa pine (Moir, 1966; Davis, et al., 1968). and in mixed conifer forest (Kilgore, 1971; Rundel, 1971).

Prescribed burning often favors shrubs in coniferous forests. Shrubs require adequate light to become established under a mature forest (Kilgore, 1972). Many shrubs have fire resistant seeds or they have the ability to sprout and can increase after a fire (Sweeney, 1967; Buchanan et al., 1966). Nonsprouting shrubs with seeds stimulated by fire, such as littleleaf ceanothus and deerbrush, often increase after fire (Hartesveldt and Harvey, 1967).

The numbers and species composition of trees can be markedly altered by prescribed fires (van Wagtendonk, 1972; Kilgore, 1972). Generally, fire resistant trees are favored by prescribed fire and fire sensitive trees are reduced. Prescribed fire helps prepare a seedbed for regeneration of future crops of trees. Burning reduces duff and litter accumulations and exposes mineral soil necessary for seed germination and survival.

Zivnuska (1972) described a series of costs associated with undesired consequences of the prescribed use of fire:

> Examples of such undesired consequences include the killing of regeneration which is desired, the loss of nutrients either directly in the combustion process or indirectly through accelerated runoff, the development of fire scars on crop trees, and loss of aesthetic quality during the period in which evidence of the fire is readily visible. Obviously, the magnitude of such costs will vary tremendously both with the success of the prescribed burning and from property to property.

f. Tundra

The tundra of Interior Alaska may well be in danger from the activities of the pipeline and if wildfires do develop it would be better to prescribe burn areas as firebreaks. Even this would have to be done very carefully, for although fire was and is natural in true tundra communities this agent was of infrequent occurrence judging by certain lichen components that are tender to fire and take from 40 to 100 or more years to recover (Scotter, 1971). The "fire mosaic" of the true tundra was probably made up of many small burns over long periods of time. Cochrane and Rowe (1969), Scotter (1971), and Kruichkov (1968) all discuss fire as a natural factor but point out that much of the tundra is very sensitive to overburning regularly by man. In fact Kruichkov (1968) points out that adjacent to the taiga or other tree zones repeated, and unnatural fires can develop what he calls a pyrogenic tundra. In Russia he states:

> "At the treeline in burned areas tundra appears which we suggest calling pyrogenic. . .
>
> After several tens of years pyrogenic tundra can no longer be differentiated from primary tundras in aerial photographs. In trips on pyrogenic tundras one usually finds burned stumps either at the soil surface or under a thin layer of moss."

However, pyrogenic tundra could well be a natural phenomena as well as man-developed around settlements. The region between the taiga, conifer forest, muskeg, and the tundra proper is a fragile and greatly fluctuating zone depending on weather variations or cycles and lightning fluctuations. The interior of Alaska with its mixture of the vegetative types just mentioned is a predominant lightning fire zone. In addition, there are certain areas where man-caused fires are also abundant. The proper use of fire, and fire suppression as well as postsuppression actions will require much study.

5. Wildlife

a. Terrestrial

Prescribed fires commonly consist of broadcast (or area slash) burning, piling and burning of debris, and light underburning, as forestry practices. Control fires may also be set in non-forest biomes for other resource benefits, including wildlife habitat improvement. Secondary benefits to wildlife may accrue from control of disease hosts.

Favorable impacts of prescribed burning (and sometimes accidentally achieved by wildfires) include the control or recycling of plant succession, as discussed under suppression practices. Most, but not all, wildlife species prosper when fire breaks up extensive, homogenous stands into a pattern of different vegetation types of various ages. High quality food is produced abundantly for many wildlife species. Adverse impacts on wildlife can result from controlled burning if adequate care is not given. For example, the direct loss of nests or young animals if spring fires are ill-timed (Stoddard, 1931; Leopold, 1933). Most animals easily escape fire by avoidance; some are attracted to smoke and to fresh black burns (Komarek, E., 1969).

Grange (1949) said the role of controlled fire as a method of increasing game is always that of partial denudation to induce an earlier succession or to expose the soil to sunlight and air. Fire is a natural method of initiating succession. Fire on game ranges is best applied on a rotation system. The role of fire in deciduous vegetation is one of pruning to produce vigorous new growth; usually, fruit production also increases. Fire may reduce populations of various insect pests and parasites. It reduces cover utilized by rodents. Burning produces some immediate fertilizer effect. It stimulates some hard shrub seeds to germinate. Controlled burning reduces danger of large wildfires. Prescribed burning, preferably after crushing, is done to open up stands of chaparral in California to provide access for deer and improve forage quality. Deer use may increase ten times (Dasmann, et al., 1967). Available forage may increase from about

50 pounds per acre to 1 ton, and protein content from 1 percent to 6 percent (Hendricks, 1968). No wildlife species is totally eliminated following a chaparral fire, nor is there any reduction in total life on a burn after plant growth resumes. One immediate effect of fire was a large increase in predatory mammals and birds, including coyotes and badgers, and especially hawks and owls. Populations of most small mammals and some birds decreased rapidly. Birds and mammals typically preferring brush habitat were substantially reduced in numbers in the years following the burn. Conversely, some birds preferring open grassland or oak-woodland increased in number. Fire resulted in an overall increase in densities of nesting birds. None of the small mammals increased in numbers (Lawrence, 1966).

Heady (1972) reported that in the California annual grasslands there was an immediate reduction in rodent numbers following fire, but a few of all species survive. Populations recovered within a few years.

A prescribed burn in the red fir type in King's Canyon, California resulted in no noticeable change in deer or bird numbers (Kilgore, 1971). Redfield, et al. (1970) found blue grouse density was as high on logged and slash-burned areas as on burns.

Prescribed burning trials in the mixed-conifer forest of northern Idaho were made to rejuvenate shrub species used by deer and elk. Animals preferred the new growth on burns regardless of species. Normally unpalatable shrubs were much better used after burning. Effects lasted at least through two winter seasons (Leege, 1969). In the same area, Lyon (1966) found that prescribed fires increased browse availability and at least doubled its quantity within 2 years. Peak effects should last about 15 years.

In large homogenous expanses of dense sagebrush, small controlled burns could improve habitat for sage grouse. Fire can control sagebrush invading meadows which are primary summer habitat. Production of forbs, utilized as food, increased on burned sites. Sage grouse wintering habitat should not be burned. Burned areas in sagebrush are also attractive to sharp-tailed grouse and chukars will return to a burn almost immediately following a fire (Klebenow, 1972).

Handley (1969) observed that mammals living where fire is a frequent and regular occurrence, as in grasslands, are adapted to survive fire. But fire often is a disaster for mammals dwelling where fires are infrequent.

In general, the beneficial effects of burning far outweigh and offset any direct wildlife losses (Vogl, 1967).

For further references to fire impacts on wildlife and habitat see Stanton (1975).

b. Aquatic

The immediate effect of fire on streams could be an increase in stream temperature. The size of the stream and intensity of the fire would determine the amount of water temperature increase. Any significant increase could stimulate insect emergence (Waters, 1972). With the burning of streamside vegetation, adult aquatic insects resting in the area as well as terrestrial insects that provide fish food could be destroyed.

Addition of organic matter to the stream from needle drop, forest litter and ash associated with fire could have a profound effect on the stream environment by altering water chemistry (Bergersen, 1974). In a study of the effects of yellow pine litter on small lakes Seawell (1967) found that leachates from tree litter reduced alkalinity, added color, and increased oxygen demand and biogenic salt concentrations (phosphate and nitrate) as well as the organic load on the lake waters. Similar changes are likely to occur in a stream system in the event of an extensive needle drop in or even near a stream in a burn.

Long term effects of fire on aquatic habitat are the loss of streamside vegetation and the cover it provides for fish resting as well as a possible significant increase in solar radiation that reaches the stream which could result in critically high water temperatures. Sedimentation resulting from fire can clog the gills of invertebrates and young fish, increase suspended materials, and inhibit primary production, fill bottom substrate interstices with fine sediments, and reduce invertebrate and fish spawning habitat (Bergersen, 1974).

6. Domestic Animals

Livestock are not as adversely affected by prescribed burning as they are by postsuppression practices. Areas to be treated by prescribed burning are predetermined and are usually located where livestock production is far below potential; postsuppression projects result from wildfires that often destroy valuable livestock forage.

As with wildfires, it is necessary to protect prescribed burns from grazing until native vegetation and/or seeded species become established. Harniss and Murray (1973) stated that improper grazing practices after burning result in serious deterioration of vegetation and soil.

However, protection programs such as fencing or removal of livestock from the area can be planned well in advance thus greatly reducing the detrimental effects to livestock, the livestock owners, and other resources as discussed in the postsuppression program.

The beneficial effects of prescribed burning on the production, quality, and nutritional value of livestock forage are widely recognized. Prescription burns that take advantage of environmental conditions such as soil moisture, relative humidity, and wind to achieve desired burn intensities and which have a minimum adverse impact on desirable vegetation greatly increase grazing capacities for livestock.

On sagebrush range in eastern Idaho, planned burning followed by good grazing practices resulted in a threefold increase in the production of grasses and forbs.

The conversion of fire climax types, such as pinon-juniper, to grass types through prescribed burning will greatly benefit livestock. The removal of pinon-juniper where it dominates a site, either by fire or mechanical means, is the only way that forage production for livestock and wildlife can be increased.

Prescribed burns in forest types also increase forage. Agee (1974) indicated prescribed burning in forest types generally favors shrubs, herbaceous plants, and grasses because light penetration is increased and the forest floor is reduced.

There have been many studies showing that prescribed burning increases the nutritional value of vegetation. Prescribed burning of pine bluestem ranges during proper time of the year will increase protein content of the forage. High intensity prescribed burning in East Coast browse types significantly increased the protein content of the new plants.

Increased grazing capacity resulting from prescribed burning will also provide the opportunity for shifting livestock use from overgrazed areas. This will benefit livestock production and other resource values.

7. Wild Horses and Burros

Prescribed burning would remove some vegetation preferred by wild horses and burros for at least one growing season or until the area could be grazed. The adverse impacts of precluding use of the area by the animals would be the same as in postsuppression rehabilitation. However, the magnitude or seriousness of the impacts would not be as great.

The beneficial impacts of prescribed burning involves changing species composition and vegetal conversion most beneficial to wild horses and burros.

8. Human Interest Values

a. Sociological

Although the risk of wildfire is reduced by the release of energy in a prescribed burn, there is always a risk of the planned fire escaping (Zivnuska, 1972). From an economic standpoint, prescribed burning is becoming relatively less expensive than a policy of suppressing all fires. Where wildfire threats exist, prescribed fires can reduce fuel loads and reduce the danger of destroying human resources. In high value areas, prescribed fires could be used to protect areas such as campgrounds and other important visitor use areas from wildfires.

Fire by prescription, whether started by man or natural causes, would have a lesser impact on wilderness values than fire suppression since fire is a natural component of the wilderness ecosystem.

b. Cultural Resources

Properties listed on or nominated to the National Register of Historic Places should never be subjected to prescribed burns.

Natural and Indian fires burned for many centuries at various intervals. Thus, most sites that would be prescribed burned today were burned over countless times up to 60-80 years ago. The impact of prescribed fires on sites and objects may be limited to undiscovered artifacts of the last years of Indian occupation. Sites, such as wooden structures and artifacts in dry caves may be directly lost by burning in fires. Prescribed fires may be beneficially used to recreate prehistoric and historic scenes for interpretive purposes, as most of the Indians as well as the early settlers used fire to manipulate their environments (Lewis, 1973).

c. Aesthetics

Many visitors experience much of the landscape by means of the automobile. However, travel time is often a period of great value as a scenic experience. Scenic and landscape factors must be evaluated when prescribed fires are applied to any area. Prescribed fires may create a non-natural landscape if the fire is not applied with landscape maintenance or restoration as an objective. Distance vistas may be temporarily blocked if visibility is reduced by smoke from prescribed fires.

Prescribed fires can also enhance the landscape, as maintaining fire-dependent plant communities. But fire-deadened understory trees may remain upright for several years and lend a temporary ugly appearance to the understory. A second fire in several years can remove these trees, transforming the landscape from a dense understory to an open parklike condition (Agee, 1974).

Prescribed fires can rarely be uniformly applied to an area, and the resultant variety can add to the sequence of landscapes (Meskimen, 1971). Care must be exercised to prevent large scale uniformity unless this is a natural landscape feature. By only burning part of an area at a time, aesthetic values can be maintained (Hoffman, 1971).

E. Summary

In summary, beneficial and adverse impacts can occur with varying degrees of severity due to the proposed fire management program. Often these impacts occur offsite as well as onsite. The impacts are as follows:

1. Beneficial

a. Presuppression-Prevention Practices

- Reduce the number and size of wildfires
- Reduce difficulties, costs, and dangers of future suppression actions
- Reduce smoke production caused by wildfires
- Inhibit damaging insect and fungi outbreaks
- Increase availability of nutrients
- Improve seedbed conditions
- Improve variety and quality of vegetal cover for livestock, wild horses and burros, wildlife, recreation, and other uses
- Facilitate human and animal access
- Create aesthetically pleasing variety to the landscape
- Discover archeological and historical features
- Human rescue

b. Suppression Practices

- Protect human life and manmade structures
- Protect archeological and historical and other unique sites and resource investments
- Limit loss of vegetation cover on watersheds
- Limit loss of forage and wood products
- Limit loss of habitat for animals

- Maintain conditions favorable to plant succession
- Reduce smoke emission
- Provide nutrients from retardants
- Provide temporary, local stimulus to the economy
- Protect endangered species of plants and animals

c. Postsuppression Practices

- Reduce wind and water erosion of soil
- Reduce stream pollution
- Reduce fire hazards
- Restore desired plant species for watershed protection
- Restore habitat and forage for wildlife, livestock, and wild horses
- Inhibit damaging insect outbreaks
- Improve recreation opportunities
- Identify and protect archeological sites
- Improve visual aspect of the landscape

d. Prescribed Burning

- Impacts same as listed for presuppression
- Long term increase in water quality and/or yield
- Restore and/or maintain plant succession at desired stages
- Minimize adverse wildfire suppression impacts
- Reduce plant and animal disease hosts

2. Adverse

a. Soil

- Lethal heating of organisms
- Reduce wettability and infiltration

- Accelerate soil erosion
- Increase soil compaction
- Loss of organic matter

b. Water

- Increase stream temperature, sedimentation, and nutrients
- Contamination from retardants, fertilizers, pesticides, and petrochemicals
- Streambed and streambank changes
- Increase runoff and peak flow of streams
- Changes in water salinity

c. Air

- Reduce air quality through increase of pollutants

d. Vegetation

- Removal of or damage to vegetation
- Reduce site productivity due to activity of mechanical equipment
- Loss of available nutrients
- Larger more intense fires due to fuel accumulation
- Slower nutrient release
- Long term loss of life form diversity and species diversity
- Loss of fire-dependent species; fewer understory plants
- Poorer seedbed conditions

e. Wildlife (Including Aquatic)

- Loss of life
- Destruction or depreciation of habitat

- Increased human activity (disturbance, noise, access)
- Long term plant succession decreases variety of habitat
- Death or injury to aquatic life due to retardant toxicity

f. Livestock, Wild Horses and Burros

- Loss of forage
- Increased human activity
- Damage to range facilities, as fences and water developments
- Displacement of animals

g. Human Interest

- Hazard to personal health or welfare
- Destruction or damage to natural areas of scientific, educational, or wilderness value
- Chemical contamination of water supply
- Damage to private property
- Loss or damage to geological, archeological, and historical features
- Disrupt local lifestyle
- Disrupt land and resource uses
- Disturbance of aesthetic values
- Human presence (noise, solid wastes)
- Impair visibility due to dust and smoke
- Utilization of scarce petroleum products

F. References

Agee, J. K. 1974a. Fire Management in the National Parks. Western Wildlands 1(3):27-33.

Agee, J. K. 1974b. Environmental impacts from fire management alternatives. USDI, National Park Service, Western Reg. Office, San Francisco, Calif., 92 pp.

Anderson, K. L. 1965. Time of Burning as it Affects Soil Moisture in an Ordinary Upland Bluestem Prairie in the Flint Hills. Journal of Range Management 18(6):311-316.

Anderson, K. L., et al. 1970. Bluestem Range. Journal of Range Management 23(2):81-92.

Bachman, R. W. 1958. The ecology of four north Idaho trout streams with reference to the influence of forest road construction. M. S. Kieser, Univ. of Idaho.

Beaton, J. D. 1959. The influence of burning on the soil in the timber range of Lac de Jeune, British Columbia, I. Physical properties, II. Chemical properties. Canadian Jour. Soil Science 39:1-11.

Behan, M. 1970. The cycle of minerals in forest ecosystems. pp. 11-30. In the role of fire in the Intermountain West, Intermountain Fire Research Council, Missoula, Montana. 229 pp.

Bergersen, Eric P. and David L. Galat. 1974. Report to U.S. Forest Service, Northern Fire Lab., Missoula, Montana on Reconnaissance Survey of Streams in the White Cap Fire Management Area. Mimeo. November 1974.

Biswell, H. H. 1963. Research in wildland fire ecology in California, Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. Proc. 3:62-97.

Biswell, H. H. and H. Weaver. 1968. Redwood Mountain, American Forests, 74(8):20-23.

Blahm, J. H., et al. 1972. Effect of Chemical Fire Retardants on the Survival of Juvenile Salmonids. National Marine Fisheries Service, Environmental Field Station, Prescott, Oregon. 23 pp.

Bolstad, R. 1971. Catline rehabilitation and restoration. pp. 107-116. In Fire in the northern environment. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Expt. Sta., Portland, Oregon. 275 pp

Borovicka, Robert L. and Theodore H. Blahm. 1974. Use of Chemical Fire Retardants near Aquatic Habitat. Paper presented at the 104th annual meeting of the American Fisheries Society. Sept. 10, 1974, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Brown, Arthur A. and Kenneth P. Davis. 1973. Forest Fire Control and Use. Second Edition, pp. 62-78, illus. New York, New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Buchanan, H., H. H. Biswell, and R. P. Gibben S. 1966. Succession of vegetation in a cutover Sierra redwood forest. Utah Acad. Sci., Arts and Letters, 43(I):43-48.

Buckley, J. L. Effects of Fire on Alaskan Wildlife. Proc. Soc. Amer. For. pp. 123-126. 1958.

Burns, P. Y. 1952. Effect of fire on forest soils in the pine barren region of New Jersey. Yale Univ. Sch. Forest, Bull. 57, 50 pp.

Cable, D. R. 1967. Fire effects on semidesert grasses and shrubs. J. Range Mgt. 20:170-176.

Cable, D. R. 1972. Fire effects in southwestern semidesert grass-shrub communities. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 12:109-128.

Carlsbad Current Argus. 1974. Article of wildfire at Carlsbad Caverns National Park. Carlsbad, New Mex., July 17, 1974 ed.

Cassady, J. T. 1951. Bluestem range in piney woods. Journal Range Mgt. 4:173-177.

Clary, W. P. and P. F. Ffolliott. 1966. Difference in herbage timber relationships between thinned and unthinned ponderosa pine stands. USDA Forest Service Res. Note RM74. Rocky Mtn. Forest and Range Experiment Sta., Ft. Collins, Colo., 4 pp.

Cochrane, G. R. and J. S. Rowe. 1969. Fire in the tundra at Rankin Inlet N.W.T. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 9:61-74.

Cole, D. W., S. P. Gessel, and S. F. Dice. 1967. Distribution and cycling of nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and calcium in a second-growth Douglas-fir ecosystem, Symposium Prim. Productivity and Mineral Cycling in Natural Ecosystems, Ecol. Soc. Amer. AAAS Annual Meeting, New York.

Cooper, R. W. 1972. The impact of forest fires upon air quality. Statement to quarterly meeting of Coastal Plains Regional Commission, Macon, Ga., 7 pp.

Dasmann, W., R. Hubbard, W. Macgregor, and A. E. Smith. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 7:179-193, 1967.

Daubenmire, R. F. 1959. Plants and Environment. New York: John Wiley and Sons. 422 pp.

Davis, J. R., P. F. Ffolliott, and W. P. Clary. 1968. A fire prescription for consuming ponderosa pine duff. USDA Forest Service Res. Note RM-115. Rocky Mtn. Forest and Range Expt. Sta., Ft. Collins, Colo. 4 pp.

DeLeonardis, S. 1971. Effects of fire and fire control methods in interior Alaska. In Fire in the Northern Environment symposium, C. W. Slaughter, R. J. Barney, and G. M. Hansen, Editors, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service. pp. 45-50.

Despain, D. G. 1972. Fire as an Ecological Force in Yellowstone Ecosystems. U.S. National Park Service, Yellowstone National Park. Information Paper No. 16. 3 pp.

Dodge, M. 1972. Forest Fuel accumulation--a growing problem. Science 177(4044):139-142.

Edwards, R. Y. Fire and the Decline of a Mountain Caribou Herd. Journal Wildlife Mgt., 18:521-526. 1954.

Garrison, G. A. and J. G. Smith. 1974. Habitat of grazing animals. pp. P-1-10. In Environmental Effects of Forest Residues Management in the Pacific Northwest, USDA Forest Service Genl Tech Rep PNW-24. O. P. Cramer, ed.

Gartner, F. R. and W. W. Thompson. 1972. Fire in the Black Hills forest-grass ecotone. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 12:37-68.

Grange, W. B. The Way to Game Abundance. New York: C. Scribner's Sons. 1949. 365 pp.

Gullion, G. A Case for Forest Fires. Outdoor America, The Izack Walton League of America, 39(10):12, October 1974.

Habeck, J. R. and R. W. Mutch. 1973. Fire-dependent forests in the northern Rocky Mountains, Quaternary Research 3, 408-424.

Handley, C. O. Fire and Mammals. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 9:151-159. 1969.

Harniss, R. O. and R. B. Murray. 1973. 30 years of vegetal change following burning of sagebrush-grass range. J. Range Mgt. 26:322-325.

Hartesveldt, R. J. and H. T. Harvey. 1967. The fire ecology of Sequoia regeneration. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 7:65-77

Heady, H. F. Burning and the Grasslands in California. Proc. Tall Timers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 12:97-107. 1972.

Hendricks, J. H. *Control Burning for Deer Management in Chaparral in California*. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 8:219-233. 1968.

Hoffman, J. E. 1971. Fire in park management. Proc. Symp. Fire Northern Environ. U.S. Forest Serv., Pac. Northwest Forest Range Exp. Sta. pp. 73-78.

Houston, D. B. 1973. Wildfires in northern Yellowstone National Park. Ecology. 54(5):111-117.

Humphrey, R. R. 1937. Ecology of the burroweed. Ecology. 18(1):1-9.

Humphrey, R. R: 1949. Fire as a means of controlling velvet mesquite, burroweed and cholla on southern Arizona ranges. J. Range Mgt. pp. 175-182.

Humphrey, R. R. 1958. The desert grassland--A history of vegetational change and an analysis of causes. Ariz. Agr. Expt. Sta. Bull. 299. 62 pp.

Humphrey, R. R. 1963. *The Role of Fire in the Desert and Desert Grassland Areas of Arizona*. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 2:45-61.

Jameson, D. A. 1966. Pinyon-juniper litter reduces growth of blue grama. Journal Range Mgt. 19(4):214-217.

Kallander, H. R. 1969. Burning on the Fort Apache Indian Reservation, Arizona. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 9:241-249.

Kilgore, B. M. *The Role of Fire in Managing Red Fir Forests*. Trans N.A. Wildlife and Nat. Res. Conf., Wildl. Mgt. Inst. 36:405-416. 1971.

Kilgore, B. M. 1972. Impact of prescribed burning on a *Sequoia* mixed conifer forest. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 12:345-375.

Kirsch, L. M. and A. D. Kruse. *Prairie Fires and Wildlife*, Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 12:289-303. 1972.

Kittredge, J. 1938. Comparative infiltration in the forest and open. Journal Forestry. 36:1156-1157.

Klebenow, D. A. *The Habitat Requirements of Sage Grouse and the Role of Fire in Management*. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 12:035-316. 1972.

Komarek, R. *Fire and the Changing Wildlife Habitat*. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 2:35-43. 1963.

Komarek, E. V. Fire and Animal Behavior. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee. 9:161-207. 1969.

Komarek, E. V. Effects of Fire on Wildlife and Range Habitats. USDA Forest Service. Prescribed Burning Symposium Proc. SE For. te Rge. Exp. Sta., Asheville. 160 pp. 1971.

Kopperdahl, Frederic R., James W. Burns, and Gary E. Smith. 1971. Water Quality of Some Logged and Unlogged California Streams, Calif. Dept. of Fish and Game Inland Fisheries. Administrative Report No. 71-12.

Lawrence, G. E. Ecology of Vertebrate Animals in Relation to Chaparral Fire in the Sierra Nevada Foothills. Ecology. 47:278-291. 1966.

Leege, T. A. Burning Seral Brush Ranges for Big Game in Northern Idaho. Trans. N.A. Wildlife and Nat. Res. Conf., Wildlife Mgt. Inst. 34:429-438. 1969.

Leopold, Aldo. Game Management. New York: C. Scribner & Sons, 1933. 481 pp.

Lewis, H. T. 1973. Patterns of Indian burning in California: Ecology and Ethnohistory. Ballena Press Anthropology Papers 1, Ballena Press, Ramona, Calif. 100 pp.

Loope, L. L. and G. E. Gruell. 1973. The ecological role of fire in the Jackson Hole area, northwestern Wyoming. Quaternary Research 3, 425-443.

Lotspeich, Fred B., E. W. Mueller, and P. T. Frey. 1970. Effects of large scale forest fires on water quality in interior Alaska. Fed. Water Pollution Control Admin. Alaska Water Lab. 115 pp.

Lotspeich, F. B. and E. W. Mueller. 1971. Effects of fire in the taiga on the environment. In Fire in the Northern Environment symposium, C. W. Slaughter, R. J. Barney, and G. M. Hansen, Editors, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, pp. 45-50.

Loucks, O. L. 1970. Evolution of diversity, efficiency, and community stability. American Zoologist 10, 17-25.

Lutz, H. J. Ecological Effects of Forest Fires in the Interior of Alaska. USDA Tach. Bull. 1133. 1956. 121 pp.

Lyon, L. J. Problems of Habitat Management for Deer and Elk in the Northern Forests. Res. Paper INT-24, Intermt. For. and Rge. Exp. Sta., USDA, Forest S. 1966. 15 pp.

Lyon, L. J. Wildlife Habitat Research and Fire in the Northern Rockies. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 9:213-227. 1969.

McCulloch, C. Y. Some Effects of Wildfire on Deer Habitat in Pinyon-Juniper Woodland. J. Wildl. Mgt., 33:778-784. 1969.

Martin, Robert E. and Arthur P. Brackebush. 1974. Fire Hazard and Conflagration Prevention. In: Environmental Effects of Forest Residues Management in the Pacific Northwest, a State-of-Knowledge Compendium. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PNW-24. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Portland, Oregon.

Marshall, J. T., Jr. 1963. Fire and birds in the mountains of southern Arizona. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 2:135-141.

Meskimen, G. 1971. Managing forest landscapes: Is prescribed burning in the picture? Proc. Prescribed Burning Symp., pp. 54-58.

Moir, William H. 1966. Influence of ponderosa pine on herbaceous vegetation. Ecology. 47(6):1045-1048.

Moore, D. G. and L. A. Norris. 1974. Soil processes and Introduced Chemicals. In Environmental Effects of Forest Residues Management in the Pacific Northwest. A State of Knowledge Compendium. Ed. by O. P. Cramer. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station. Portland, Oregon.

Mutch, R. W. 1970. Wildland fires and ecosystems--a hypothesis. Ecology. 51(6):1046-1051.

Mutch, R. W. 1974. "I thought forest fires were black!" Western Wildlands. 1(3):16-22.

Norum, R. A. N. Stark, and R. W. Steele. 1974. New fire research frontiers in Montana forests. Western Wildlands. 1(3):34-38.

Oberle, M. Forest Fires: Suppression Policy Has Its Ecological Drawbacks. Sci. 165 (3893):568-571. 8 August 1969.

Owensby, C. E. and J. B. Wyrill, III. 1973. Effects of Range Burning on Kansas Flint Hills Soil. Journal of Range Management. 26(3):185-188.

Parmeter, J. R. and B. Uhrenholdt. 1975. Some effects of pine needle or grass smoke on fungi. Phytopathology (in press).

Philpot, Charles W. 1974. The changing role of fire on chaparral lands. In Symposium on Living with the Chaparral, Sierra Club, California Division of Forestry, and USDA Forest Service, Murray Rosenthal, Editor. 225 pp.

Redfield, J. A., F. C. Zwickel, J. F. Bendell. Effects of Fire on Numbers of Blue Grouse. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee. 10:63-83. 1970.

Roe, A. L., W. R. Beaufait, L. J. Lyon, and J. L. Oltman. 1971. Fire and forestry--a task force report. Journal of Forestry. 68(8):464-470.

Rothacher, J. and W. Lopinshinsky. 1974. Soil Stability and Water Yield and Quality. In Environmental Effects of Forest Residues Management in the Pacific Northwest. A State of Knowledge Compendium. Ed. by O. P. Cramer. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station. Portland, Oregon.

Rower, J. S. and G. W. Scotter. 1973. Fire in the boreal forest. Quaternary Research 3:444-464.

Rundel, P. 1971. Community structure and stability in the giant sequoia groves of the Sierra Nevada, California American Midland Naturalist. 85(2):478-492.

Sampson, A. W. 1944. Plant Succession on Burned Chaparral Lands in Northern California. University of California, Agricultural Experiment Station, Bulletin 685. 144 pp.

Scotter, G. W. Effects of Forest Fires on the Winter Range of Barren-Ground Caribou in Northern Saskatchewan. Canad. Wildlife Serv. Series 1, No. 18. Wildlife Mgt. Bull., Nat. Parks Br., Dept. N. Affairs and Nat. Res. 1964.

Scotter, G. W. Wildfires in Relation to the Habitat of Barren-Ground Caribou in the Taiga of Northern Canada. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 10:85-105. 1970.

Scotter, G. W. 1971. Fire, vegetation, soil, and barren-ground caribou relations in northern Canada. pp. 209-230. In C. W. Slaughter, R. J. Barney, and G. M. Hansen (eds) Proceedings, Fire in the northern environment--a symposium. USDA Forest Serv., Pac. Northwest Forest and Range Exp. Sta., Portland, Oregon.

Seawall, W. J. 1967. Limnological Effects of Yellow Pine Watershed Litter. M.S. thesis, Univ. of Arizona, Tucson, Ariz.

Scoog, R. O. Ecology of the Caribou in Alaska. PhD thesis, University of California, Berkeley, California. 699 pp. 1968.

Soutiere, E. C. and E. G. Bolen. Role of Fire in Mourning Dove Nesting Ecology. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 12:277-288. 1972.

Spencer, D. L. and J. B. Hakala. Moose and Fire on the Kenai. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Cong., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 3:11-33. 1964.

Stanton, F. W. 1975. Fire impacts on wildlife and habitat. USDI Bur. Land Mgt. Denver. 48 pp.

Stoddard, H. L. The Bobwhite Quail, Its Habits, Preservation and Increase. New York: C. Scribner and Sons, 1931. 559 pp.

Striffler, W. D. and E. W. Mogren. 1971. Erosion, soil properties, and revegetation following a severe burn in the Colorado Rockies. pp. 25-36. In Fire in the northern environment. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Expt. Sta., Portland, Oregon. 275 pp.

Sweeney, J. R. 1967. Ecology of some "fire type" vegetation in northern California. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 7:111-125.

Taylor, D. L. 1973. Some ecological implications of forest fire control in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming. Ecology. 54(6):1394-1396.

Towell, W. E. 1969. Disaster fires--why? Amer. Forests 75(6):12-15, 40.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1973. Processes, Procedures, and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting from Silvicultural Activities. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 91 pp., illus.

U.S. Forest Service. 1974a. Environmental Impact Statement Forest reestablishment on National Forests in California. USDA, Forest Service, Calif. Region, 222 pp.

Vankat, J. L. 1970. Vegetation change in Sequoia National Park, Calif. PhD thesis, Univ. Calif., Davis. 197 pp.

van Wagtendock, J. W. 1972. Fire and fuel relationships in mixed conifer ecosystems of Yosemite National Park. Unpublished PhD thesis, Univ. of Calif. School of Forestry and Conservation. 163 pp.

Viereck, L. A. Wildfire in the Taiga of Alaska. J. OF Quaternary Res. 3(3):465-495. 1973.

Vogl, R. G. Controlled Burning for Wildlife in Wisconsin. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee. 6:47-96. 1967.

Ward, P. Fire in Relation to Waterfowl Habitat of the Delta Marshes. Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf., Tall Timbers Res. Sta., Tallahassee, Florida. 8:255-267. 1968.

Waters, T. F. 1972. The Drift of Stream Insects. Ann. Rev. 17:253-271.

Weaver, H. 1957. Effects of prescribed burning in ponderosa pine. Journal of Forestry. 55:133-138.

Wilson, C. C. and J. D. Dell. 1971. The fuels buildup in American forests: plan of action and research. Journal of Forestry 69(8):471-475.

Wright, H. A. 1969. Effect of spring burning on tobosa grass. J. Range Mgt. 22(6):425-427.

Wright, H. A. 1971. Effect of fire on North American shrubs. In Proc. of International Symposium on Useful Wildland Shrubs. Utah State Univ., Logan, Utah.

Wright, H. A. 1972a. Fire as a tool to manage tobosa grasslands Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf. 12:153-168.

Wright, H. A. 1972b. The role of range and wildlife management in food production. In Proc. for Food and Nutrition Seminars. 1972-73, Texas Tech Univ., Lubbock, Texas. Also videotaped as a 55 minute presentation in color.

Zivnuska, J. 1972. Economic tradeoffs in fire management. pp. 69-74. In Fire in the Environment Symposium Proceedings. USDA, Forest Service, Denver, Colo. 151 pp.

PART IV

MITIGATING MEASURES INCLUDED IN THE PROPOSED PROGRAM

A. Introduction

The mitigative measures individually described for each component of the environment in this section represent, collectively, the actions to be taken in mitigating the impact of the fire management program on the environment. Many practices identified as part of the fire management proposed program are in themselves mitigative in preventing or restoring any ecological imbalances or damage incurred in the course of carrying out practices which may be disruptive to the ecosystem. For example, the postsuppression rehabilitation projects are all designed to correct damage to the environment caused by fire and its suppression.

The effectiveness of all measures described in this section is dependent upon sound planning, coordination with other resource activities, professional expertise, careful on-the-ground administration and cooperation from the contractor or user.

The proposal recognizes that certain adverse impacts occur, as discussed in Part III and summarized at the end of that section.

Impacts which can be mitigated, at least in part or under certain conditions, or at certain times, are discussed in this part.

Accidental impacts caused when personnel fails to carry out a job or project according to plan are generally not considered to be impacts discussed in this part.

This presentation is organized to show impacts on the various resources but without reference to the fire management activity or practice. An impact may be common to several activities. This format minimizes duplication without losing identity of the adverse impact or effect. Reference to Part III will readily reveal the management practice causing the impact.

B. Soil

1. Impact: Lethal Heating of Organisms

- Since the nature of soil and soil organisms are so closely correlated, the mitigative measures for minimizing or eliminating the adverse impacts of fire management practices on soil apply also to soil organisms. These measures primarily shorten the already relatively short term impacts that most practices have on the population and equilibrium of soil organisms. Reduction in the fire intensity and duration at a given spot lessens the impact. Except under intense burning, such as slash piles, there is little heat penetration into the mineral soil.

2. Impacts: Accelerated Erosion

- Practices under presuppression-prevention activity are directed toward the mitigation of adverse fire effects expected if no ameliorative conditions are provided in advance. Of greatest importance is hazard reduction through slash or natural undercover removal and the construction of firebreaks. These preventive practices modify impacts on soils primarily by reducing fire intensity.

- Size of fires is kept within smaller limits. This tends to minimize surface and channel erosion per unit of area burned.

- Firelines constructed on the contour when feasible and subsequently water-barred and revegetated, where critical conditions exist are mitigative measures. Hydromulch can be applied to provide immediate protection.

- Use of equipment in constructing firebreaks, access roads, and detection sites should be so limited that minimum damage to soil results from induced erosion or soil surface exposure to rainfall and runoff. Roads and firelines or breaks can be designed in order not to become channels for soil washing nor sources of wind blown material.

- Hand clearing should be limited to as small an area as possible to accomplish the task. A mulch could be placed on the site in addition to an appropriate amount and type of fertilizer if critical soil conditions exist.

- Areas burned as a result of backfiring and burnout should be revegetated to a more suitable plant mixture the same year as the fire.

- In the process of using fire to change vegetal cover, a number of soil conserving provisions should be followed. Burn, or permit burning, when soil moisture, relative humidity, and air temperatures are favorable. The burn should be effective in removing the unwanted vegetation, but fire intensity and duration should be such that great damage is not done to the soil mantle.

- Prescribed fires have built-in precautions to prevent undue soil disturbance through careful use of equipment or by controlling the burning intensity.

- Road alignment and design and fire management facilities construction have important effects on erosion and effective control must begin the design phase, since the location of facilities determines to a large degree the amount of erosion which may occur. The selection of the corridor provides the opportunity to place facilities in favorable relationship to topography, drainage ways, soils, other natural features, and present or anticipated man-made features in order to minimize the base erosion potential. Some further mitigating measures include, (1) clearing and grubbing should be conducted so as to minimize the area of soil disturbance, (2) the total length of road cut should be minimized, but the vertical depth of each cut should be maximized, (3) areas of bare soil exposed to erosion should be shaped to minimize storm runoff, and (4) the procedures for erosion prevention in stabilization efforts should include soil sampling for fertility, erodibility, and texture; correlation of results with the general soils survey; formulating mixes for fertilizing, seeding, mulching, and slope dressing (generally topsoil) and provisions in design for any special problems.

- The construction of firebreaks, firelines, or roads on permanently frozen ground in the Taiga Forest could cause erosion and stability problems since the upper few feet of permafrost may thaw in the summer time. This active zone frequently becomes a soft, soupy quagmire. Roads laid on permafrost fail and settle when the active zone softens. Permafrost can be covered with an insulating blanket to minimize thaw or subgrades placed below the active zone to avoid movement, or the soil in the active zone can be replaced with a non-frost-susceptible material like gravel or coarse crushed rock.

- In the maintenance of firebreaks and roads, surface drainage can be retained by performing proper maintenance grading and shaping and by patching and filling holes and irregularities. The surface should be kept smooth, firm, and free from excess loose material.

- Erosion repair methods on protection breaks and roads are comparable to measures taken in preventing erosion in the construction phase, however, a few variations do exist. Straw or hay, or other suitable substances may be disc anchored to lessen the impact. Hydromulch (wood cellulose fiber pulp) should be used on high steep slopes, rock overburden areas, or areas where the wood pulp is needed to "plaster" the seed and fertilizer in place. It can be applied with a hydroseeder along with seed and fertilizer. Wood excelsior blanket is recommended on slopes steeper than 2-1/2:1 and longer than 25 feet.

- Riprap (usually field stone) is effective for erosion control in culvert scour holes, on shoreline slopes for protection from wave action, and in lining of waterways and channels. Soil compaction and surface disturbance may be minimized by operating stabilization equipment during favorable weather and soil conditions.

- Salvage logging practices should not be carried out on slopes where the potential for excessive erosion or mass wasting exists. Factors affecting slope stability which should be considered include slope gradient, thickness of the remaining soil mantle, character of the underlying bedrock, precipitation patterns, and the inherent strength of the soil. Tractor logging should be limited to slopes with gradients of less than 35 percent regardless of the potential of the soil for compaction. Tractor skidding should be limited to those seasons and sites where soil moisture is low enough to avoid rutting or gouging of the soil. Operators should not be permitted to clear a skid road for one or two trees. Since jammer yarding requires a closely spaced network of roads adverse impacts can be reduced by confining these operations to existing road systems, i.e., if new roads must be constructed alternative logging methods should be used. In some instances jammer yarding may be accomplished by building roads on the snow.

In steep topography, aerial systems should be used wherever feasible, particularly on areas of unstable soils. Landings should be located so as not to create excessive sidecast or slope stability problems. On highly productive sites, topsoil should be stripped and stockpiled.

3. Impacts: Increased Compaction and Reduced Wettability and Infiltration

- Soils which have a high potential for compaction by heavy equipment even during the dry season should be excluded from firebreak activities. Coarse textured soils should have firebreaks planned for seasons when the soil moisture is low enough to reduce soil compaction. Heavy equipment should be kept out of areas with high soil moisture to avoid creation of gouges and ruts. Heavy equipment should be used in such a manner that soil compaction and movement are minimal. Firelines can be ripped to loosen compacted soil if the line also served as a trail for vehicles. Following salvage logging, landings, temporary roads and other intensively used sites may have to be ripped to mitigate soil compaction. Finally, stockpiled topsoil can be distributed over the site followed by seeding.
- Measures to reduce fire intensity will lessen the impacts of reduced wettability and infiltration.

4. Impact: Loss of Organic Matter

- Fire prevention actions taken to reduce the hazard of severe fires, such as reduction of accumulated fuel, and construction of fire breaks, are designed to reduce the adverse impacts of fire and fire suppression. Loss of organic matter is reduced by restricting the size and severity of fires. The lower surface temperatures during subsequent fires minimizes the destruction of organic layers. Replacement of organic matter, with seeding and planting as needed, on abandoned fire-camp sites, firelines, etc., is frequently possible.

- Prescribed fire should not take place on shallow or erosive soils when conditions are such that a "hot" burn will consume all the litter layer. On critical sites, a mulch should be applied to protect the surface from erosion until vegetation is reestablished. Areas where burning would melt permafrost should be avoided.

C. Water

1. Impact: Increased Stream Temperature, Sedimentation, and Nutrients

- Reduction in size, intensity, and duration of fire resulting from presuppression-prevention activities will modify impacts on water.

- Protection and maintenance of vegetation along streambanks is a measure taken to avoid increasing water temperature and sedimentation.

- Water quality impacts can generally be lessened by presuppression-prevention efforts. With a reduction in runoff, soil erosion will normally be less with a correspondingly lower sediment contribution to streams and impoundments. The release of mineral nutrients should occur over extended periods with less chance of excessive enrichment of streams and lakes.

- The impact of prescribed fire on water quality can be minimized by reducing the temperature of the burn, and by reducing overland flow from the burned area to the stream channel. The temperature of the burn may be reduced by scattering the fuel and/or by burning under conditions which preclude high ground temperatures, such as burning immediately after a short rain shower. Overland flow from the burned area may be reduced by completely covering the control line, following burning, with the vegetative material that was removed during construction of the line, and by waterbars or check dams along the control line. Filter strips of undisturbed vegetation left along the bottom of the area burn will filter some of the suspended solids from overland flow (EPA, 1972). These filter strips also reduce the velocity of flow and cause deposition of sediment before it reaches the stream.

- The mitigative measures employed in prescribed fire, as described earlier, also apply to burning out and backfiring. In addition, the edge of a stream or lake should be used to backstop a backfire only as a last resort. If time does not permit building a fire trail for the burnout or backfire, a road or natural break in topography may serve. Either is a preferable alternative to backfiring to the edge of natural water.

2. Impact: Contamination from Retardants, Fertilizers, Pesticides, and Petrochemicals

- The potential adverse impact of petrochemicals and fertilization on the water resource may be reduced by the same precautions as with pesticides; that is, strict attention should be given to streamside buffer strips and caution in storing, loading, and applying the fertilizer and petrochemicals.

- In chemical hazard reduction practices, the proper combination of chemicals, carrier, method of application (ground or aerial), droplet size for spray applications, and width of streamside buffer strips should be carefully evaluated to minimize the probability of accidental drift onto streams, lakes, marshes, and estuaries. Air stability is essential for aerial applications and these practices should be discontinued immediately when it appears that significant lateral drift may occur.

- Methods and areas for chemical mixing, storage, loading, and cleaning of equipment should be carefully selected to minimize the chance of leakage of chemicals into streams, lakes, reservoirs, marshes, and estuaries. Empty chemical and carrier containers should be disposed of carefully. Monitoring of streams and bodies of water should be done prior to, during, and after chemical application to assure safe application.

- Generally the considerations and guidelines for pesticide application apply to fire retardants. However, the fire fighter has little control over the time or the place. The most important guideline for fire retardant use is avoidance of surface waters in the application pattern (EPA, 1973). Unless the ammonium sulfate and diammonium phosphate are accidentally applied to streams or lakes, the hazard to the water environment is rare. Normal use of these fire retardants consists of dropping them from a fixed-wing aircraft ahead of the fire, in an inverted V pattern, at or beyond the crest of a ridge. Dropped at this location, the rate of spread of the fire is slower, fire fighters are more effective, and the distance from streams is usually so far that pollution is minimal (EPA, 1973).

3. Impact: Streambed and Streambank Changes

- The adverse effects of firebreaks and firelines on streambed and streambank may be reduced by (1) keeping machinery out of stream channels, both perennial and those that carry water during seasons of high runoff; (2) avoiding areas where slope instability will be increased by the removal of shrubs, tree stumps, and roots; (3) avoiding the disruption of the normal distribution of water downslope; and (4) by constructing firelines along contours. Areas of thin soils which can be easily stripped from underlying bedrock should be avoided.

- The adverse effects of salvage logging may be mitigated by providing streamside undisturbed strips of adeauate width and density to reduce or eliminate sediment laden overland flow from reaching stream channels. All perennial streams and those streams which carry water during peak runoff seasons should have buffer strips. The width of the buffer strip necessary to meet these objectives should consider the slope of the ground into the stream channel; topographic shading of any remaining unburned vegetation;

stream characteristics (width, depth, and flow velocity); and the erodibility of the soil.

- Salvage logging slash, cull trees, stumps, and other logging debris should be properly disposed. Observations in western Oregon and Alaska have shown that logging slash left in steep ephemeral stream channels contributes to the potential for destructive debris avalanches down these channels when soils become saturated during the winter season (Bishop and Stevens, 1964). It is extremely important that debris be removed from these channels concurrent with salvage logging on the area. Channel clearance should not be deferred until just before the salvage sale contract is terminated.

- Falling timber upslope or along the contour of steep slopes will prevent felled trees from shooting downhill and into, or through, streamside buffer strips. Trees cut selectively adjacent to natural waters should be felled directionally away from the water. Logging slash and debris which enters stream channels or lakes unavoidably during falling operations should be promptly removed.

- A good logging plan is an effective means of mitigating damage to natural waters. Written into the salvage sale contract, the logging plan should stipulate how falling and bucking shall be done and also the logging method to be followed.

- Tractor skidding should never be permitted down or across any stream channel, perennial or ephemeral. Tractor skidding should be limited to those seasons and sites where soil moisture is low enough to avoid rutting.

- Adverse impacts of road construction may be mitigated by designing the roads to minimum dimensions for the proposed use, consistent with traffic safety. If it is necessary to traverse short sections of unstable terrain, remedial measures (riprap, extra drainage, etc.) should be included in the road design. Care should be exercised to protect stream channels and banks by streamside buffer strips wherever possible. In the case of roads which approach stream crossings in narrow V-shaped canyons, the right-of-way clearing width may need reduction below the road to provide a vegetative strip for stream protection. The stream crossing itself should be as narrow as possible, consistent with traffic safety. The stream channel should never be used as a disposal site for excavated material from other portions of the road; often stream crossings become unacceptably wide because of this practice.

- Endhaul the excavated material if this will avoid long sidecast fills in steep terrain. Disposal sites for endhauled material should be selected with care to avoid overloading slopes and causing mass failures. Fills should be compacted if this practice will contribute to slope stability and prevent road failures.

- Install culverts at frequent intervals to assure that the road subgrade will remain dry and stable. Drainage from culverts should never be allowed to fall on unprotected fills. Aprons should be installed on fills under culvert outfalls. Downspouts, or other suitable conductors should be used to carry culvert drainage and to dissipate the kinetic energy of this water before this is allowed to run onto natural slopes.

- Construct and install bridges and culverts so that the streamflow is optimum for completing the required work with minimum degradation of streambanks and channels. Activities should be planned so that heavy equipment spends the minimum amount of time in the stream channel. All activities necessary for construction and installation should be planned and executed so as to result in the minimum amount of channel disruption and water quality degradation.

4. Impact: Increased Runoff and Peak Flow of Streams

- Presuppression activities to prevent fire impacts by reducing the hazards will maintain conditions for normal water runoff, and peak flow will be moderated.

- Erosion control measures should be applied where necessary to prevent surface runoff from carrying sediment and debris into natural waters. Waterbars and check dams should be installed in firelines to divert surface runoff and to reduce its velocity.

- The burned area and suppression damage should be revegetated with suitable plant species as soon as possible after the fire is out.

5. Impact: Changes in Salinity

- Soluble salt content and turbidity are often directly associated with sediment load, and respond in proportion. All measures taken to reduce soil erosion, stream sedimentation, and contamination from chemicals potentially lessen the impact on water of changing salinity.

D. Air

1. Impact: Reduced Quality Through Increase of Pollutants

- Troublesome smoke from prescribed fire practices can be mitigated by integrating burning schedules with weather reports so as to produce as fast and hot combustion as practicable (Hall, 1972). More intensive utilization of felled timber holds promise for future abatement of the smoke problem.

- The adverse impacts of prescribed fire and plant removal (hazard reduction) upon local climatic factors are decreasing in magnitude as more knowledge is made available by research and is applied to field operations.

- In situations where prescribed fire or plant removal are essential, their adverse impacts on microclimates may be non-existent or insignificant. If considerable impacts are anticipated, impacts may be reduced by keeping the areas to be treated small. If a light burn will achieve silvicultural objectives, its application can be timed for a period when burning conditions will favor an easily-controlled fire of low intensity. Fire equipment and manpower can be put on standby status for emergency use if burning conditions should change or if the fire escapes. It will often be necessary to build a fire trail around the project area before treatment begins.

- The adverse impacts of burning out or backfiring on microclimates can be mitigated by the same measures as those used for area burning by: keeping the burning area as small as feasible, consistent with the objective of controlling the wildfire; burn if possible, when burning conditions will favor easy control; safeguard the burn by burning from a road, fire trail, or natural barrier; maintaining adequate manpower and equipment on standby; and revegetating the burned area with suitable species as soon as possible.

- The effect of firebreak or firelines clearing upon the local climate can be reduced by keeping the width of clearing as narrow as possible, consistent with safety and fire management objectives. No effective measures are presently available to reduce the short term degradation of air quality by the emission of internal combustion engines used during fire management activities. Dust arising from vehicles and helicopters may be reduced to some extent by watering or using portable heliports. On dirt or gravel surfaced roads, fire camps, and heliports, periodic application of water effectively reduces the dust pollution.

- The amount and kinds of emissions from burning wildland fuels are mitigated by the proposed fire management program. The emission characteristics of fire management activities have been covered in Section III. Where these emissions are smoke from prescribed fire or from hazard reduction burning, impacts of such smoke on air quality are mitigated by a management procedure, i.e., prescribed fire and smoke management plans.

E. Vegetation

1. Impact: Removal or Damage to Vegetation

- Destruction of vegetation can be partially mitigated. At least, it usually can be replaced over a period of time. Short term adverse impacts include removal of vegetation during the construction of fire camps, heliports, etc.; removal of trees to minimize aerial fuels; and loss of vegetation due to burning out or backfiring. Fire prevention (hazard reduction) and post-fire activities such as replacing topsoil and organic matter, and seeding, offset the adverse impacts of fire suppression.

- Mitigation of adverse short term impacts as a result of fire management practices that destroy existing vegetation may be achieved by confining practices to small areas of land, e.g., firebreak construction in strips or patches.

- In order to minimize the short term impact of firelines, backfiring, and burning out, as little vegetation as possible should be destroyed, without jeopardizing the objectives of the actions. When feasible, firelines should be constructed along contour lines to minimize the indirect impact of erosion of vegetal life and growth. Disturbed areas should be artifically revegetated when natural regeneration cannot be reasonably expected in a short period of time. Most of the practices associated with fire management are in themselves mitigative since they are primarily aimed at maintaining the health and vigor of the vegetal component of the forest.

- Mitigation of adverse impacts resulting from salvage logging is primarily a matter of insuring that the cutting practice used is one that will result in environmental conditions favorable to tree regeneration on the specific site in question.

- Adverse impacts of salvage logging on aquatic plants can also be mitigated by use of a buffer strip between the cutting area and stream. Removal of trees, slash, or large debris that reach the stream, or its vicinity, during the logging operation is also an effective mitigating measure.

- In general, adverse impacts caused by firebreaks, protection facility and road construction can be mitigated by locating such practices so as to avoid sidecasting.

- Adverse impacts of firebreaks, prescribed fire, and facility and road construction can be mitigated by locating such practices or breaks so as to avoid sidecasting.

- Adverse impacts of firebreaks, prescribed fire, and facility and road construction on aquatic plants can also be mitigated by leaving a buffer strip of heavy or dense vegetation along streams. Other effective measures include: location of road or burn boundary away from the aquatic habitat or areas of unstable soils, engineering roads to prevent sidecasting, water barring unsurfaced (dirt) roads or firebreaks, and stabilizing roadside cuts and fills and culvert installation points by seeding herbaceous vegetation.

- Adverse impacts from road or firebreak maintenance actions can be mitigated by hauling soil and debris from landslides to suitable disposal sites, and leaving an effective buffer strip between roadside spraying areas and the aquatic environment.

2. Impact: Reduced Site Productivity Due to Mechanical Equipment Activity

- Limit when and where heavy equipment will be used in order not to materially degrade the soil-vegetation complex. For example, limit use of tractors where potential exists to damage permafrost layer in the tundra, taiga, or in like problem areas.

- Impacts due to mechanical equipment activity are also discussed under soil erosion and compaction.

- Specific practices for mitigating adverse impacts on soil are also applicable to vegetation.

- Preplan alternative suppression techniques which have minimal veg-soil disturbance characteristics (i.e., aerial attack versus heavy equipment).

3. Impact: Larger, More Intense Fires Due to Fuel Accumulation

- The presuppression-prevention practices are specifically designed to remove hazardous fuel accumulations through mechanical or chemical practices or through prescribed fire. Areas under strict protection in which no fire can be tolerated will eventually have large fuel buildups. The areas of high fuel accumulation will sustain larger, more intense fires if presuppression-prevention and prescribed fire practices are not used.

F. Wildlife

1. Impacts: Loss of Life, and Death or Injury to Aquatic Life Due to Retardant Toxicity

Direct loss of life may occur in hazard reduction, facility construction, fireline construction, backfires, and under prescribed burning. Adult individuals of most species can avoid destruction except under extreme situations (Leopold, 1933). Mitigating measures include avoiding use of prescribed fire during the peak nesting period, inspecting construction areas before commencing work in order to avoid needless destruction, and avoiding sites where young animals are most likely to be concentrated. Where applicable, specific stipulations can become part of the job plan. In all cases except for rare species or those which are relatively immobile and of restricted habitats, these direct losses are temporary and should soon be replaced naturally. Losses caused by activity in suppression of a wildfire ordinarily would be minor compared to losses in the fire itself.

Direct loss of fish to fire retardants (Borovicka and Blahm, 1974), pesticides, and other chemicals can be avoided by keeping the materials out of streams and other waters. Avoid application or accidental discharge into water by establishing precautionary measures. If fish populations are eliminated, replace them with appropriate hatchery stocks.

2. Impact: Destruction or Depreciation of Habitat

Loss of habitat by removal of vegetation usually is temporary and localized in its effect, except in special cases (e.g., rare or endangered species). These losses may occur by burning to reduce the fuel hazard, by construction of firelines and protection facilities or by setting backfires or prescribed fires. If burning is conducted over extensive areas, mitigation measures should include leaving strips and islands of unburned vegetation for cover and, if needed, by some selected seeding or planting to replace losses. Special consideration should be given to habitat of rare or endangered species. Salvage logging with its road network and snag removal causes some long term habitat loss. Most of the roads, landings, etc., can be closed and seeded. Some snags should be left standing where safety regulations permit.

Mitigation of adverse impacts from hazard reduction snag felling can be achieved by reserving high quality snags (with regard to wildlife use) in selected locations. Eagle and osprey nest tree preservation sites should also include adjacent dead trees and snags used for perching on by both young and adults. Preservation of snags, flattops, spike tops and other dead and dying trees by wildlife considered endangered should receive highest consideration. If important snags or dead trees cannot be saved, the girdling of some live trees on the site for future wildlife use can be used as a mitigating measure.

Another type of habitat loss is the quality change occurring in vegetation over a long period due to natural plant succession in the absence of fire. Vegetation has developed along with naturally occurring wildfires resulting in a pattern of diverse habitats to which wildlife has become adapted. Suppression of natural fires tends to result in extensive homogenous stands of vegetation. Prescribed burning mitigates this trend; however, its use is limited to small areas. It can be applied selectively to small areas of high value. Over much of the land this impact will be unmitigated.

Loss of aquatic habitat can occur when chemical pollutants or excessive amounts of debris (such as from salvage logging) enter the water. Mitigate these impacts as discussed under Water. Loss of streambank vegetation usually can be avoided; if not, it can be replaced by protection and/or seeding and planting practices. If anadromous fish use a stream, it must be kept clear of blockage from fallen trees and damaged culverts.

Other potential measures to mitigate adverse impacts on aquatic wildlife include: stabilization of all disturbed areas with fast growing herbaceous plant species of good soil holding characteristics; removal of all temporary structures from streams; careful removal of fills at stream crossing rather than allow high water to carry soil away; and use of sediment and debris traps.

3. Impact: Increased Human Activity

Human disturbance due to presuppression-prevention, suppression, prescribed fire, and postsuppression fire activities of various work crews, aircraft, and equipment is largely temporary and local in its effect. The impacts can be mitigated by applying reasonable control to minimize the disturbance. One long term adverse impact is the provision of access into new country by construction of permanent roads. The increased human presence into areas seldom heretofore visited affects the wildlife through harassment, noise, hunting, etc., and may cause populations to move to less favorable habitat.

G. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses and Burros

1. Impact: Loss of Forage

The primary adverse effect of fire management on livestock or wild horses and burros results from the temporary loss of grazing forage traditionally utilized by the animals and disturbance of the animals caused by fire management activities. The loss of grazing areas can have at least two adverse effects, economic loss to ranchers who must make untimely livestock sales or purchase replacement forage and/or overstocking of alternate grazing areas by the addition of the displaced livestock. Deferment of grazing to allow rehabilitation of a wildfire will likely cause serious disruption of domestic animals because of the difficulty of finding on short notice, alternate grazing areas that are not already utilized to capacity.

If possible, move displaced livestock to alternate public grazing areas for the period of time needed to allow rehabilitation of the burn. If alternate public grazing areas cannot be provided without overstocking the range, require the affected livestock operation to reduce numbers or seasons of use to the extent necessary to prevent overgrazing.

Wild horses and burros, unless restricted by barriers, will forage on adjacent ranges. If, as a result, overgrazing appears likely, adjustments in numbers or a supplemental feeding program would be possible mitigating measures. The construction of fences during postsuppression can disrupt the natural movements of wild horses and burros and cause injury or death if, for example, a wild herd was prevented from drifting from snow country. Plan protective fences around burned areas so vital animal movement patterns are not disrupted. Consider the desirability of removing the fences after rehabilitation is completed.

2. Impact: Increased Human Activity

Domestic livestock, wild horses and wild burros will be disturbed by human activity primarily during suppression and postsuppression periods. Potentially more serious is the problem caused by improved access into formerly remote wild horse habitat areas. These two impacts can be mitigated by controlling human activity and by closure of the improved access through legal or physical closure of the area to motorized vehicles.

3. Impact: Damage to Range Facilities

During large suppression actions, equipment will damage range improvements, especially roads and fences. Also reservoirs, springs, wells, and other water facilities may be damaged. These impacts can be mitigated by repairing the range facilities in the postsuppression activity.

H. Human Use and Interest Values

1. Impact: Hazard to Personal Health and Welfare

- Accidents and injuries involving fire management activities can be reduced by ensuring that employees receive adequate safety training, that they are thoroughly trained in their jobs, that they wear required safety equipment, and that they use the proper equipment, maintained in a good state of repair.

- If toxic chemicals are used, for example in postsuppresion rodent control on seedings or plantings, health hazards can be avoided by using approved materials at minimum rates, safety training of the applicators, and by following all specifications and guidelines for the application of the pesticide.

- Ill effects on inhabitants caused by smoke from hazard reduction and prescribed fire can be mitigated by burning on days when atmospheric conditions favor rapid rise and dispersal of smoke. All such burning should be done in accordance with a smoke management plan.

2. Impact: Chemical Contamination of Water Supply

- Avoid contamination of water by keeping use of chemical away from streams. Refer to discussion on chemical contamination under impacts on water.

3. Impact: Impaired Visibility Due to Dust and Smoke

- Atmospheric dust arising from fire management activities can be reduced by watering of roads and heliports.

- Mitigation of dust and smoke emission impacts is discussed under the heading Air.

4. Impact: Disturbance of Aesthetic Values

- Visual impacts may be reduced by several measures. The appearance of smoke in the atmosphere from prescribed fire may be minimized by smoke management technology. This involves the coordinated effort of meteorologists and public and private agencies to integrate burning schedules with weather reports so as to produce rapid fuel combustion and quick dispersal of smoke into the upper atmosphere. Alternative hazard reduction measures which create no smoke may be feasible; e.g., chipping or burying of slash.

- The adverse psychological effects created by highly visible fire management activities can be greatly reduced by skillful, perceptive use of landscape management techniques. On gentle terrain, a buffer strip of uncut trees and undisturbed ground cover may be reserved to screen aesthetically unpleasant activity in foreground distance and middle ground distance zones from the view of sightseers. Where firebreaks or firelines will be visible in middle ground distance and background distance zones, negative psychological effects can be mitigated by avoiding straight cutting edges and regular shapes, by locating lines along contours so as to conform with topography, by blending firebreaks or lines into natural vegetative features, by keeping middle ground lines narrow, etc. Landscape management can also do much to reduce the unsightliness of scars on the landscape and unnatural openings created by fire suppression.

- Cleanup of unsightly solid waste resulting from fire management operations, primarily from suppression practice, is required.

- Where scenic values are high, prescribed fire should be used at the beginning of the rainy season or just before the growth period begins, to minimize the length of time blackened ground will remain.

5. Impact: Loss or Damage to Geological, Archeological, and Historical Features

- Identification and designation of unique geologic formations in land use plans is the foremost mitigative measure available to preserve their human interest values. Fire management activities should be planned and executed to prevent damage to such formations. Firelines, firebreaks, and roads should be kept away from such formations.

- No fire management activities that would disturb or otherwise affect archeological sites should be allowed in their known vicinity. Firelines, firebreaks, and roads should be kept away from undisturbed sites. New finds should be reported to the appropriate Federal and state agency having responsibility for investigating and evaluating archeological sites. Contractors and their employees should be made aware of known sites in their area of operation. Fire suppression may be deemed necessary if the site is combustible and threatened, such as a ghost town.

- Fire management activities in the vicinity of historical sites should be planned and conducted to avoid both physical and visual damage. Firebreaks, firelines, and roads should detour around or away from them. Contractors and their employees should be instructed to avoid damaging historic sites. Fire suppression may be deemed necessary if the historical site is combustible and threatened.

- Where there is significant potential for the existence of archeological, historical, and cultural sites, a field survey should be completed by a professional archeologist who can then evaluate the impacts of potential fire management practices.

- Litter and other materials, remaining after fire activities, that detract from the natural settings of geological, archeological, historical or cultural areas should be removed as soon as possible.

- All prescribed fires should be monitored and suppressed if impacts on human interest values will be adverse, such as when the fire threatens newly discovered cultural values within the prescribed fire area.

6. Impact: Damage to Private Property

- During the suppression action on a wildfire some damage to private property may occur due to the nature of the emergency action and time restrictions. This damage usually is minor such as broken cattle guards, broken fences, firelines, abnormal wear and tear on roads, and water supply facility damage or depletion. This damage can be mitigated through the presuppression and postsuppression activities. Through the identification of private property in presuppression-practice planning, many problem areas can be avoided. Any damage to private property occurring during the suppression action can be mitigated during postsuppression by rehabilitation of damage.

- Through prescribed burning and hazard reduction in adjacent areas, the danger of a raging fire later threatening human life and destroying or damaging private property, especially near urban areas and heavily used areas, can be minimized.

7. Impact: Disrupt Local Life Styles

- During presuppression-prevention, postsuppression, and prescribed fire activities, the impact to local life styles will be minor. These activities are pre-planned and concern only small quantities of people and equipment. These types of activities effect local life styles and can be mitigated through planning and an information and education program.

- During suppression activities, the impact to local life styles will be moderate to severe, depending upon the magnitude of the suppression action, its proximity to a community, and the size and type of community. This can be partially mitigated by pre-attack planning, avoidance of communities if possible, and coordination with local government or officials.

- Mitigation of impacts on cultural, ethnic, and religious groups can best be accomplished through understanding and adherence to civil rights laws and regulations pertaining to employees of the Federal government or its contractors. Cultural groups should be encouraged to participate in the development of land use plans. Avenues of communication should be cultivated and used.

8. Impact: Human Presence

- The noise accompanying human activity in any phase of fire management is temporary, but can be only partially mitigated. Where necessary, as in the vicinity of campgrounds, presuppression and postsuppression activities can be timed to avoid the height of the recreation season. Mufflers are required on all types of fire equipment which aids in noise abatement. The level of noise produced by fire management activities is not generally injurious to the personal health, and may be placed in the category of a nuisance.

- Solid waste could be a major pollutant resulting from fire management activity. Wastes arise from discarded petroleum containers, food wrappers, kitchen and sanitary wastes, etc. The major control mechanism for these pollutants is to provide adequate disposal facilities and require their use. Collected solid wastes can be removed and disposed of at authorized disposal areas; useful material salvaged and recycled.

- Prescribed burns should be timed for the least possible interference with seasons of heavy recreation activity.

9. Impact: Utilization of Scarce Petroleum Products

- The fire management program will utilize petroleum products. All types of products will be consumed; e.g., gasoline for saws, pumps, aircraft, and vehicles, jet fuel for aircraft, greases and oils for all types of equipment, diesel fuel for heavy equipment, and kerosene for firing devices. This impact can be partially mitigated by timely planning and effective utilization of all types of fire management equipment, but moreover by the implementation of fire management practices that are less dependent on such products.

10. Impact: Destruction or Damage to Natural Areas of Scientific, Educational, or Wilderness Value

- A large scale human infringement related to fire activities within wilderness and natural areas should be minimized by carefully preplanning practices and actions that will be taken.

- These types of areas are identified during presuppression-pre-attack planning, and are mitigated by management's and public input into this planning.

11. Impact: Disruption of Land and Resource Uses

- During hazard reduction, suppression, and prescribed fire, land is removed from resource production through the construction of roads and facilities, firebreaks, and firelines. The impacts of firelines and some types of firebreaks can be mitigated and returned to traditional resource use through postsuppression practices. The land utilized for permanent protection roads, facilities, and firebreaks cannot generally be returned to the former use and, therefore, this impact cannot be mitigated.

- Recreation land use can be disrupted by smoke from hazard reduction and prescribed fire. This can be mitigated by burning during non-peak recreation activity and by following a smoke management plan.

- Recreation land use can be temporarily affected by a prevention practice called "area closure" during periods of high fire danger. This practice assists in reducing the probability of man-caused fires. This practice is only used as a last resort and the impact on direct human uses such as recreation will occur without mitigation. A strong public information program can explain the problems and reasons for closures, but not eliminate the impact.

- Noise from all fire management activities can cause temporary disruption in wildlife, recreation, livestock, wild horse, and wild burro traditional land uses. This impact can be partially mitigated through avoidance of key areas. Since presuppression-prevention, postsuppression, and prescribed fire activities are preplanned and the noise levels are low, the associated noise impact will be minor.

I. References

Environmental Protection Agency, 1973, Processes, Procedures, and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting From Silvicultural Activities, EPA 430/9-73-010. Office of Air and Water Programs, Wash. D.C.

Environmental Protection Agency, Guidelines for Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Implementation, EPA Publication R2-72-015, August 1972, p. 218.

Bishop, D. M. and M. E. Stevens, Landslides on Logged Areas in Southeast Alaska, U.S. Forest Service Research Paper NOR-1, Portland, Oregon, 1964, 18 pp.

Hall, J. Alfred, Forest Fuels, Prescribed Fire, and Air Quality, U. S. Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Portland, Oregon, 1972, p. 36.

Borovicka, Robert L. and Theodore H. Blahm, 1974. Use of Chemical Fire Retardants Near Aquatic Habitat. Paper presented at the 104th annual meeting of the American Fisheries Society. Sept. 10, 1974, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Leopold, Aldo, 1933. Game Management, C. Scribner & Sons, New York, 481 pp.

PART V

ADVERSE EFFECTS WHICH CANNOT BE AVOIDED

This part discusses the adverse effects and impacts which cannot be eliminated. It includes a discussion of the relative value placed on the impacts and who or what is affected.

A. Soil

- Soil compaction, reduced wettability, and loss of water infiltration that cannot be fully mitigated resulting from use of heavy equipment or from small areas of intense fire management activities. These effects are generally short term.

- Soil disturbance and accelerated erosion from firebreaks, firelines, road facility and construction cannot be fully mitigated even when proper, timely rehabilitation practices are performed. Such erosion resulting in short term site deterioration and lessened water quality endures until mitigating actions are fully effective.

- Intense burning, such as slash piles, will result in short term minor decrease in soil organisms.

- Organic matter loss will result if fire intensity is severe or abnormal rains occur prior to completion of rehabilitation practices.

In general, the amount of unavoidable damage is dependent upon soil types, amount of soil disturbed, burn intensities, topography, subsequent rainfall intensities, etc.

B. Water

- Streambed and bank changes resulting from fire management actions can be largely mitigated if rehabilitation is started immediately and heavy rains do not soon occur. While heavy channel erosion may be avoided, the sedimentation already existing will persist.

- Short term contamination from changes in salinity, sedimentation, nutrients, and temperature increases cannot be avoided where intense controlled fires have burned along streams. Any fire activity using the streams for control purposes or not leaving adequate filtering vegetation will result in short term contamination.

- Short term contamination from retardants, fertilizers, pesticides, and petrochemicals will occur due to accidents, wind shifts, unplanned delays in rehabilitation, and heavy rains.

C. Air

- Short term air pollution from backfires and burnouts performed during suppression is unavoidable.

- Pollution also exists in hazard reduction and prescribed fire actions but adverse effects are minimized through smoke management practices.

- Dust and engine emissions from aircraft equipment operations are largely unavoidable insignificant short term polluting impacts.

D. Vegetation

- Increasing fuel accumulations due to a successful fire protection program. Mitigated only in part through hazard reduction and prescribed fire practices, the great bulk of NRL is subject to this major adverse impact of any suppression program.

- Diversity of life form and of plant species will worsen the longer the suppression program continues. Loss of fire dependent species and fewer understory plants is a direct and long term effect of a suppression program. Mitigated in specific areas for specific species by fire management practices, most lands will suffer and people will accept this attrition as a compromise to loss of property and investments through wildfire. A long term adverse impact.

- Removal or damage to vegetation during course of fire activities. Largely unavoidable but an acceptable compromise to the larger adverse impacts should fire threaten man's high values or the management objective sought in prescribed burning remain unachieved.

- Poorer seedbed conditions in protection areas resulting from fire exclusion. Mineral soil is not exposed because of accumulating organic litter which also locks up nutrients, permitting very slow release to plants. This can lead to rapid deterioration of a vegetal type over the long term, especially in fire dependent types which need periodic recycling of nutrients in order to maintain long term productivity.

E. Wildlife (Including Aquatic), Livestock, Wild Horses and Burros

- Displacement of animals from normal habitat usually results from postfire rehabilitation practices, e.g., fencing of rehabilitated areas. This is a short term adverse impact and unavoidable if area is to be restored to full use--a long term benefit.

- Short term loss of existing forage is an unavoidable impact of fire management activities.

- Decreasing quality and variety of fire dependent habitat is a long term impact of fire exclusion.

- Loss or injury of animals is ordinarily not a serious factor in fire management. Such losses cannot be fully mitigated. There are rare cases where destruction of a limited specialized habitat may occur (e.g. snag falling) which could seriously deplete endangered species.

- Noise of aircraft and equipment operation and human presence is an unavoidable impact on animals, though not usually serious.

F. Human Interest

- All prescribed fires temporarily blacken the landscape making this aesthetic impact unavoidable.

- Loss or damage to geological, archeological, or historical features can be unavoidable if their existence is unknown prior to fire management activities, or through accidental disturbance.

- The suppression activity during emergency conditions can damage natural areas of scientific, educational, or wilderness value. The larger the fire and the more extensive the suppression action the greater the opportunity for unavoidable adverse impact.

- Impaired visibility due to smoke from burnouts, backfires, and prescribed fire may interfere temporarily with recreational use.

- High noise levels produced by engines of aircraft and other equipment cannot be fully mitigated.

- Temporary closures of areas due to high fire danger of hazardous travel conditions is a fire management practice and unavoidable.

- The impact on local life styles during the suppression program cannot be fully mitigated.

- Accidents resulting in injury and occasional death will occur from fire management mishaps and are an adverse impact.

- The temporary adverse psychological effects created by highly visible fire management activities can only be partially mitigated.

- There will be unavoidable impacts on cultural, ethnic, and religious values. When different cultural styles meet for any length of time, there is inevitably a merging of the different styles and values.

G. Other

- Certain economic losses may occur in prescribed burning which are unavoidable. For example: all forces to do the job are organized and firing times set in advance. If the weather changes and the forces must disband, all mustering costs are lost.

- The petroleum products used in equipment operation as well as in all logistical support by air or ground forces are unavoidably lost.

PART VI

SHORT TERM USES VERSUS LONG TERM PRODUCTIVITY

Fire management is not so much a use of the environment as it is a means of protecting human values and enhancing the productive capacity of national resource lands.

Presuppression-prevention, suppression, postsuppression and prescribed fire involve short term practices to obtain long term benefits. If planned and implemented according to BLM policy and guidelines, adverse impacts, such as the addition of smoke and dust into the air, the disturbance of wildlife or the temporary blackening of a land area will be short term.

Some of the long term effects of fire management that will enhance the state of the environment for future generations are:

- Protection of life, property and resources through well planned suppression action.
- Improvement of wildlife habitat and livestock ranges through fire rehabilitation and prescribed fire.
- Reduction of hazardous fuels through prescribed fire or other hazard reduction methods.
- Rehabilitation of resources and facilities destroyed or damaged by wildfire.
- Increase water yields through alteration of vegetation.
- Perpetuate plant community successional stages or subclimax vegetation with prescribed fire.
- Improvement of soil and water quality on wildfire burned areas through postsuppression practices.

A. Physiography, Geology, and Minerals

The construction of protection facilities, firebreaks, firelines, and roads that expose large areas of the surface to potential erosion and mass movement decreases future productivity on the affected areas by removing or destroying the soil layer upon which new growth is dependent. However, this construction also exposes the underlying rock formations which in turn gives a better understanding of the geology in the area. Thus long term productivity can be enhanced to the extent that construction may expose potential economic mineral deposits.

B. Soils

While some practices may have a short term detrimental impact on localized areas, most practices will either increase or not affect long term productivity. The removal of vegetation and organic matter in the course of hazard reduction and fireline construction could lead to slight reductions in soil nutrition over time. The area occupied by structures and roads will not be productive during the life of the facility. Their possible reclamation along with temporary roads, firelines, and breaks can be expected to result in reduced productivity where extensive excavation was made. The postsuppression rehabilitation practices on wildfire burned areas will have both short term and long term beneficial effects on productivity through stabilization of soil. The potential for decreased long term productivity as result of any management practice that significantly affects ground cover, such as firelines, is greatest in parts of the Taiga Forest and the alpine zones of the Montane Forest.

In localized areas where massive soil movement and continuing erosion take place, along with permanent road and facility sites, the long term productivity of micro and macro soil organisms will be affected.

C. Water

In those areas where snowmelt forms a significant portion of the season runoff, the increased snowpack which occurs in open areas, such as firelines and breaks, and prescribed fire areas, is a definite benefit by increasing water productivity. Where slopes and stream channels are stable, this increased runoff has no adverse effects and suspended sediment concentrations will remain relatively stable. Periodic erosion along protection lines and roadways resulting from seasonal rains and storms will have a minimal impact on the productivity of the aquatic ecosystem.

The postsuppression and rehabilitation practices on wildfire burned areas will have both short term and long term beneficial effects on productivity through sediment control creating improved water quality.

Measures to mitigate adverse impacts on water quality will help maintain the long term productivity of aquatic micro and macro-organisms. However, unpredicted events and accidents caused by fire management practices can have a serious effect on aquatic organisms in small streams for a few years. The effect on long term productivity of micro and macro-organisms is not known.

D. Air

The potential long term impact of practices which destroy vegetation and/or cause significant soil disturbance on the microclimate of the Taiga Forest are unpredictable because basic research is lacking. In general, however, the practices associated with the fire management program do not affect the climate or air as they relate to the long term productivity of the forest.

Smoke components have average residence times in the air as follows:

CO - 10 to 36 days

NO/NO_2 - 3 to 4 days

Particulates - varies by size and composition but mostly less than 12 hours

Terpenes and olefins - a few hours

These are not shown to be accumulating in the atmosphere. The 1974 Annual Report of the Council on Environmental Quality shows that total suspended particulates, including smoke, has decreased at many urban monitoring sites in the 1960-1972 period, while no change was noted at nonurban sites.

E. Vegetation

Vegetation is a renewable resource, capable of reestablishment on most areas that are denuded during wildfire and during hazard reduction, fire suppression, and prescribed fire activities. Through natural and artificial revegetation during postsuppression, the former productivity of the site can usually be both restored and increased over time. Productivity, especially, can be increased through fire management practices, i.e., protection from wildfire, salvage logging, and prescribed fire.

F. Wildlife

Fire management will not, as a rule, impair long term productivity for wildlife. Removal of dense old fire protected vegetation and restoration of new vegetation with more open conditions will even enhance long term productivity in many cases. An exception to the rule involves endangered species, where normally short term impacts such as the accidental disturbance or destruction of habitat could exterminate the only remaining population. Although serious accidents can damage portions of the aquatic habitat, extensive or widespread damage of entire river systems as a direct or indirect result of fire management is extremely unlikely.

G. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses, and Burros

Fire management will have no adverse impact on long term productivity for domestic livestock. Long term productivity is more likely to be increased through protection and prescribed fire.

H. Human Use

- Health and Safety

With the exception of fire related employee accidents and accidents between the public and fire equipment, there should be no long term effects associated with the fire management program.

- Wilderness

Assuming that natural or wilderness areas are recognized and classified accordingly, there will be no long term adverse impact of the fire management program. Through the use of natural fires burning under prescription, the natural wilderness ecosystem can be maintained.

- Recreation

The effects of the fire management program will not impair future recreational values. It will protect the values and can maintain them through the use of prescribed fire.

- Grazing

The fire management program will not adversely impact the numbers of livestock, wild horses, or burros using the range. Through protection and prescribed fire, the range capacity can be increased.

- Timber

The effects of the fire management program will not impair future timber values. The program will protect investments and increase regeneration and productivity through prescribed fire.

- Agriculture

There should be no long term effects on agricultural crops or irrigation systems as a result of practices associated with fire management.

- Aesthetics

The program should have no long term effects on recreation potential.

- Geologic Human Interest Values

Any impact that accidentally obliterates or substantially alters unique geologic features would decrease their long term human interest values.

- Archeologic Human Interest Values

Accidental destruction or damage to archeological sites caused by the fire management program would have severe long term impacts on their values. However, fire protection will aid in preserving the long term value.

- Historic Human Interest Values

Inadvertent destruction or damage to historic sites would have long term impacts if the sites were not restored. Even with restoration, there would be some diminution in historic value. Protection from fire, however, will aid in preserving the long term value.

- Cultural, Ethnic, and Religious Values

To the extent that members of a particular culture are affected and changed by contact with members of a different culture, there may be some long term impacts on those individuals.

PART VII

IRREVERSIBLE AND IRRETRIEVABLE COMMITMENTS OF RESOURCES

The proposed fire management program is intended to prevent irreversible and irretrievable resource commitments that will occur if the proposed action should be implemented. It includes a survey of the unavoidable impacts and the extent to which the action irreversibly curtails the potential uses of the environment.

Part VII focuses on erosion, destruction of human interest values, elimination of endangered species and their habitat, and curtailment of land on natural resource uses. The consideration of any of these consequences is based only upon the existence of risks residual after the fullest possible mitigation efforts have been employed.

A. Ecological Interrelationships

While certain components of the biotic community and physical environment, such as endangered species, would represent irretrievable losses if annihilated as a result of some catastrophic event, the basic ecological processes would in all probability recover and continue on. The ecology of localized areas may be permanently impacted because of land slides, etc., however, their rate of incidence and amount of land effected would be minimal. The greatest risk of irretrievable impacts on the ecosystem resulting from soil erosion following the loss of vegetal cover exists in fragile areas. It should be pointed out, however, that much remains unknown regarding the ecological interrelationships that exist throughout the biomes, so absolute certainty cannot be ascribed to the general apparent lack of irreversible or irretrievable impacts.

B. Physiography, Geology, and Minerals

Erosive processes induced by removal of the vegetative cover and the construction of facilities, firelines, firebreaks, and roads produce an indeterminable amount of localized mass wasting or mass movements which cannot be reversed or retrieved, no matter what mitigating measures are taken. When the vegetal cover is removed from an area where steep slopes occur and there is an abundant supply of moisture, the erosional process will sustain itself. In those situations where rock types and structure are conducive to weathering the erosional cycle will increase. Any resulting soil deposition into bodies of water represents a permanent loss of the resource. This is also a natural process which tends toward an equilibrium over geologic time but in terms of man's life it results in a disequilibrium because of the time required for the area to stabilize.

C. Soils

The irreversible impact and commitment of the soil resource is closely correlated to the physiographic and geologic factors described in the previous part. There are additional impacts, however, if the assumption is made that permanent fire facilities, firebreaks, and roads will remain in perpetuity. In this case approximately 2 to 5 percent of the soil surface will be committed to a relatively irreversible use. Furthermore, the soil, rock, gravel, and other materials used to construct the firebreaks, roads, and structures could also be viewed as representing a form of depletion and a permanent commitment of resources. In a theoretical sense, however, firebreaks and roads could be "dismantled", and the areas returned to a productive state if society's values so deemed necessary.

D. Water

Watershed values of a drainage are irretrievably committed, to a degree, in those instances where bare rock has been exposed or enlarged as a result of massive soil movements. Landslides can also cause the destruction of a natural stream channel, resulting in its rechannelization, and the accompanying permanent loss of soil and other materials.

E. Air

Under extreme conditions, natural restoration of the original microclimate may take a long time, but there is no irretrievable commitment to any fixed microclimate.

The question of smoke accumulating in the global atmosphere is raised by recorded increases in CO_2 at the rate of about 1 percent in five years. Most scientists agree that this increase results from the combustion of fossil fuels. The combustion of vegetative fuel should not add to this, as the process of decay will emit approximately the same amount. Burning merely affects the time table for these emissions locally.

F. Vegetation

There are relatively no known irreversible or irretrievable impacts of fire management on vegetation except in the case of accidental elimination of endangered plant species. Even where drastic misapplications may occur and result in extensive delays in regeneration, natural plant succession and technical progress can be expected to restore the site to a vegetated condition. Only where landslides expose rock surfaces can the vegetative condition be considered irretrievable. The natural process of the conversion of standing water habitats to land masses is accelerated by those fire management practices that contribute to sedimentation.

G. Wildlife

Any loss of an endangered species constitutes a potential irreversible and irretrievable commitment. Small, non-mobile terrestrial species with limited habitats and only local distributions are especially vulnerable. Other mobile terrestrial species with widespread distribution could possibly be eliminated from a specific area for a long period of time. The most vulnerable aquatic animals are the rare fishes, the populations of which could be severely damaged and possibly exterminated from an entire river system as a result of a fire management related accident.

H. Domestic Livestock, Wild Horses, and Burros

There are no known irreversible or irretrievable impacts of fire management on domestic livestock other than accidental direct loss of life.

I. Human Use

- Health and Safety

Accidents among fire related employees that cause permanent injury or death are, of course, irreversible and irretrievable. This also applies to members of the public injured or killed in accidents involving aircraft or other fire management equipment.

- Recreation

The fire management program commits no recreational values to irrevocable loss or degradation.

- Grazing, Timber, Agriculture

Accidental loss of soil caused by fire management activities can be considered irretrievable.

- Aesthetics

The fire management program makes no irrevocable commitment of aesthetic values. Even old growth forests could be reestablished, although it would take several centuries in time.

- Geological Human Interest Values

Accidental damage or destruction of geologic sites would, within the time-frame of man's interest, be irreversible and irretrievable.

- Archeologic Human Interest Values

Inadvertent damage or destruction of archeological sites would probably be irreversible and irretrievable. Provided sites were not completely destroyed, enough salvage might be possible to retain their human interest value.

- Historical Human Interest Values

Conceivably all historic sites that are the works of man could be restored should they be destroyed. However, their values would be diminished and, in effect, the values lost irretrievably.

- Cultural, Ethnic, and Religious Values

In a theoretical sense, there would be no irreversible and irretrievable loss of cultural, ethnic, or religious values caused by the fire management program on the assumption that people could revert to their original cultures. For all intents and purposes, however, the nature of man is contrary to this assumption and, therefore, where the fire management program does impact thses life styles, beliefs, or values, they must be considered as irretrievable.

PART VIII

ALTERNATIVES TO THE PROPOSED ACTION

This part, in addition to describing each alternative, includes a comparative description of the proposed action and each alternative and the beneficial and adverse impact of each alternative. For an economic analysis of costs and benefits refer to Appendix L. The two alternatives are as follows:

- Fire Control Program (Suppress all wildfires)
- Limited Fire Control Program (Allow wildfires to burn)

A. Fire Control Program

1. Description

This alternative emphasizes the prompt suppression of all wildfires to assure minimum area of burn by each wildfire on national resource lands or fires on lands adjacent thereto which threaten national resource lands. The fire control policy and operational standards combine fire planning, active prevention, and aggressive fire suppression. Resource values or local habitats are recognized but are not controlling factors in the operational policy. For a comparison and discussion of the fire control activities and practices utilized in this alternative and others, refer to Table VIII-1.

2. Environmental Impacts and Effects

The environmental impacts and effects of this alternative can occur in varying degrees. These include both onsite as well as offsite.

Table VIII-1

Fire Management Program and Alternatives
Comparison of Activities and Practices

Descriptive Element	Proposed Fire Management Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Fire Control Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Limited Fire Control Program
OBJECTIVE	Initial attack all wildfires.	Initial attack all wildfires.	No initial attack or suppression action, some prevention practices on high resource value areas.
	Suppression action after initial attack within framework of management objectives and plans with suppression efforts conditioned by potential damage, least expenditure of public funds for effective suppression, suppression methods least damaging to resources and environment, integration of suppression with others, and highest priority to disaster fire.	Suppression action after initial attack directed toward minimum burn acreage with secondary consideration of resource values.	
	Full use of prescribed fire to achieve land and resource management goals.		
PREVENTION AND PRESUPPRESSION			
Planning	Based on management framework plans with public participation, decision on best mix of land and resource uses, with fire management activities, and practices needed to support identified multiple uses.	Based on fire control with minimum area of burn the primary consideration.	Based on prevention practices in high resource value areas and no presuppression or suppression practices.

Table VIII-1 (cont'd.)

Descriptive Element	Proposed Fire Management Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Fire Control Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Limited Fire Control Program
Information & Education	Public exposure of (a) the prevention and the destructive nature of wildfires, (b) the positive aspects of prescribed fire, and (c) the possible consequences of fuel buildup and increased risk of wildfire.	Practices centered on the prevention of wildfires.	Practices centered on the prevention of wildfires in high resource value areas.
HAZARD REDUCTION	Practices include removal of fuels, limiting spread following ignition, and weather modification. Based on risk of wildfire, resource value, potential damage, least expenditure of funds, method least damaging to resources and environment. Goal is the prevention of large or uncontrollable wildfires rather than simply a reduction in the total number of fires.	Same as proposed action except practices are designed toward minimum burn acreage and a reduction in the total number of fires.	Same as other alternative except practice is limited to high resource value areas.
DETECTION	Lookouts, patrols, cooperators, and the public reporting telltale smoke.	Same as proposed program.	No organized detection.
RESEARCH AND TRAINING	Professional field concerned with (1) the physical, biological, and social sciences, (2) the applied fields of meteorology, engineering, administration, and natural resource management, (3) the on-the-ground application of skills, and (4) the interdisciplinary approach to problem solution.	Same as proposed action except for prescribed fire.	Same as proposed action except for presuppression and suppression activities.

Table VIII-1 (cont'd.)

Descriptive Element	Proposed Fire Management Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Fire Control Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Limited Fire Control Program
RESEARCH AND TRAINING (cont'd.)	Research and training are designed to control destructive wildfires and to use prescribed fire as a tool.		
SUPPRESSION			
Initial Attack	Places maximum emphasis on speed and strength of attack.	Same as proposal.	None.
Continued Suppression	Suppression action guided by objectives, i.e., consideration of resource values, environment, and potential damage and values lost; least expenditure of funds for effective suppression to bring the wildfire under control and stop its spread.	Suppression action designed to control wildfire and achieve minimum burn acreage.	None.
Mopup	The last stage of suppression activity designed to cool down burning material near the fire edge and later extinguish remaining spots until the fire is out.	Same as proposal.	None.
POSTSUPPRESSION			
Evaluation, Planning & Implementation	Identifying damage caused by wildfire and suppression practices, weighing and deciding the consequences of rehabilitation or no rehabilitation, establishing practices for rehabilitation to fulfill conservation objectives, and	Same as proposal.	None.

Table VIII-1 (cont'd.)

Descriptive Element	Proposed Fire Management Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Fire Control Program	Alternatives to Proposed Action: Limited Fire Control Program
POSTSUPPRESSION (cont'd.)	requesting and budgeting funds for needed rehabilitation. Rehabilitation of most damages from suppression practices are performed immediately after mopup.		
PRESCRIBED FIRE	Controlled application of fire to wildland fuels to achieve preplanned objectives. The scientific use of fire for disease control, rough reduction, fuel reduction, and habitat improvement. Also includes the preplanned natural role of fire in special areas, such as wilderness areas.	Prescribed burning for hazard reduction and site preparation.	Prescribed fire in high resource value areas for hazard reduction and to achieve management objectives.

a. Beneficial

The beneficial impacts are as follows:

- Reduce the number and size of wildfires
- Reduce difficulties, costs, and damages of future suppression actions
- Reduce smoke production caused by wildfires
- Increase release and availability of nutrients
- Facilitate human and animal access
- Discover archeological and historical features
- Aid in human rescue
- Protect human life and manmade structures
- Protect archeological, historical, and other unique sites and resource investments
- Limit loss of vegetation cover on watersheds
- Limit loss of forage and wood products
- Limit loss of habitat
- Maintain conditions favorable to plant succession
- Provide nutrients from retardants
- Provide temporary local stimulus to the economy
- Protect endangered species of plants and animals
- Reduce soil erosion
- Reduce stream pollution
- Reduce fire hazard
- Restore desired plant species
- Restore habitat and forage for wildlife, livestock, and wild horses
- Inhibit damaging insect outbreaks

- Improve recreation opportunities
- Improve visual aspects of the landscape

b. Adverse

The adverse impacts are as follows:

- Soil: lethal heating of organisms reduces wettability and infiltration; increases soil erosion and compaction, and loss of organic matter
- Water: increases stream temperature, sedimentation and nutrients; contamination from retardants, fertilizers, pesticides, and petrochemicals; streambed and streambank changes; change in water salinity
- Air: reduces air quality through increase of pollutants
- Vegetation: removal, consumption, or damage of vegetation; increases fuel buildup; long term loss of life form and species diversity; loss of fire-dependent species
- Wildlife (including aquatic): loss of life; destruction of habitat; increased destructive human activity; decrease in plant variety and death or injury to aquatic life due to retardant toxicity
- Livestock, Wild horses, and Burros: loss of forage, increase of human activity; damage to range facilities such as water development and fences; displacement of animals
- Human: hazard to personal health and welfare; destruction or damage to natural areas of scientific, educational, or wilderness value; contamination of water supply; damage to private property; loss or damage to geological, archeological, and historical features; disrupt local life style; disrupt land and resource uses; disturbance of aesthetic values; increase in human presence, noise, and solid waste; impair visibility; utilization of scarce petroleum products

B. Limited Fire Control Program

1. Description

No suppression action on wildfires is another alternative to the proposal. In this alternative, wildfires would be allowed to burn unchecked on the premise that this is how our present environmental complex of vegetative types was established and must be cyclically maintained. Except for prevention practices aimed at reducing occurrence of man-caused fires, there would be no fire program costs. This limited fire control alternative could be modified through investment in prevention practices which would reduce opportunities of ignition or, if started, reduce intensities and spread of fire. Such practices of closures, hazard reduction, and weather modifications would be found concentrated around areas of heavy investment and high resource value.

The Western States and Alaska have an evolutionary history of fire from lightning and man-caused ignition sources. Frequent fires tended to reduce fuel accumulations in the forests and rangelands and, since they reoccurred every few years, they were rarely intense. Thus, a century or more ago, fuel conditions differed from those of today because they were held at a "natural level" by the cyclic pattern of wildfires. Even the man-caused fires of that time were different because most were set at times and in places best meeting specific objectives, not accidentally as most are started today. 1/ Today, as a result of this interference with natural wildfires, large accumulations of fuel exist on all lands in the West and Alaska. Large disaster-type wildfires are inevitable.

1/ Recent compilations show causes of wildfires as: lightning 35%; man-caused incendiary 21%; and man-caused accidental as 44% (Glascock, 1972).

Today, should wildfires be allowed to burn naturally, they would be both frequent and intense until the vegetal composition and fuel dynamics come into balance with the "new fire regime"--a return toward the former natural level. The difference would be the large and increasing numbers of accidental man-caused fires which are disruptive of the natural cycle. An approximate fuel balance would not be achieved for many decades.

2. Environmental Impacts and Effects

The beneficial and adverse impacts and effects of wildfire and the limited fire control program are described below. Wildfires fueled by vegetation may be comparable to a two-edged sword. They have both harmful and beneficial consequences. The harmful aspects are well known. Wildfires raging out of control can trigger catastrophic destruction. On the other hand, wildfires that have some of the characteristics of a prescribed fire shall have some beneficial effects.

Fuel loading or the quantity of fuel available for burning is one of the more important factors in assessing potential damage from wildfires. Fuel and fuel weight sets the maximum potential energy that may be released during burning. For a given rate of spread and constant heat yield, the fire intensity is directly proportional to the quantity of fuel that burns (Brown and Davis, 1974).

Two other important factors in assessing potential for damage from wildfires are when and where wildfires burn. Many wildfires today are man-caused and a large percentage of these are of an incendiary nature. These occur in the months of June, July, August, and September when fire behavior factors result in adverse environmental and economic effects.

Further, such fires occur in areas where wildfires are difficult to control and are not in the interest of good land and resource management.

There are also many secondary factors that govern the intensity of a wildfire. These include topographic and weather components. The current state of each component, and its interaction with fuel, each other, and with the wildfire largely determines the characteristic behavior and the damages resulting from a wildfire.

There are regional variations in the prevalence of wildfires and the amount of fuel. For example, deserts are characteristically less affected by wildfire than are other areas. The more arid the desert the less fuel is produced and the less frequent and severe are the wildfires that may occur. However, even though wildfire frequency and severity may be relatively low in any rating scale, their effects on the desert ecosystem may be extreme. Another example, in southeastern Alaska, with dense fuels in the coastal western hemlock-Sitka spruce forests from Juneau toward Petersburg, apparently fires very rarely burn (H. Weaver, 1974). Wildfires do not occur in this area primarily because of weather conditions.

Public attitude toward wildfire varies considerably. The general public, landowners, and resource users who reside in areas where wildfires are infrequent are generally not too concerned about wildfire or its destructive forces. On the other hand, in most areas of high resource value with fuel buildups and high ignition risk, the local residents and others are concerned about wildfires. They are especially concerned if wildfires could adversely affect their uses or values such as socio-economic values, property values, forage values, habitat values, recreation values, watershed values, or timber values. Fear of uncontrolled wildfire is a powerful force. It becomes exceedingly important when a wildfire is a threat to human lives and property. It results in a demand for public security from wildfire that may far outweigh consideration based on loss of natural resource values.

a. Beneficial

The beneficial impacts are as follows:

- Air quality: There are no beneficial impacts of wildfire on air quality.
- Soil: Improvement in soil fertility, lower soil acidity, and exposure of mineral soil improves seedbed.
- Water: Increased runoff may provide a temporary increase in the downstream water quantity.
- Vegetation: Decrease undergrowth, change plant density and composition, increase germination of hard seed coat species, rapid and released growth of remnant plants, remove weaker trees and vegetation, reduction of fuel, and assist in determining rate of plant succession.
- Wildlife: Aid in maintaining biotic diversity needed for most species of wildlife, improve forage and habitat in some instances, destroy rodent and insect populations.
- Livestock, wild horses, and burros: Improve forage in some instances.

b. Adverse

The adverse impacts are as follows:

- Air quality: Smoke would cause impaired visibility and lowered air quality due to pollutants. This in turn would adversely affect people and the human environment. The frequent, intense longer-period fires of the natural cycle would make these impacts a summer long experience.

- Soil: Increase erosion; lower ability of topsoil to absorb and retain water; increase potential of soil slump on hillsides; reduce organic matter; cause greater temperature extremes for some time after the fire, thus affecting plant growth; nitrogen is totally lost in the burning process when vegetation and humus are consumed by wildfire; beneficial soil microbes in the thin surface layer are destroyed, site deterioration.

- Water: Decrease in water quality because of sedimentation; increase and larger variations in water temperatures; increase in ash and nutrient content of streams; increase in runoff both overland flow and in water drainage channels which in turn increases the risk of flood hazard and decreases onsite moisture availability.

- Vegetation: Consume, remove and damage to vegetation; loss of nutrients, primarily nitrogen; long term loss of life form and species diversity, loss of fire intolerant plants, increase in fire tolerant plants; temporary decrease in fuels.

- Animals: The effect of limited fire control on animals is usually more an indirect impact than a direct impact. However, some of the impact and effects include loss of forage and habitat; loss of life; displacement of animals; decrease in quality of forage from perennial plants to less desirable annuals; possibility of creating extensive homogenous stands of plants which limit the variety of animals.

Human Interest Values: The most severe impacts from wildfire would be on people. In the growth of man and his culture he has placed expedient limitations on natural cycles in order to best meet his relatively short term needs. He has placed developments and other investments throughout the ecosystem and then has tried to prevent wildfires. Should unrestricted natural fires now occur they would make broad disastrous sweeps through the fuel accumulations of the past 70 years, destroying man's investments, crippling resource-related industries, and adversely affecting his general well being. Fifty to 100 years could well pass before the natural level of fuels is regained and the short term disaster fires again limited in occurrence.

There would be no adverse impacts due to fire suppression activities under this alternative but the longer burning periods of all fires would create many adverse situations:

- Increased smoke concentrations would be objectionable to all residents, resource users, or tourists by decreasing air quality and visibility;
- Increased threat to geological, archeological, historical, and cultural sites with probable destruction of combustible sites;
- Increased threat to cultural improvements, range, timberlands, and agricultural lands with heavier economic losses a certainty; and
- Increased potentital losses of developed recreational sites, isolated ranches, or other property.

To summarize the impacts of wildfires:

- Most impacts are short term in nature;
- Most impacts on air, soil, and water are adverse;
- Most impacts on wildlife are beneficial in the regional aspect but can be adverse in local habitats;
- Major adverse impacts relate to people--their property, investments, domesticated animals, and both short and long term well-being; and

- Major beneficial impacts relate to the establishment and maintenance of fire dependent and successional vegetal mosaics, providing diverse habitat for wildlife and for man's utilization.

In general, under the limited suppression alternative there would be none of the impacts from suppression practices described in Part III. There impacts from the fires would be one of degree; the larger the fire the more intense and wider the impact on the ecosystem.

Were it not for the altered natural fire mosaics and heavy fuel accumulations now existing on most NRL's, the impacts of this alternative would not be as adverse. However, man himself has so altered the ecosystem that environmental considerations alone should not dictate fire management policy. Through land and resource development and utilization, man has placed monetary and cultural investments in the path of environmental management. Protection of these investments is demanded by and receives the support of the public. Since these investments are scattered in varying intensities throughout the NRL, the concept of this alternative for long term environmental concerns cannot be recognized and must be restricted to limited areas if, in fact, permitted at all. A blanket policy of allowing all fires to burn under all conditions is inevitably detrimental to economic and social values (Agee, 1974).

PART IX

CONSULTATION AND COORDINATION WITH OTHERS

Development of the Draft Environmental Statement

The Bureau of Land Management completed a working draft of the Fire Management Environmental Impact Statement in August 1975. It was compiled under the leadership of BLM staff by the following personnel:

Bureau of Land Management

William Malencik, Chief, Division of Technical Services, Nevada State Office, Team Leader

Roy Percival, Chief, Division of Fire Control, Fairbanks District, Alaska

Dr. Frank W. Stanton, Wildlife Specialist, Oregon State Office

Robert Krumm, Deputy Director, Boise Interagency Fire Center

Myrvin Noble, Natural Resource Specialist, Denver Service Center

George Weiskircher, Recreation Specialist, Susanville District, California

Paul Cuplin, Fisheries Biologist, Denver Service Center

James Gabetus, Assistant District Manager, Boise District, Idaho

Jack Edwards, Leader, Economics Staff, Denver Service Center

U.S. Forest Service

Robert Mutch, Research Forester, Northern Forest Fire Laboratory, Missoula, Montana

Owen Cramer, Research Meteorologist, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Portland, Oregon

Individuals

Dr. Edwin Komarek, Director, Tall Timbers Research Station, Tallahassee, Florida

Roger R. Robinson (retired BLM), former Director, Boise Interagency Fire Center and State Director, Alaska

In addition to selected individuals, a copy of the working draft was sent to the following for review:

Federal Agencies

Soil Conservation Service

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

National Park Service

Bureau of Indian Affairs

Environmental Protection Agency

Bureau of Land Management: State Offices, Washington Office, Denver Service Center, Boise Interagency Fire Center

Universities

University of Montana

Oregon State University

University of Washington

The comments received were then circulated among the team preparing the report and considered in the preparation of the draft statement.

During the development of the final draft statement, consultation will continue with groups and individuals.

Coordination in the Review of the Draft Environmental Statement

Comments on the draft environmental statement will be requested from the following agencies and state clearing houses:

Department of Agriculture-
  Soil Conservation Service
  U.S. Forest Service

Department of Commerce-
  National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Department of Defense

Environmental Protection Agency

Atomic Energy Commission

Department of the Interior-
  - Bureau of Indian Affairs
  - U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
  - Bureau of Outdoor Recreation
  - Bureau of Reclamation
  - U.S. Geological Survey
  - National Park Service

Department of Transportation

National Aeronautics and Space Administration

Water Resource Council

River Basin Commission (Pacific Northwest)

State Clearing Houses-
  - State of Alaska
  - State of Arizona
  - State of California
  - State of Colorado
  - State of North Dakota
  - State of South Dakota
  - State of Idaho
  - State of Montana
  - State of Nevada
  - State of New Mexico
  - State of Oregon
  - State of Utah
  - State of Washington
  - State of Wyoming

PART X

GLOSSARY

Allowable Burn

The burned acreage, expressed in percentage of area protected that can be tolerated per year in each resource value class.

Available Nutrient

That portion of any element or compound in the soil that readily can be absorbed and assimilated by growing plants.

Biome

One of the largest ecological units of both plants and animals usually identified in terms of the characteristic vegetation.

Canopy

The cover of leaves and branches formed by the tops or crowns of plants.

Check Dam

Small dam constructed in a gully or other small watercourse to decrease the streamflow velocity, minimize channel scour, and promote deposition of sediment.

Chiseling

Breaking or loosening the soil, without inversion, with a chisel cultivator or chisel plow.

Climate

The sum total of all atmospheric or meteorological influences, principally temperature, moisture, wind, pressure, and evaporation, which combine to characterize a region and give it individuality by influencing the nature of its land forms, soils, vegetation, and land use.

Climax Community

The final stage of a vegetative succession through seral stages to the most stable plant association the site can support.

Compaction

To unite firmly; the act or process of becoming compact, usually applied in geology to the changing of loose sediments into hard, firm rock. With respect to construction work with soils, engineering compaction is any process by which the soil grains are rearranged to decrease void space and bring them into closer contact with one another, thereby increasing the weight of solid material per cubic foot.

Conservation

The protection, improvement, and use of natural resources according to principles that will assure their highest economic or social benefits.

Cover, Vegetative

All plants of all sizes and species found on an area, irrespective of whether they have forage or other value. Syn. plant cover.

Debris

A term applied to the loose material arising from the disintegration of rocks and vegetative material; transportable by streams, ice, or floods.

Degradation

To wear down by erosion, especially through stream action.

Denitrification

The biochemical reduction of nitrate or nitrite to gaseous nitrogen, either as molecular nitrogen or as an oxide of nitrogen.

Deposit

Material left in a new position by a natural transporting agent, such as water, wind, ice, or gravity, or by the activity of man.

Deposition

The accumulation of material dropped because of a slackening movement of the transporting agent--water or wind.

Desilting Area

An area of grass, shrubs, or other vegetation used for inducing deposition of silt and other debris from flowing water, located above a stock tank, pond, field, or other area needing protection from sediment accumulation.

Detention Dam

A dam constructed for the purpose of temporary storage of streamflow or surface runoff and for releasing the stored water at controlled rates.

Dispersion, Soil

The breaking down of soil aggregates into individual particles, resulting in single-grain structure. Ease of dispersion is an important factor influencing the erodibility of soils. Generally speaking, the more easily dispersed the soil, the more erodible it is.

Diversion Terrace

Diversions, which differ from terraces in that they consist of individually designed channels across a hillside, may be used to protect bottomland from hillside runoff or may be needed above a terrace system for protection against runoff from an unterraced area. They may also divert water out of active gullies, protect farm buildings from runoff, reduce the number of waterways, and are sometimes used in connection with stripcropping to shorten the length of slope so that the strips can effectively control erosion. See terrace.

Duff

The more or less firm organic layer on top of mineral soil, consisting of fallen vegetative matter in the process of decomposition, including everything from pure humus below to the litter on the surface. Duff is a general, nonspecific term.

Ecosystem

A community of living and non-living components of the environment, where interactions result in an exchange of materials and energy.

Endangered Species

Those species of plants and animals in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of their range that are officially listed and established by law.

Environment

The surrounding conditions, influences or forces that affect or modify an organism or an ecological community and ultimately determine its form and survival.

Erosion

(1) The wearing away of the land surface by running water, wind, ice, or other geological agents, including such processes as gravitational creep. (2) Detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity. The following terms are used to describe different types of water erosion.

accelerated erosion

Erosion much more rapid than normal, natural, or geologic erosion, primarily as a result of the influence of the activities of man or, in some cases, of other animals or natural catastrophies that expose base surfaces; for example, fires.

geological erosion

The normal or natural erosion caused by geological processes acting over long geologic periods and resulting in the wearing away of mountains, the building of floodplains, coastal plains, etc. Syn. natural erosion.

gully erosion

The erosion process whereby water accumulates in narrow channels and, over short periods, removes the soil from this narrow area to considerable depth, ranging from 1 to 2 feet to as much as 75 to 100 feet.

natural erosion

Wearing away of the earth's surface by water, ice, or other natural agents under natural environmental conditions of climate, vegetation, etc., undisturbed by man. Syn. geological erosion.

normal erosion

The gradual erosion of land used by man that does not greatly exceed natural erosion. See natural erosion.

rill erosion

An erosion process in which numerous small channels only several inches deep are formed; occurs mainly on recently cultivated soils.

sheet erosion

The removal of a fairly uniform layer of soil from the land surface by runoff water.

splash erosion

The spattering of small soil particles caused by the impact of raindrops on wet soils. The loosened and spattered particles may or may not be subsequently removed by surface runoff.

Eutrophication

The excessive accumulation and retention of nutrients by aquatic ecosystems from man-made or natural causes, often resulting in oxygen deficiency.

Fertility, Soil

The quality of a soil that enables it to provide nutrients in adequate amounts and in proper balance for the growth of specified plants when other growth factors, such as light, moisture, temperature, and the physical condition of the soil, are favorable.

Fertilizer

Any organic or inorganic material of natural or synthetic origin that is added to a soil to supply elements essential to plant growth.

Fire Climax

A plant association, forest type, or cover type held at a seral stage by periodic fires.

Fire Management

The control or use of fire to protect human life and property and to enhance the productive capability of national resource lands to meet resource production and other human needs.

Fire Mosaic

A seral plant stage established and maintained naturally through cyclic recurrence of fire.

Grazing System

A systematic sequence of grazing use and nonuse of an allotment to reach identified multiple-use goals or objectives by improving the quality of the vegetation.

Hazard (fire hazard)

A fuel complex forming a special threat of ignition or of suppression difficulty.

Hazard Reduction

Any treatment of slash, litter, snags and other material that reduces threat of ignition, spread, and resistance to control of a fire.

Herbicide

A chemical substance used for killing plants, especially weeds.

Hour Control

The estimated elapsed time between the origin of the fire and the arrival of the first suppression force.

Humus

That more or less stable fraction of the soil organic matter remaining after the major portion of added plant and animal residues have decomposed; usually amorphous and dark colored.

Impoundment

Generally an artificial collection or storage of water, as a reservoir, pit, dugout, sump, etc. See reservoir.

Infiltration

The flow of a liquid into a substance through pores or other openings, connoting flow into a soil in contradistinction to the word percolation which connotes flow through a porous substance.

Infiltration Rate

A soil characteristic determining or describing the maximum rate at which water can enter the soil under specified conditions, including the presence of an excess of water.

Leaching

The removal of materials in solution from the soil.

Lightning Fire

A fire that is ignited by lightning.

Man-Caused Fire

A fire that is ignited or caused by man.

Management Action

A supervisory decision affecting the manner and method of use of the resources of a land area.

Management Framework Plan (MFP)

Land use plan for national resource lands which provides a set of goals, objectives and constraints for a specific planning area to guide the development of detailed plans for the management of each resource.

Mass Soil Erosion (landslides)

The detachment and downslope movement of relatively large quantities of soil at one time occurring primarily during wet soil conditions with gravity as the moving force.

Mechanical Practices

Soil and water conservation practices that primarily change the surface of the land or that store, convey, regulate, or dispose of runoff water without excessive erosion.

Microclimate

The climate of a very small site or habitat.

Mulch

A natural or artificial layer of plant residue or other materials, such as sand or paper, on the soil surface.

Multi-Disciplinary Team

A group of persons who collectively have expertise on all aspects of components of a project or problem to be studied and/or solved.

Multiple Use

Harmonious and coordinated management of the various surface and subsurface resources, without impairment of the land, that will best meet the present and future needs of the people.

Natural Fire

A fire ignited by natural causes such as lightning and spontaneous combustion.

National Resource Lands (NRL)

Public lands administered by the Bureau of Land Management.

Nitrification

The biological oxidation of ammonium salts to nitrites and the further oxidation of nitrites to nitrates.

Nonwettable Soil

A condition of the soil which may occur after wildfire where the soil loses its affinity for water.

Normal Fire Year

The year with the third greatest number of fires in the past ten.

Normal Fire Year Plan (NFYP)

A fire control operational plan designing the organization and facilities needed to meet protection standards of a management unit in a normal fire year.

Off-Road Vehicle (ORV)

Any motorized vehicle designed for or capable of cross-country travel on or immediately over land, water, sand, snow, ice, marsh, swampland, or other terrain.

Overgrazing

Consumption of vegetation by herbivores beyond the endurance of a plant to survive.

Parent Material

The unconsolidated and more-or-less chemically weathered mineral or organic matter from which soil develops.

Pasture

As used in this document, a pasture is a subdivision of a grazing allotment on national resource lands. For example, the allotment is divided into three pastures.

Pesticide

A chemical agent used to control pests.

Planning Unit

A geographic subdivision of a BLM District for planning and management purposes. There are approximately 500 planning units on 60 districts.

Plant Vigor

The relative well being and health of a plant as reflected by its ability to manufacture sufficient food for growth and maintenance.

Pollution, Air and Water

Any change in the character of air and water adversely affecting its usefulness.

Postsuppression

The activity directed towards the rehabilitation of fire related damages.

Prescribed Burning (prescribed fire)

Controlled application of fire to wildland fuels in either their natural or modified state, under such conditions of weather, fuel moisture, etc., as to allow the fire to be confined to a predetermined area while producing the intensity of heat and rate of spread required to achieve certain planned objectives of silviculture, wildlife management, grazing, fire hazard reduction, and insect and disease control.

Presuppression and Prevention

The activity in advance of fire occurrence to ensure effective fire suppression and the organized effort to reduce the number and size of wildfires.

Programmatic Statement

A comprehensive and general statement resulting from an analysis of the adverse and beneficial impacts on the environment as it is being affected by an ongoing management program.

Public Participation

A component of the Bureau Planning System providing the opportunity for citizens as individuals or groups to review resource management proposals and offer their suggestions or criticisms of the various alternatives offered.

Rainfall Intensity

The rate at which rain is falling at any given instant, usually expressed in inches per hour.

Reservoir

Impounded body of water or controlled lake in which water is collected or stored.

Resource Value Class

One of five relative value classes (Class V being the highest) into which all lands and resources in each planning unit have been inventoried and classified. Classification considered soil, water, location, timber, grazing, recreation, wildlife, and air space.

Risk (fire risk)

The chance of a fire starting as determined by the presence and activity of causative agents.

Rotation Grazing System

A grazing system providing for sequential movement of livestock from one pasture to another on the basis of allowing for regrowth of vegetation and maintenance of vegetative vigor.

Runoff (hydraulics)

That portion of the precipitation on a drainage area that is discharged from the area in stream channels. Types include surface runoff, groundwater runoff, or seepage.

Sediment

Solid material, both mineral and organic, that is in suspension, is being transported, or has been moved from its site of origin by air, water, gravity, or ice and has come to rest on the earth's surface either above or below sea level.

Sediment Discharge

The quantity of sediment, measured in dry weight or by volume, transported through a stream cross-section in a given time. Sediment discharge consists of both suspended and load and bedload.

Seral

Relating to a successional stage in a plant community.

Sheet Flow

Water, usually storm runoff, flowing in a thin layer over the ground surface. Syn. overland flow.

Slope

Degree of deviation of a surface from the horizontal, usually expressed in percent or degrees.

Soil Erosion

The detachment and movement of soil from the land surface by wind or water. See erosion.

Soil Organic Matter

The organic fraction of the soil that includes plant and animal residues at various stages of decomposition, cells and tissues of soil organisms, and substances synthesized by the soil population. Commonly determined as the amount of organic material contained in a soil sample passed through a 2-millimeter sieve.

Soil Structure

The combination or arrangement of primary soil particles into secondary particles, units, or peds. The secondary units are characterized and classified on the basis of size, shape, and degree of distinctness into classes, types, and grades, respectively.

Soil Texture

The relative proportions of the various soil separates in a soil. The textural classes may be modified by the addition of suitable adjectives when coarse fragments are present in substantial amounts; for example, gravelly silt loam. Sand, loamy sand, and sandy loam are further subdivided on the basis of the proportions of the various sand separates present.

Subclimax

The seral stage in plant succession preceding climax.

Subsoiling (ripping)

The tillage of subsurface soil, without inversion, for the purpose of breaking up dense layers that restrict water movement and root penetration.

Suppression

The activity beginning with discovery of a wildfire, continuing until it is extinguished.

Surface Erosion

The detachment and transport of individual soil particles by water, wind, or gravity.

Terrace

An embankment or combination of an embankment and channel constructed across a slope to control erosion by diverting or storing surface runoff instead of permitting it to flow uninterrupted down the slope. Terraces or terrace systems may be classified by their alignment, gradient, outlet, and cross-section. Alignment is parallel or non-parallel. Gradient may be level, uniformly graded, or variably graded. Grade is often incorporated to permit paralleling the terraces. Outlets may be soil infiltration only, vegetated waterways, tile outlets, or combinations of these. Cross-sections may be narrow base, broad base, bench, steep backslope, flat channel, or channel.

Threatened Species

Those species of wildlife which are likely to become endangered within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of their range, that are officially listed by law.

Tillage

The operation of implements through the soil to prepare seedbeds and root beds.

Water Control (soil and water conservation)

The physical control of water by such measures as conservation practices on the land, channel improvements, and installation of structures for water retardation and sediment detention (does not refer to legal control or water rights as defined).

Weed

A plant out of place.

Wildfires (wildland fires)

Any fire not prescribed by an authorized plan.

Wind Erosion

The detachment and transportation of soil by wind.

Values-At-Risk (values at stake)

The values that may be adversely affected by fire.

Coniferous

Conebearing, as a pine tree.

Pathogen

A specific cause of disease, as a bacterium or virus.

Biomass

The amount of living matter in a habitat.

APPENDIX

Specialized and technical data are attached as appendices in accordance with part 1500.8 paragraph (a)(1) of the CEQ Guidelines.

Title	Appendix
Policy Directives	A
Classification of Hazard Reduction Practices	B
Detection	C
Slash Disposal Considerations	D
Fireline Equipment	E
Fire Rehabilitation (Objectives, Plan Outline, Treatment Practices, and Seeding Standards)	F
Prescribed Burning--Guides and Plan	G
Model Smoke Management Plan for Prescribed Burning of Forest or Range Residue	H
Soil Stability Class	I
Soil Classifications	J
Description of Characteristic Soil Series in Major Biomes	K
Economic Analysis of Costs & Benefits of the Proposal and Two Alternatives	L

DEPARTMENTAL MANUAL

Appendix A

TRANSMITTAL SHEET

PART 590 DM 1	SUBJECT WILDLAND FIRE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT General Policies and Responsibilities	RELEASE NUMBER 1694
FOR FURTHER INFORMATION, CONTACT Bureau of Land Management		DATE NOV 1 1974

EXPLANATION OF MATERIAL TRANSMITTED:

This Departmental Manual Release, 590 DM 1, revises and updates the general policies and responsibilities for bureaus having fire control and management responsibilities. Emphasis is changed from fire control to fire management, and numerous revisions have been made to update references, consolidate material, and clarify procedures. Significant changes are as follows:

1. In 590 DM 1.1 (Authority.), the reference to the Memorandum of Understanding between the Department of the Interior and Department of Agriculture, approved January 11 and 28, 1943, has been removed. While the memorandum remains in effect, it was entered into under existent authorities and is not in itself an authority in the context of the term in this Manual. Also in the same paragraph, the Disaster Relief Act of December 31, 1970, is added as an additional authority.

2. 590 DM 1.4 (Organization.) has been added to establish the Interior Fire Coordination Committee under the Assistant Secretary - Land and Water Resources to provide leadership and advice in wildland fire control and management matters, and to describe Departmental Fire Teams available for large or multiple fire situations.

3. 590 DM 1.8 (Prevention.) has been added describing fire prevention programs in keeping with the change of emphasis from fire control to fire management.

4. 590 DM 1.9 (Reports.) has been revised to include information on and directions for submitting the Individual Fire Report. It also includes revised instructions about the Annual Wildfire Report.

This Release also revises the title for Part 590 of the Departmental Manual. The Part title is changed from "Forest and Range Fire Control" to "Wildland Fire Control and Management."

Assistant Secretary of the Interior

FILING INSTRUCTIONS:

Remove:	Insert:
590 DM 1 (2 sheets) Appendixes 1 and 2 (2 sheets)	590 DM 1 (3 sheets)

.1 Authority. The statutes cited herein authorize the prevention, presuppression, control and suppression of wildfire on or threatening the forest, brush, marsh, range, tundra, and other vegetative type lands under the jurisdiction of the Department of the Interior, or lands adjacent thereto.

A. Protection Act of September 20, 1922, (42 Stat. 857; 16 U.S.C. 594)

B. Economy Act of June 30, 1932, (47 Stat. 417; 31 U.S.C. 686)

C. Taylor Grazing Act of June 28, 1934, (48 Stat. 1269; 43 U.S.C: 315)

D. O. and C. Act of August 28, 1937, (50 Stat. 875; 43 U.S.C. 1181e)

E. Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955, (69 Stat. 66; 42 U.S.C. 1856a)

F.. Public Land Administration Act of July 14, 1960, (74 Stat. 506; 43 U.S.C. 1361)

G. Disaster Relief Act of December 31, 1970, (84 Stat. 1747, 1751; 42 U.S.C. 4413, 4435)

.2 Responsibility. The Secretary of the Interior is responsible for wildland fire control and management activities of the Department (including such activities when contracted for, in whole or in part, with other agencies) under the statutes cited in 590 DM 1.1. The Assistant Secretary - Land and Water Resources is responsible for coordinating the program within the Department and for liaison with other agencies outside the Department. Existing delegations to the Bureau of Indian Affairs, Bureau of Land Management, Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Park Service provide for program direction so that they may take the initiative for prompt and effective action in wildland fire control and management operations.

.3 Policy. Wildland fire may result in loss of life and man-made facilities. It usually causes destruction or deterioration of natural resource values and degradation of the environment, but fire is also a tool to achieve resource management objectives. The Departmental policy on wildland fire control and management is:

A. Wildland fires, whether on lands administered by the Department or adjacent thereto which threaten human life, man-made structures, or are determined to be a threat to the natural resources or facilities under the jurisdiction of the Department, shall be considered emergencies and their suppression given priority over normal Departmental programs. Bureaus will give the highest priority to preventing the disaster fire - the situation in which a wildfire causes damage of such magnitude as to impact management objectives and/or socio-economic conditions of an area.

B. Within the framework of management objectives and plans, overall wildland fire damage shall be held to the minimum possible giving full consideration to (1) an aggressive fire prevention program; (2) the least expenditure of public funds for effective suppression; (3) the methods of suppression least damaging to resources and the environment; and (4) the integration of cooperative suppression actions by agencies of the Department among themselves or with other qualified suppression organizations.

C. Prescribed fires, which may include ignitions by natural causes, may be used to achieve agency land or resource management objectives under approved and coordinated plans.

.4 Organization.

A. Interior Fire Coordination Committee. The Interior Fire Coordination Committee operates under the direction of the Assistant Secretary - Land and Water Resources. It provides leadership and advice for the development, coordination and maintenance of superior wildland fire presuppression and suppression capabilities, and the standardization of procedures, methods, and practices within the Department of the Interior. Membership of the committee is as follows:

> Staff Officer of the Assistant Secretary - Land and Water Resources, ex officio, one member each from the Bureau of Indian Affairs, Fish and Wildlife Service, National Park Service, and two members from the Bureau of Land Management (one each from the Headquarters Office and the Boise Interagency Fire Center).

The committee is chaired by the Headquarters Office representative of BLM.

B. Departmental Fire Teams. To hold fire losses to a planned level consistent with least expenditure of public funds, the Department annually designates special Departmental General Headquarters (GHQ) and Project Fire Teams. These teams are available for large or multiple fire situations and the best qualified people from the Department are assigned to staff the teams. These teams are maintained in readiness throughout the fire season and their services may be requested when a fire situation exceeds local agency capabilities. The GHQ and Project Fire Teams function under the line management organization of the requesting agency.

.5 Training and Qualifications.

A. Training. Each bureau performing fire suppression activities provides training and experience to all employees, both permanent and temporary, who are assigned to such activities, to qualify them for fire suppression duty.

B. Qualifications. Through the Interior Fire Coordination Committee, the Department prescribes minimum fire position requirements which include special skills and knowledge. Employees within the Department who are assigned to fire management duties must be rated against these requirements following training.

.6 Cooperation and Emergency Assistance.

A. Suppression Actions. The Bureau of Land Management, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, the National Park Service, and the Fish and Wildlife Service are directed to arrange for the expeditious dispatching of available firefighting support when requested to assist in fire emergencies on each other's lands. There will be no interbureau billing or reimbursement for such emergency support services. Property issued in connection with fire suppression services shall be returned to the issuing bureau by the receiving bureau unless said property is damaged beyond repair, the transportation costs exceed the item's value, or the receiving bureau had prior approval to retain the borrowed property.

B. Cooperative Agreements. Where the heads of the bureaus consider formal cooperation necessary and desirable, agreements are encouraged with other Federal, state, or local government agencies and with privately organized agencies or associations. In addition to the formal cooperation outlined, informal cooperation brought about by sound public relations in the vicinity of public and Indian lands under the Department's jurisdiction is important and necessary. To every extent possible such informal cooperation should be encouraged and stimulated.

(1) Cooperative agreements between bureaus of this Department shall clearly specify the duties and specific responsibilities of the contracting parties with respect to the specific lands included within the agreement, the records, accounts, and reporting to be maintained, and the length and termination provisions of agreements.

(2) Cooperative agreements between bureaus of this Department and other Federal, state, or local governments or privately organized agencies, shall specify the sphere of duties and responsibilities for each contracting party for fire control on lands under (1) its own jurisdiction, and (2) the jurisdiction of the other contracting parties. Reporting procedures, agreement length and termination provisions, and charges or reciprocal services agreed upon must be included.

(3) Cooperative agreements under the authority of the Act of June 28, 1934, may be entered into by District Managers of the Bureau of Land Management with individual land operators on privately owned grazing land within grazing districts that are under exchange or grazing use agreements, and on leased Federal grazing lands outside of grazing districts.

C. Emergency Assistance.

(1) Pursuant to the Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955, emergency assistance in the absence of a formal cooperative agreement may be provided to properties immediately adjacent to public and Indian lands under the Department's jurisdiction where fire control facilities are maintained. Such assistance is confined to that which can be provided by government personnel employed at the time of the emergency who can be made available without jeopardy to the Departmental lands and to the public interest, by the supervisor of the Departmental area adjacent to where the emergency exists. (See 800 DM 1.)

(2) Pursuant to the Disaster Relief Act of December 31, 1970, bureaus of this Department may provide emergency assistance to any state or local government for suppression of fire officially declared as threatening destruction such as would constitute a major disaster.

.7 Presuppression Actions.

A. Research. Under the Protection Act of May 22, 1928, as amended, the Secretary of Agriculture is authorized and directed to conduct investigations and experiments for the purpose of determining the best methods of protecting timber and other forest growth from fire and other harmful agencies. In accordance with this authority, fundamental or basic research in fire control is requested of, and carried out by the Forest Service of the Department of Agriculture. Such requests will be presented to the Forest Service by the bureaus with a copy provided to the Assistant Secretary - Land and Water Resources.

B. Preparedness. Each bureau shall maintain a satisfactory state of preparedness at all times, under available funds and manpower, for wildland fire control and management through the following programs:

(1) Providing education and training including developing fire prevention awareness in each employee of the Department.

(2) Developing fire management plans for each specific management area within the bureau having wildland fire potential.

(3) Maintaining essential facilities such as firebreaks, detection systems, roads and trails, and firefighting, communications, and transportation equipment.

(4) Performing an effective fire prevention program.

(5) Enforcing the rules and regulations of the Department concerning the starting of wildland fires, and pressing for prosecution of violators to the maximum extent possible.

.8 Prevention. Emphasis shall be given to fire prevention programs, particularly those concerned with human behavior, fuels, and weather, in order to reduce resource damage and fire suppression expenditures.

.9 Reports. Bureaus submit Individual Fire Report, Form DI-1201, to the Bureau of Land Management, Denver Service Center, Division of Data Processing, Building 50, Denver Federal Center, Denver, Colorado 80225, within 20 days of a fire action. Each bureau must develop its own instructions for completing the form consistent with data processing procedures. All Forms DI-1201 must be submitted not later than December 31, which is the cutoff date for inclusion in the Annual Wildfire Report. From the information in the Individual Fire Report, BLM prepares the Annual Wildfire Report in printout form not later than February 25, for the preceding year. A copy of this report is sent to each bureau, the Assistant Secretary-Land and Water Resources and the U.S. Forest Service.

Appendix A

IN REPLY REFER TO:
9210.1 (440)

United States Department of the Interior

BUREAU OF LAND MANAGEMENT
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20240

May 29, 1975

Instruction Memorandum No. 75-247
Expires 12/31/75

To: All Field Officials

From: Associate Director

Subject: Fire Management Policy

The Department of the Interior has released a new fire management policy 590 DM1. In order to conform with this new policy, all officials shall direct compliance with the following Bureau policy.

Policy. The Department's policy as outlined in the Departmental Manual 590 DM1 is further developed for the Bureau as follows:

A. The suppression of wildfire, whether caused by lightning or from human-related ignition sources, must be given priority over normal Bureau activities, except those involved with safeguarding human life.

B. Managers must give highest priority to preventing the disaster fire by aggressive prevention and suppression actions.

C. Managers must take action with adequate forces to contain all fires during the first burning period which occur on or are threatening the national resource lands. Fires occurring on lands identified for alternate suppression objectives, under paragraphs D and E below, must be attacked in accordance with alternate action plans. When multiple fires create a condition of insufficient forces, priority for action must be given the fires threatening the areas of highest value.

D. Resource managers may use fire to meet specific resource management objectives in accordance with the terms of an approved prescribed fire plan. The plan may be implemented when (1) resource managers develop a specific resource management objective for burning; (2) the subactivity funds are available for carrying out the prescribed fire plan; (3) the burning conditions exist which are identified in the prescribed fire plan; and (4) the planned forces are available.

CONSERVE
AMERICA'S
ENERGY

Save Energy and You Serve America!

prescribed fire plans must contain the following minimal requirements; the objectives for burning; the fire behavioral and meteorological conditions which will accomplish the burning objectives; the pre-ignition action plan identifying fuels, preparation, burning sequence, fire breaks, and control force requirements for the planned action and for emergency fire suppression. An environmental analysis review is also required for each project. Prescribed fire plans must be approved by the State Director.

E. In areas where the difficulty of controlling fires is extremely high and where the values threatened do not warrant the expenses associated with the usual initial attack procedures, managers may alter the suppression objectives contained in paragraph C by preparing special suppression plans. Areas having special suppression plans must be clearly defined on all initial attack maps. These plans shall include: justification for the alternate initial attack method, fire behavioral and meteorological conditions under which the alternate action plans will be used, suppression action plans, an environmental analysis review, and an emergency suppression contingency plan. Such action plans must be coordinated with the resource managers and with all land owners adjacent to the area. Rehabilitation, if any, will be commensurate with the values and will be analyzed as part of the alternate fire suppression action plan. The State Director must approve all special fire suppression action plans.

F. BLM fire suppression forces are manned, equipped, and trained to fight the wildland type fires. Managers normally will make arrangements for protection of BLM structures by a structural fire organization. Managers may assist in suppressing fires in non-BLM structures, using existing forces and equipment, only in cases of emergency to save lives or to retard the spread of the fire adjacent to wildland.

G. Managers will insure that only qualified personnel are assigned to fire management duties.

This policy will be included in BLM Manual 9210 prior to expiration of this instruction memorandum.

Roman H. Koenings
Acting

1603 - SUPPLEMENTAL GUIDANCE

I. Fire Protection Program Activity Policy Statement.

1. Description of Program Activity. This program activity includes prevention, presuppression, and suppression of damages caused by wildfire, and restoration of damages from suppression actions.

2. Assumptions. (See 1602.3 - General Planning Assumptions.)

a. Improved weather forecasting will permit quicker detection of fires and faster suppression action.

b. Aircraft will be more adaptable to fire detection and suppression work.

c. More effective and environmentally safe chemical retardants will be available.

d. Lightning-caused fires will be reduced by dispersal or partial control of some types of lightning-discharging clouds.

e. The safety of suppression forces will be advanced through development of more protective clothing, more fire-resistant materials and chemicals, more efficient tools, and better rescue devices.

f. Controlled burning techniques will be improved.

g. Increased knowledge will be gained concerning the use of weather modification as an aid in the suppression of wildlife.

3. Long-Term Objectives. These include:

a. Minimizing losses of public lands and their resources from wildfire damage to preserve their capabilities to contribute to the resource needs of the Nation.

b. Protecting all rare or unique natural and historical resources and critical environmental values from wildfire to preserve them for the use and enjoyment of present and future generations.

c. Rehabilitating burned areas in accordance with land-use and management plans.

4. Major Principles and Standards. (See 1602.4 - Standards for Program-wide Application.) The standards of protection are contained in the Normal Year Fire Plans. Major principles include:

1603 - SUPPLEMENTAL GUIDANCE

a. Except to protect or save human life, high priority will be given to controlling fires on or threatening lands, resources, or installations under jurisdiction of the Bureau.

b. Within the framework of management plans, wildfires will be held to the minimum damage possible using the methods of suppression least damaging to resources and the environment.

c. Prescribed fire may be used to achieve land or resource management plans in accordance with management objectives.

d. Where firelines constructed for the control and suppression of wildfires on public lands could lead to erosion, stream damage, flooding, etc., final fireline mop-up operations may include, but are not limited to, any or all of the following actions:

(1) Complete re-covering of the fireline with the vegetative cover and other material that was removed (backfilling).

(2) Partial replacement of previously removed vegetative cover and other material to the fireline in the form of water bars at intervals needed to control erosion.

(3) The building of water-diversion channels through the burn if the fireline gradient is steep enough to be subject to damaging erosion. This may be accomplished by continuing the use of the necessary equipment and manpower after control of fires.

e. The program will be operated to minimize personal injuries and enforce safety practices.

9210 - FIRE CONTROL

.01 Purpose. This section presents fire control principles and operational standards for the guidance of Bureau employees in carrying out their responsibilities for the protection of public lands and resources from wildfire.

.02 Objective. The objective of the fire control program is to protect public land resources under the jurisdiction of the Bureau from wildfire damage, in order to preserve their capabilities to contribute toward meeting the resource needs of the Nation.

.03 Authority.

A. The Protection Act of September 20, 1922.
(42 Stat. 857; 16 U.S.C. 594)

B. The Taylor Grazing Act of June 28, 1934.
(48 Stat. 1269; 43 U.S.C. 315)

C. The O&C Act of August 28, 1937.
(50 Stat. 874; 43 U.S.C. 1181e)

D. The Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955.
(69 Stat. 66; 42 U.S.C. 1856, 1856a)

E. The Economy Act of June 30, 1932.
(47 Stat. 417; 31 U.S.C. 686)

F. The Public Land Administration Act of July 14, 1960.
(74 Stat. 506; 43 U.S.C. 1361)

G. Annual Appropriations Acts for the Department of the Interior.

.04 Responsibility. Existing delegations (590 DM 1.3) from the Secretary of the Interior to the Director of the Bureau of Land Management provide for the operation of the fire control program on the public lands under the jurisdiction of the Bureau.

A. Director. The Director of the Bureau of Land Management is responsible for the control of wildfires on the public lands under Bureau jurisdiction.

9210 - FIRE CONTROL

.01 Purpose. This section presents fire control principles and operational standards for the guidance of Bureau employees in carrying out their responsibilities for the protection of public lands and resources from wildfire.

.02 Objective. The objective of the fire control program is to protect public land resources under the jurisdiction of the Bureau from wildfire damage, in order to preserve their capabilities to contribute toward meeting the resource needs of the Nation.

.03 Authority.

A. The Protection Act of September 20, 1922.
(42 Stat. 857; 16 U.S.C. 594)

B. The Taylor Grazing Act of June 28, 1934.
(48 Stat. 1269; 43 U.S.C. 315)

C. The O&C Act of August 28, 1937.
(50 Stat. 874; 43 U.S.C. 1181e)

D. The Reciprocal Fire Protection Act of May 27, 1955.
(69 Stat. 66; 42 U.S.C. 1856, 1856a)

E. The Economy Act of June 30, 1932.
(47 Stat. 417; 31 U.S.C. 686)

F. The Public Land Administration Act of July 14, 1960.
(74 Stat. 506; 43 U.S.C. 1361)

G. Annual Appropriations Acts for the Department of the Interior.

.04 Responsibility. Existing delegations (590 DM 1.3) from the Secretary of the Interior to the Director of the Bureau of Land Management provide for the operation of the fire control program on the public lands under the jurisdiction of the Bureau.

A. Director. The Director of the Bureau of Land Management is responsible for the control of wildfires on the public lands under Bureau jurisdiction.

Appendix B

Classification of Hazard Reduction Practices

As part of the presuppression and prevention activity, hazard reduction practices may be classified according to its intended purpose, or as follows:

A. Removal of all ignitable fuel in limited areas of special risk. The cleared and burned railway right-of-way is an example, as already mentioned. It is illustrated also by the zone kept clear of fuels around sawmill burners, city dumps, etc. It is represented on a more extensive scale where forest or grass areas are burned over under control to avoid subsequent ignition from known sources of risk. The common purpose is the automatic prevention of ignitions by removal of fuels.

B. Removal of all fuel in a strip close to or around the source of risk in order to confine any fire that may be ignited to a small isolated area. This kind of measure freqently substitutes for complete removal in cases cited under 1 above. Cleanup of fuels or exposure of soil in a strip along roadsides to create firebreaks to confine roadside fires is a familiar example. The purpose is both prevention of ignitions and containment.

C. Removal of fuel in a strip where the purpose is to exclude fire from a high-value or high-hazard area. Firebreaks around a forest plantation are a typical example.

D. Removal of fuels to reinforce natural breaks and to create new ones by which an area can be broken up into blocks to facilitate control of wildfires. This is a familiar pattern in California brushlands.

E. Use of prescribed burning, when coarse and intermediate fuels are moist, to safely remove flash fuels from considerable areas. Similar use on smaller areas to strongly reduce fuel hazards. The purpose is to reduce the energy output and the rate of spread of wildfires so they will be much easier to control and will do less damage.

F. Breaking the vertical continuity of fuels and the horizontal continuity of tree crowns in coniferous stands by cultural measures such as pruning and thinning and the removal of undergrowth. Although the value of hazard reduction of this kind is commonly recognized, it is not commonly practiced because of costs.

G. Removal of dead snags or trees that would throw spot fires if ignited. This is a familiar requirement in timber sale areas. The purpose is assurance to the fire fighter that his efforts will not be frustrated by a succession of spot fires from embers flying overhead (Brown and Davis, 1973).

The application of hazard-reduction measures to serve these purposes requires decisions based on careful evaluation and planning. The fire problem is directly proportional to the relationship between hazard and risk. Prevention action will be necessary on areas having high hazard which are exposed to fire risks. All BLM administered lands are analyzed for hazard-risk relationships to determine the magnitude of the fire problem.

Detection

Detection is a key fire management tool. Before anything can be done toward controlling a fire, its existence must be known. Smoke is normally the telltale evidence on which detection is based.

Detection of fires is ordinarily accomplished by one or more of the following conventional methods and facilities:

A. By lookouts planned, designed and implemented for the purpose. Nearly all agencies use lookouts, though they vary in the degree of dependence. The number of lookouts reach peak numbers in 1953 with about 5,000 lookouts in the United States. They have shrunk to about 3,000. A further reduction will occur, but at a slower rate. Because of changing conditions other methods of detection are replacing some lookouts.

B. By aerial patrol over predetermined routes at specific intervals. The use of aircraft to detect fires today is nearly univeral among fire management agencies. This practice is heavily used to pick up any undiscovered lightning fires after significant lightning storms.

C. By ground patrol over predetermined routes at specific times. The ground detection patrol is generally used within the more dangerous risk areas and/or high risk periods.

D. By planned arrangements with cooperators and local residents. Resident cooperators have augmented other detection methods. It's an economical method and the probability of such discoveries increase with the number of visitors. Airline companies have been particularly effective in detecting and reporting fires.

Slash Disposal Considerations

Fire hazard increases greatly in timber areas following cutting primarily because of a large volume of the finer and potentially flammable fuels from the tree crowns and limbs. The increased hazard is controlled by the following conditions:

A. The quantity of slash created. This is affected by the volume cut by species, the method of logging and the care exercised during logging. Much slash results from road construction and damage to residual trees in addition to slash from harvested trees.

B. The distribution of slash, that is, whether slash is patchy or more or less continuous. This is a function of the character of the timber stand and method of logging. With tractor skidding, for example, much of the slash is windrowed along skid trails.

C. The flammability of slash. There are substantial differences between deciduous and coniferous species as well as within these groups. There are substantial differences too due to arrangement of the slash. If slash is lopped or flattened to place it in close contact with the ground, moisture contents remain higher and kindling fuels are less effective.

D. The duration of hazard. This is controlled by the volume of the slash created and by the rate of disintegration. Tree species and environments differ markedly in this respect.

E. Microclimatic changes resulting from more open stand conditions following cutting. These include higher surface temperatures and increased air movement near the ground, which accelerate both drying of fuels and rate of spread should a fire start. Marked changes in surface vegetation also follow logging. Together, such changes may exert a larger total effect on hazard than the slash itself.

F. The size of the area cut. In general, the larger the area, the greater the total hazard.

G. The frequency and pattern of logging roads or skid trails that may serve as firebreaks and that improve accessibility. Roads may, however, increase risk since they permit more hunters, berry pickers, fishermen and others to enter the area.

There are two general methods of slash disposal that require use of fire: (1) pile (or bunch) and burn and (2) broadcast burn. They may be applied singly or sometimes in combination in treating an area. Lop and scatter and clipping of slash are also employed but do not require fire.

The essential feature of pile-and-burn methods is that logging slash and other debris are assembled in separate piles and burned. Substantial hazard reduction results from piling alone in some situations. The most frequent practice is to prepile and then burn during some safe period, usually late fall or early winter. A less common method during periods of low fire danger is known as swamper burning or progressive burning. A fire is started in some spot clear of living trees and slash is piled on it to burn just as it is trimmed from newly felled trees. Or, after logging is complete, a somewhat similar method may be employed by starting a fire and gathering all nearby slash to burn progressively as it is handled.

Slash disposal by allowing fire to spread more or less completely over the ground has been practiced in several forms over many years. In the early days of American logging, it was common practice to fire slash areas indiscriminately. A major reason was low cost. Slashings were simply touched off and fire was allowed to run wild over the area. Slash was more or less destroyed, and so was timber remaining on the cutting area and often nearby as well. The most extensive application of broadcast burning as a means of slash disposal is in clear-cutting of old-growth conifers. In most such areas, slash disposal by piling methods following clear-cutting is both impractical and prohibitive in cost. Also, the ground needs to be cleared to obtain satisfactory reproduction of desired species. Here, all mechantable material is removed, the balance of the stand felled and the accumulation of fuels burned broadcast.

Fireline Equipment

Tools used to suppress fires are aimed to remove one essential component of the fire triangle, i.e., heat, oxygen, or fuel. The most common method is fuel removal by creating a fireline void of fuels around the fire. A fireline is constructed by using power equipment, handtools, or fire retardant chemicals. Additional information is included in this part on equipment and handtools. This fireline is constructed down to mineral soil and will vary in width depending upon the type of construction tool used. Normally 18 inches in width to mineral soil is sufficient, and the vegetation removed inside the fireline is equal in width to the height of the vegetation.

A. Power Equipment

Power equipment is normally more efficient than manpower hand line construction and a wide variety of types are in use.

- Plows - originally agricultural equipment, various types and design of plows have been adapted and specialized for fire suppression line construction. The width of line constructed is normally 12 to 18 inches in width, with the berm being rolled to the outside of the fireline. Plows are either mounted to the rear or pulled by trucks, crawler tractors, and tracted ATV's.

- Bulldozer - these machines are used in construction work and applied to fire suppression normally without modification. The bulldozer is an effective road builder and line clearer. This crawler tractor clears a line 3 to 12 feet in width with the berm being thrown to the outside of the fireline. Line width varies due to tractor size and bulldozers are usually operated in tandem for safety and operational reasons.

- Rotary Trencher - the rotary trencher is a rotating flail that both constructs a fire trench or line and throws dirt. It can be a hand-held portable or pulled or mounted on a truck or bulldozer. The line width constructed varies between 12 and 24 inches. The dirt being flailed by the trencher can be placed on either side of the fireline, depending upon whether direct or indirect attack methods are to be used.

- Pumper - pumping units mounted on trucks or tracked vehicles of various sizes with water or retardant tanks. These pumper units vary in size between 100 and 5,000 gallon capacity and have various types of pumps for water or retardant dispersal. The vehicles may also vary in size and type from 2-wheel or 4-wheel drive, through crew-cabs, to the ATV "Dragon Wagon" and various tracked vehicles. The pumper units are used in direct attack placing the water or retardant on the flame front, in-laying a "wet line" line for burn-out or backfire, or in support of other fire-fighting operations.

- Portable Equipment - portable water pumps and chainsaws are used in fireline construction in conjunction with heavy equipment and handtools. Portable pumps may be used in the same way as pumper units. Chainsaws are used for line clearing operations in order to allow for line construction.

B. Handtools

A great variety of handtools are used in fire control operations and are primarily for cutting and digging. The most commonly used for digging (line construction) are the Pulaski, shovel, Rich tool, McLeod and Matlock. Tools for cutting are the Pulaski, axe, brush hook and saw. An associated piece of equipment used in conjunction with the handtools is the metal or rubber back-pack pump.

C. Equipment for Backfiring

Several types of torches are used in this practice. Some are hand held others back carried or mounted on vehicles; some utilize gasoline as fuel, others gasoline-kerosene mixture, propane or kerosene. The most common is a solid fuel firework device which is an adaptation of the familiar railroad or highway fusee.

D. Aircraft

The use of aircraft in the fire suppression program for various support and tactical assignments has progressed at a rapid rate. There are types of aircraft classified by type and use.

- Support Fixed Wing Aircraft - In logistical support of fire suppression operations, a wide variety of aircraft are in use. These aircraft are used to get the personnel, supplies and equipment to the fire and return. Point to point (airport to airport) transportation is accomplished by aircraft that vary from two place to the jumbo jet. The most common aircraft for this purpose are the various light twin engines and heavier aircraft such as the DC-3, C-46, F-27, DC-6 and 7, Electra, 727, 737, 707, C-130 and 720. For other than point to point delivery of supplies and equipment to the fire area, air cargo delivery systems are used. The cargo is rigged for air dropping and the supplies and equipment are parachuted directly to the fire. The most common aircargo aircraft in current use for this purpose are the Beach 99, Twin Otter, Volpar, Caribou, DC-3, C-46, B-23, C-119J and Skyvan. The carrying capacity of these aircraft varies between 3,000 and 19,000 pounds.

- Tactical Fixed Wing Aircraft - Fixed wing aircraft are also utilized in a tactical way for suppression efforts directly on the fire. One use is for the direct placement of personnel by parachute on fires. These smokejumper aircraft vary in carrying capacity from four to twenty-four men. The common aircraft types in current use are the Beach 99, Volpar, Skyvan, Twin Otter, DC-3, C-46 Grumman Goose and Caribou. Other tactical aircraft carry water or chemicals to fires and place these agents directly on the fire. Some common types in use with carrying capacity are the B-25, 1,000 gal.; S-2, 800 gal.; B-26, 1,200 gal.; C-119J, 2,100 gal.; PB4Y2, 2,400 gal.; TBM, 650 gal.; PBY5A, 1,800 gal.; B-17, 2,000 gal.; DC-6 and 7, 3,000 gal.; P2V, 3,000 gal.; CL215, 1,500 gal. and C-130, 3,000 gallons. Other types of fixed wing aircraft are also used in varying types and sizes to perform other tactical missions such as air attack, detection and observation.

- Helicopters - Helicopters offer a much higher potential for effective attack on fires from the air than fixed wing aircraft. Helicopters in sizes ranging from two to 24 passengers and in varying quantities are used in fire suppression work. They are utilized for hauling supplies and materials, hauling personnel, observation missions, initial attack with a trained crew, laying fire hose, placing incendiaries for a burnout or back-firing operation, emergency medical evacuation and dropping 150 to 1,000 gallons of water or retardant from a suspended water bucket or external tank. The most common types in use at the present time are both piston and jet turbine powered. They are Bell 47G series, Hiller 12 series, Bell 206A and B, 204B, 205A1, Hiller 1100, Boeing 105C, S-55T, S-61, Boeing Vertol and Alouettes 2 and 3.

Fire Rehabilitation

The basic objective of this program as stated in BLM Manual 7240.02--

> "--- is the timely mitigation, in the most economic and expeditious manner possible, of the adverse effects of fire on the vegetation-soil complex, inherent renewable resources of the watershed environment and other damages.";

Other Bureau policy statements regarding this program are:

"A. Treatment will be executed in a timely manner within seasonal limitations to obtain maximum benefits from rehabilitation efforts.

B. Give first priority to the watershed conservation objective which is to protect the site from further soil deterioration.

C. All treatment measures will be designed to comply with existing Bureau standards. Bureau standard specifications are to be used whenever they apply."

A fire rehabilitation plan is prepared. The plan includes the identification of resource damage, rehabilitation needs and justification, an analysis of the environmental impacts of the proposed treatments and alternative treatments and a request for the necessary emergency funding to complete the job. Methods examined include on-site erosion, sediment and storm water management control structures as well as soil stabilization practices useful for achieving control of sediment, storm water runoff and other pollutants.

Fire Rehabilitation Plan Outline

Fire Number ____

I. Background: (Current Situation)

- A. Fire Identification
  1. Location
  2. Soils
  3. Topography
  4. Climate
  5. Vegetation prior to burn
  6. Intensity of burn
  7. Hydrology
  8. Soil Surface Factor prior to burn
- B. Resource Uses

II. Evaluation and Analysis:

- A. On-site physical factors (damages to watershed)
  1. Erosion hazard - wind, water
- B. Off-site non-physical, water quality, sedimentation
- C. Wildlife or other factors

III. Rehabilitation Needs and Objectives:

- A. Alternatives
- B. Recommendations
  1. Treatment
  2. Management
- C. Justification

IV. Environmental Considerations:

Discuss positive or negative impacts of alternatives proposed.

- A. MFP status (was MFP used?)

V. AWP Summary:

- A. Description of units
- B. Cost per unit

C. Man-months

D. Other job requirements - pounds of seed by species

E. Cooperative programs

F. Scheduling sequence

VI. Map Exhibit:

A. Perimeter of fire should be shown in black.

B. Boundaries of treatment areas by sumbol.

C. Show all existing jobs in addition to proposed.

The most common fire rehabilitation treatment practices include the following:

A. Seeding

The primary objective of seeding following a burn is to develop adequate cover for the denuded soil as soon as possible. (See Figure F-1.) The main consideration for determining the need for seeding is the length of time that would be required to obtain the desired cover without such treatment. This is influenced by composition of the original cover and the damage that has occurred to it. The intensity of the fire, vegetal composition, season of the year and amount of soil moisture are some of the important factors influencing the extent of damage. Also of importance is the need for seeding to curb the establishment of undesirable cover. Soil characteristics and climatic factors influence the species selection as well as the manner of seeding.

B. Planting

Planting of trees and shrubs is usually too slow a process to provide the quick emergency cover desired to prevent soil erosion. However, it may be considered if evaluation indicates the trees and shrubs will give additional protection to the soil such as in the vicinity of gully control structures, channel stabilization works, etc. The planting of trees and shrubs to replace species destroyed by the fire having wildlife, commercial and other values may be necessary if evaluation indicates satisfactory natural replacement will not occur within an acceptable period of time.

Figure F-1. Results of seeding program in fire rehabilitation. Lower photo taken immediately after fire in 1966. Notice complete destruction of vegetation and exposure of topsoil. Upper photo-1972-fire rehabilitation seeding has provided a good ground cover and has stabilized the watershed. (Negatives available from DSC, Bob Martin)

C. Watershed Tillage

When a fire rehabilitation objective is established which identifies the need for soil stabilization beyond that possible with management or seeding, then watershed tillage practices are considered. The primary function is to achieve the objective of preventing further loss of site productive capacity by keeping soil in place and aiding vegetation establishment.

1. Furrowing and Trenching

Contour furrows/trenches are used mainly to prevent dry mantle floods and soil erosion that may result from high intensity rainstorms by providing storage for overland flow. Factors considered in the use of furrows/trenches on fire rehabilitation projects are: the extent to which a gully stream has developed, soil characteristics and depth, steepness of slope, nature and value of property to be protected, character and frequency of rainstorms and the extent to which the area may be stabilized by other treatments such as management or seeding to control runoff.

2. Ripping

The physical characteristics of the burn are carefully evaluated prior to the use of ripping practices in fire rehabilitation. Slopes should normally be less than 30 percent and the terrain generally free of sharp breaks which would prevent ripping on the contour. The burned area is carefully analyzed as to runoff potential by considering the soil (texture, depth, restrictive layer, etc.), slope and the intensity, amount of probability of high intensity storms which may be expected during the first or second year. If examination indicates that a ripping project is needed, the project is designed to provide for (1) ripping to sufficient depth (normally 15" or less) for transporting surface flow into the soil profile where it can be temporarily stored and (2) spacing of the rips to adequately increase infiltration to a rate necessary to handle the design storm intensity.

D. Water Control Structures

Water control structures such as detention dams, dikes and diversion dams are of assistance in fire rehabilitation projects to curb channel erosion and headcutting or for protection from flood and sediment damages. Adequate consideration is also given to land treatment and management practices upstream from the structures.

1. Detention Dams

When potential flood and sediment damage is high, detention dams are used independently of other practices or in conjunction with seeding or tillage practices for reducing damage potential. However, such structures are used only where the anticipated benefits offset installation costs. Detention dams often provide the most immediate and positive means for retarding floods and reducing sediment yield following a fire which destroys the protective ground cover on a watershed.

2. Dikes and Diversion Dams

These practices are not as effective in controlling floods and reducing sedimentation damages as are detention dams. However, they are used where the topography is suitable and such that there are no potential detention dam sites. Dikes and diversions are also used in conjunction with detention dams and land treatment practices to curb channel erosion and headcutting.

E. Salvage Logging

Commercial logging of timber damaged beyond recovery by fire is accomplished whenever possible. Although this practice may not be considered as rehabilitation from the standpoint of stabilizing a watershed or restoring wildlife habitat, it does allow for the harvest of timbers that would otherwise be wasted and reduces human hazards resulting from dead snags.

Fire Rehabilitation Seeding Standards

The following criteria will serve as a guide in the decision to seed burned areas:

A. Seed must be available in adequate quantities on short notice at a reasonable cost.

B. When broadcast seeding is necessary, the seed must sprout quickly, and grow well without seedbed preparation or covering. Normally, broadcast seeding will be confined to rough sites where drilling would be impractical. Broadcast seeding can usually be applied more economically by aircraft. Best results are obtained when the area is seeded immediately after the burn and before the first fall rains on areas of fine soils. An ash or loose surface soil should be present. Precipitation should be in excess of 14 inches annually. Where lesser amounts of moisture are expected, the seed should be covered by dragging a chain, harrow, etc. over the site where possible.

C. Seed varieties must be adapted to the site (climate, soil, topography, etc.). Vegetative monocultures should be avoided.

D. Best results can usually be obtained when seed is drilled. Recommended equipment is the rangeland drill or deep furrow drill. Where soil surface is firm or soddy, deep furrow drilling should be done.

E. Research results and past experience indicate good recovery of the wheatgrass composition of the original cover can be expected after a burn. Stipas and Poas seem to recover well. Idaho fescue usually suffers high mortality. The extent of recovery of other species will depend on intensity and the season of the burn.

F. Do not seed areas where less than 8 inches annual rainfall is expected unless augmented by contour furrowing or other water collecting treatments.

G. Drill on the contour where possible.

H. Be very selective in using legumes since establishment is usually short-lived. A need should exist before legumes are used in a seeding mixture.

I. For re-establishing timber stands on commercial forest lands, refer to BLM Manual 5710.

J. Mustard (Brassica nigra and B. juncea) has proven desirable under certain conditions on the Pacific Coast. However, mustard and Italian ryegrass (Lolium multiflorum) and/or soft chess (Bromus mollis) sown together develop cover superior to either plant alone. The reason for superiority of the mustardgrass mixture is found in the different growth habits of the forb and grass. In a mix, seed at a rate of not less than 3 lb./acre for each species.

K. The following vegetative species in various mixes are recommended for general use in western Oregon: tall fescue, creeping red or chewings fescue, highland bentgrass, white Dutch clover, birdsfoot trefoils.

L. Chamise wildfires should be treated for both short and long term conservation objectives of a combination of seeding annual and perennial grasses.

M. Chaparral areas should be carefully evaluated before long term objectives are applied.

N. Objective on areas with rainfall about 22 inches should be to establish a minimum of 45 percent vegetative cover with 20 percent to 30 percent litter.

O. Recommended seeding mixture for chaparral areas is as follows:

Blando brome (*Bromus mollis*) 1-3 lbs.
Harding (*Phalaris tuberosa* var. *stenoptera*) 1-2 lbs.
Perennial rye (*Lolium perenne*) 2-4 lbs. (Ukiah District only)
Smilo (*Oryzopsis miliacea*) 1-2 lbs.
Sherman Big Bluegrass (*poa ampla*) 1-2 lbs.

A mixture of 7-10 lbs./acre should be used.

PRESCRIBED BURNING -- GUIDES AND PLAN

General

Prescribed burning is the skillful application of fire to fuels in a specific area to accomplish certain management objectives. It requires professional knowledge and application of fire behavior principles as well as of the specific ecosystem alterations to be made in order to achieve the objectives -- the latter being usually an optimum compromise of the objectives of several resource disciplines.

All prescribed burning projects require specific approval before activation. They are prepared at field level for approval administratively within the Agency and, where applicable, by the local State Clearing House. Included in the Plan is a Smoke Management Plan (see Appendix H) which must also be approved by the State Clearing House and local Air Quality offices.

Preparing the Plan requires on-the-ground examinations and problem assessments. Topographic maps or aerial photos are necessary in order to competently lay out burning sequences, etc. Detailed outlines supplemented by lists of possible data or requirements for each topic are very desirable tools for planning and for a checklist to avoid oversights. (e.g., see "Prescribed Burning Guide", Region 1, USFS.)

Minimum plan requirements are listed below.

Plan Outline

I. BURN AREA PRESCRIPTION AND BURNING UNIT PLAN

  A. Objective(s)

  B. Prescription

  C. Unit or Area Description

  D. Desired Conditions

- E. Preburn Weather Information Needed
- F. District Priority
- G. Safety Precautions
- H. Public Information

II. UNIT FIRING PLAN

- A. Firing Methods and Sequence
- B. Burning Plan
- C. Planned Fire Line Breakdown
- D. Firing Plan - Including maps and overlays
- E. Expected Fire Behavior
- F. Manpower Needs and Assignments
- G. Equipment Needs and Assignments
- H. Financing
- I. Expected Smoke Behavior

III. SMOKE MANAGEMENT PLAN

(See separate plan in Appendix H)

IV. BRIEFING AT SITE PRIOR TO BURN

- A. On the ground briefing with all involved personnel, reviewing assignments, assuring complete understanding by all of every aspect of Plan.
- B. Review all equipment and support material (radios, etc.) to assure pre-fire readiness.

V. POST BURN ACTIVITIES

- A. Record weather, fuel measurements, and burn results.
- B. Critique burn operation and consider any factors which may be pertinent to subsequent burns.

C. Relay accuracy of spot weather forecasts to Weather Service.

D. Prepare prescribed fire smoke report.

E. Provide follow-up surveillance to burn area.

F. Check for tools, equipment and close project.

VI. PLAN APPROVALS, DATES

A. Administrative - all levels

B. State Clearing House

MODEL SMOKE MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR PRESCRIBED BURNING OF FOREST OR RANGE RESIDUE[1/] [2/]

Introduction

Land managers have moderate flexibility in determining the when, where, and how much of their burning and, with proper fuel preparation, they can usually await conditions favorable for both burning and smoke dispersion. Since burning operations require elaborate planning and at the time of execution involve considerable deployment of equipment and personnel, the burn must usually be scheduled in advance on the basis of predicted conditions described in the appropriate fire-weather forecasts.

In the event that all requirements for a prescribed burn are met except that timing and ignition methods are not as planned, the resulting fire may be considered a prescribed burn as long as it meets the prescription requirements. But as a prescribed fire, it must also meet prescribed fire smoke management requirements as set forth in this plan, specifically with respect to amount of smoke produced each day and how and where it may be expected to disperse.

[1/] Adapted from Pierovich, John M. et. al., 1975. Forest Residue Management Guidelines, USDA Forest Serv. Gen. Tech. Report PNW (in process)

[2/] Forest or range residue is considered to be any unwanted natural or rearranged living or dead woody or vegetative material that due to its nature or amount is a fire hazard or impediment to management objectives.

Objective

To minimize smoke resulting from burning of forest or range residues and to prevent it from being carried to or accumulating in areas sensitive to smoke. Smoke Sensitive Areas (SSA) are defined as heavy population or high use areas that are susceptible to excessive accumulation of atmospheric emissions because of climatic and topographic restraints on ventilation, such as in natural basins. SSA boundaries may be defined in terms of the confining terrain, distance from heavy population and a ceiling 2,000 feet above mean terrain level. SSA's are agreed upon jointly by state forestry and state air quality control agencies and participating resource management agencies.

Administration

Each field administrator issuing permission to burn under this plan will manage the prescribed burning on forest land in connection with the management of other aspects of the environment in order to maintain a satisfactory atmospheric environment. Accomplishment will entail a consideration of weather forecasts, acreages involved, amounts of material to be burned, evaluation of potential smoke column vent height, direction and speed of smoke drift, residual smoke, mixing characteristics of the atmosphere and distance from any SSA for each burning operation.

This plan provides a decision base for air quality considerations applicable to most prescribed burning situations. Exceptions may occur when, because of unusual conditions of wind and stability, dispersion within the suggested distances will not be adequate. Coordination beyond the plan will also be necessary to assure that plumes from separate fires within or outside an administrative area do not join to produce an unacceptable smoke condition.

Each cognizant administrator will evaluate downwind conditions prior to starting a burn. When he determines that visibility in a downwind SSA is already less than 11 miles or would likely become so with additional burning, or upon notice that air in the state, or adjacent state, or any portion thereof, is, or would likely become excessively affected by smoke, the administrator will require burning to be cancelled or terminated. Upon termination, any burning already underway will be completed as rapidly as possible and mopped up as soon as practical and no additional burning will be attempted until favorable conditions again occur.

When residue to be burned is within 100 miles of a downwind SSA, the specific provisions of the Forest Residue Burning Restrictions for Smoke Management relating to quotas and smoke drift apply as well as the Procedures for Minimizing Smoke Production and Impact. If the residue to be burned is beyond the 100-mile limit, only the more general Procedures for Minimizing Smoke Production and Impact apply.

Definitions

The following definitions and concepts apply to this system:

Air pollution -- The National Air Pollution Control Administration of the U. S. Department of HEW defined air pollution:

> "Air pollution exists when contaminants are present in such quantities and of such duration as may be, or may tend to be, injurious to human, plant, or animal life, or property, or which unreasonably interferes with the comfortable enjoyment of life, or property, or the conduct of business."

Smoke sensitive site -- smaller, special activity areas, such as major recreation sites, in which smoke is particularly objectionable. Here sensitivity to smoke may vary seasonally, by days of the week, with weather conditions, or may exist only for a special occasion.

Plume dispersal height or smoke venting height -- the level in the vicinity of the fire at which the smoke ceases to rise and moves with the wind and turbulence acting at that level. The smoke configuration changes from a convection column to a plume at this height.

Mixing level or mixed layer -- height or depth to which air heated at the ground during the warm part of the day will normally rise, hence the layer through which emissions from small surfaces sources may be expected to mix. The mixing level is the minimum height to which a substantial smoke convection column from forest or range prescribed burning may be expected to rise.

Residual smoke -- smoke produced after the intitial fire has passed through the fuel, usually from smoldering, incomplete combustion, and with insufficient heat or volume to produce appreciable rise.

Smoke plume -- smoke from a particular source but not in a well defined convective column, usually with neutral buoyancy and subject to motions of the air in which it lies. Depending on the fire, it may form at the ground or at the top of a smoke convection column.

Smoke plume moving away -- projected plume will not intersect or pass over an SSA boundary within 100 miles downwind from the fire.

Smoke plume moving toward -- projected plume will intersect or pass over an SSA boundary within 100 miles downwind from the fire, or plume is within 100 miles of SSA boundary and wind direction is indeterminate due to wind speed less than 5 mph at plume dispersal height.

Mixed or unstable layer -- characterized by turbulence and vertical motion, hence permitting convection through the layer and mixing of a plume throughout the layer. Indicated by decrease in temperature with elevation of at least 5^{0} F/1,000 ft.

Stable layer -- turbulence and vertical motion absent; impedes ascent of convection column and prevents descent of a smoke plume aloft to lower elevation. Great range in degree of stability is possible with the inversion the most pronounced--a layer through which temperature actually increases with height.

150,000-acre administrative area -- size of average ranger district or equivalent. Quotas by administrative area assures some lateral spacing of burning operations.

Daily quotas -- actual amounts of forest residue authorized to be consumed by fire-expressed as tonnage of available fuel which is expected to burn and which is less than total fuel. Quota is also expressed in equivalent amount of particulate produced by normal burning of given amount of available fuel, assuming an emission factor of 14 lb. of particulate per ton of forest residue burned. Emission factor varies with fuel and manner of burning.

Available fuel -- (separate estimation procedure needed taking into account total fuel loading, kinds of fuel, condition of fuel and manner of burning). A very rough approximation of total fuel for old-growth, west side fuel: low volume slash less than 75 T/A; medium volume slash 75 to 150 T/A; high volume slash over 150 T/A. Of this, 75 percent may be removed in a clean broadcast burn (average 50 percent) and 50% - 90% by pile burning, depending on what fuels piled and thoroughness of burn.

Test fire -- small pile or small area in a broadcast burn that is ignited to confirm the burning prescription and smoke dispersed forecast prior to starting the burning project.

No restriction -- limit imposed only by limitations of personnel and equipment to conduct a proper and safe burn and be prepared for mop up -- 30,000 T. per district rarely exceeded.

Chunk in -- pushing together the large pieces of fuel in a burning pile or concentration to maintain flaming combustion (instead of smoldering) -- speeds the burning process, cleans up the residue and lessens the chance of holdover fire.

Mop up -- extinguishing fire including search for and extinguishing of buried and smoldering fire remnants.

Atmospheric stability and instability and other meteorological concepts upon which this smoke management plan is based are explained in Fire Weather 1970, by Schroeder and Buck, USDA, Forest Service, Agric. Handbook 360, 229 pp.

Forest Residue Burning Restrictions for Smoke Management

Most of the details of residue burning restrictions for smoke management are covered in Table 1. Briefly, these restrictions provide for the following:

> Only limited burning is permitted when smoke will disperse in air that is moving toward a Smoke Sensitive Area within 100 miles. No burning will be permitted if the smoke will be confined to elevations below the area's specified ceiling when the burn is less than 10 miles from the sensitive area. Limited burning is permitted if the smoke will be dispersed through a deep layer extending above the SSA ceiling. Only under special conditions will unlimited burning be permitted: (1) when the smoke will blow directly away from an SSA; (2) if toward, when the nearest such area is no closer than 100 miles downwind; and (3) when the smoke rises into the base of a precipitating cloud system.

Other details and explanation of smoke management provisions are as follows:

Visibility. No burning will be permitted (no new starts) when the downwind visual range at the surface is less than 11 miles, unless such obstruction is produced by fog, precipitation or water droplet cloud. Ten miles is equivalent approximately to the effect of suspended particulate in the 75 micrograms per cubic meter. (Air Quality Criteria for Particulate, HEW 1969, p. 3-19) - the National Ambient Air Quality Standard for Suspended Particulate which is given as the maximum allowable annual geometric mean. A 24-hour average concentration of 260 micrograms per

TABLE 1. SUMMARY OF FOREST AND RANGE RESIDUE BURNING RESTRICTIONS FOR SMOKE MANAGEMENT

Dispersion conditions over Smoke Sensitive Area (SSA) and direction of drift of smoke plume	Daily quotas[1] of forest fuels that may be consumed in each 150,000 acre administrative area. (or quotas of particulate from burning these amount--in parentheses)[2]			
	I More than 60 miles	II 30-60 miles	III 10-30 miles	IV Less than 10 miles
	Tons			
1. Smoke plume directly into precipitating cloud system[3]	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction
2. Smoke plume moving away from SSA at 5 mph or more	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction
3. Smoke plume moving toward SSA[4]				
a. Plume above stable layer and above SSA ceiling (day and night)	36,000 (252)	18,000 (126)	9,000 (63)	6,000 (42)
b. Plume mixed through deep layer over SSA. Mixing level more than 1,000 feet above SSA ceiling (day only)	18,000 (126)	9,000 (63)	4,500 (31.5)	3,000 (21)
c. Plume below SSA ceiling (day only)	9,000 (63)	3,000 (21)	1,500 (10.5) Mop up any acreage in excess and smoldering residual fire.[5]	No. new fires. Chunk-in ongoing fires. Burn up remaining fuel as rapidly as possible, and mop up residual fire.[5]

---

[1] Except as noted, half of quota may also be burned at night in addition to daytime total, where conditions are otherwise favorable. Total quota for a 1 million acre administrative area may not exceed 150,000 tons per day under condition 3 (smoke toward SSA).

[2] Based on emission factor of 14 lb. of particulate from 1 ton of forest fuel (Darley). Burning quotas may be based on particulate emission (factors) for the given fuel complex and burning method.

[3] No burning when visibility (visual range) is less than 11 miles except under condition 1.

[4] Amounts decrease for wind speeds slower than 16 mph at plume dispersal height: 10-15 mph, 75 percent of quota; 1-9 mph, 50 percent; under 5 mph, 25 percent. Plume dispersal winds less than 5 mph are considered too light to be of dependable direction, hence are assumed to be toward SSA.

[5] Due to deterioration of earlier, more favorable conditions.

cubic meter, or a visual range of approximately 3.5 miles, is not to be exceeded more than once a year. The intent of the Smoke Management Plan is to not permit the visual range to become less than 10 miles at any time in smoke sensitive areas due to the prescribed burning of forest residues.

Changes after firing. Should conditions deteriorate while burning is in progress, plans for burning should be revised downward to correspond to amounts permissible under the new conditions. Where no burning would be permitted under the revised classification, on-going burns should be completed quickly and, where practical and safe, fuels chunked in to permit more rapid burning.

Liaison with air pollution control officials. Regional and state air pollution control agencies must be kept informed of burn plans, operations and current orders. They receive inquiries about visible smoke plumes and should be kept up-to-date.

Fire-weather forecasts. Each forest or state district or burning agency will maintain close contact with the fire-weather forecaster of the National Weather Service, to relay weather data pertinent to smoke and fire behavior to the burning agency and to arrange for special weather observations and forecasts as needed.

Precipitating cloud system. The particulate component of smoke that actually disperses within a precipitating cloud system is likely to become condensation nuclei and be subjected to washout mechanisms that may remove most of it in a short time. A layer of fog or stratus from which drizzle is falling does not qualify.

Optimum dispersal winds. Wind speeds of more than 15 mph have been assumed to provide the standard dilution of the smoke plume at venting height. Less burning is permitted in slower winds, which provide less dilution and slower transport of the plume.

Smoke plumes aloft. Smoke plumes aloft that are completely separated from surface air by a stable layer do not detract from air quality at the surface and may not be readily distinguishable from normal water droplet or ice crystal clouds. Nevertheless, some limitations are imposed when such clouds are expected to pass over an SSA.

Procedures for Minimizing Smoke Production and Impact

The following are some of the practices which will assist in minimizing the impact of smoke emissions:

1. Weather. Prior to ignition of the test fire, both the latest fire-weather forecast and the observed conditions at the site must indicate that smoke dispersal as well as fire behavior conditions are favorable. The test fire will help to confirm this.

2. Time of ignition. Selection of the correct time to burn will help to minimize the amount, dispersal and visibility of resulting smoke.

   a. Where burning can be completed in less than 12 hours, ignition should be scheduled, as in the early morning, to take advantage of the heated mixed layer above the surface during the day. Smoke columns normally rise higher, and turbulent dispersion of smoke is more rapid during the warm part of the day. However, morning ignition will not be permitted if fire-danger indexes are predicted to rise above safe levels at any time during the burn-out period.

b. If burning requires more than 12 hours, such that considerable smoldering remnants may produce residual smoke following the main burn, ignition at night may minimize drift smoke accumulation. This is effective for heavy fuel, higher elevation burns above the usual valley bottom inversions. The more stable night air is compensated for by the strong convective-column phase of the burn. By the time the residual burning stage is reached, daytime heating may be only a short time away so that the low-energy stage of the burn is compensated for by the better daytime dispersion conditions.

3. Condition of fuel. Burning of cured or well dried material is favored as consistent with safety and burning objectives, because it burns hotter, hence will produce less visible emission and will produce a stronger convective column reaching greater heights.

4. Rapid firing. The objective is to develop maximum heat energy per unit time in order to vent the smoke at the highest elevation possible. Prescribed burns should be fired as rapidly as safety and the objectives of the burn will permit.

5. Preparation of fuel. To achieve maximum flexibility in selection of time of burning and the optimum smoke dispersion conditions, it is often desirable to prepare suitable fuels for burning during the wet season. This may be done by piling or windrowing and covering with plastic to keep the fuel dry through the early fall rains. Fuel piled without soil will burn more efficiently under a much greater variety of weather conditions than fuel requiring broadcast burning. Properly cured, clean piles will also produce less holdover fire and smoldering smoke.

6. Chunking-in. This practice is desirable to reduce the total volume of smoke, shorten mop up and patrol time and prevent holdover fires. When conditions change after burning has been started, such that burning operations would be restricted or cancelled, chunking-in will normally produce less smoke for shorter periods than mop up work.

7. Minimum particulate. Where the nature of the fire precludes a hot fire, as in light underburning, a backing fire is more efficient and will produce only a fraction of the particulate of a head fire. Without wind, centerfiring will produce a backing fire into the indraft.

Soil Stability Class

I. Soil Wetness

(a) Seeps, springs and other areas where water is on top of the soil surface.
(b) Presence of hydrophytes. The hydrophytes must be defined locally.
(c) Meadows.
(d) Black soils. These types of soils must be defined locally as having high water tables, as many black soils are well drained.
(e) Soils that are gleyed and/or mottled.
(f) Small ponds of water located adjacent to an old slump escarpment (sag ponds).

Soil wetness is very important because water tends to "float" the soil mantle just as a person "floats" in a swimming pool. The soil mantle slides out of a wet area if a road cut removes the support just as water runs out of a swimming pool if a side is removed.

II. Areas Where Consolidated Bedrock is More Than Ten Feet Below the Soil Surface

(a) Fault Zones - Consolidated bedrock is ground and fractured by the faulting action.
(b) Pockets of colluvium that have accumulated from previous erosion processes.
(c) Any type of rock that is composed of hard fragments cemented by a finer grained matrix and the matrix is weathering into clay minerals.

(Examples of this situation would be conglomerates, agglomerates, tuffs, and breccias where the matrix has undergone considerable weathering.)

(d) Areas where the rock has weathered to great depths into soft materials that can be dug with a shovel.

Consolidated, continuous bedrock close to the surface provides a sound foundation to support the soil mantle above an area of disturbance. Fractured weather or deep bedrock does not provide support once the area is disturbed. Consequently, the soil mantle slides down the hillside. Cohesionless types of soil pose the highest hazard for landsliding on areas described in this category.

III. Areas Where the Soil Mantle is Presently Sliding

(a) Tension cracks. This is where the soil mantle has cracked open as soil moves downhill away from soil that has stayed in place.

(b) Hummocky hillsides. Usually occurs in plastic soils that are slowly moving downhill.

(c) "Jackstrawed" or "crazy" trees. Trees tilted at different angles while having a straight trunk denotes very recent soil movement.

(d) Curved tree butts. The soil mantle has slid slowly during the life time of the tree.

(e) Depressions resulting from the withdrawal of material downslope.

Present sliding, as denoted by above clues, will be accelerated if the soil mantle is disturbed. Most of the time, clues listed under I and II will be found in conjunction of those listed in III.

The headwalls of drainages are usually oversteened by natural erosion processes. These areas are very prone to mass soil wasting if they are disturbed. The headwall is that portion of a stream draw which has a very sharp increase in slope gradient from the toe of the mountain to the ridge top or saddle.

Soil Classifications

Soil Classification is the systematic arrangement of soils into classes in one or more categories or levels of classification for a specific objective. Broad groupings are made on the basis of general characteristics and subdivisions on the basis of more detailed differences in specific properties.

Order is the category at the highest level of generalization in the soil classification system. The properties selected to distinguish the orders are reflections of the degree of horizon (soil layer) development and the kinds of horizons present. The 10 orders are:

Alfisols - Soils with gray to brown surface layers that contain a good supply of bases and subsoils high in clay. These soils form primarily under forest or savannah vegetation with climates of slight to pronounced seasonal moisture deficit.

Aridisols (L. Aridus, Dry) - Soils characteristic of dry places with natural horizons low in organic matter and a definite moisture deficiency. They have light colored surface soils with distinct structure. These soils have developed in arid regions under sparse shrub vegetation.

Entisols (Recent Soils) - Soils which have no distinguishable natural horizons. They may be found in practically all climate regions on recent geomorphic surfaces, either on steep slopes that are undergoing active erosion or on fans and flood plains where the recently eroded materials are deposited.

Histosols (Gk. Histos, Tissue) - Soil formed from organic soil materials.

Inceptisols (L. Inceptum, Beginning) - Soils that are usually moist with natural horizons, thought to form rather quickly from altered parent materials, but not by accumulation. Generally, soil development is not evident from the soil-forming processes. These soils are found under deciduous forests in temperate humid regions and also under wet or poorly drained conditions.

Mollisols (L. Mollis, Soft) - Soils characterized by nearly black, organic-rich surface horizons with high natural fertility. These soils have an accumulation of relatively large amounts of organic matter and have good structural properties. These soils are formed in a cool sub-humid to a warm, semiarid climate under varying vegetative types including deciduous forests, grasslands, halophytic plants, etc.

Oxisols (F. Oxide, Oxide) - Soils of tropical and subtropical regions characterized by extreme weathering which results in an accumulation of inactive clays, oxides or iron and aluminum and quartz. These soils are formed under humid, forested conditions.

Spodosols (GK. Spodos, Wood Ash) - Soils with subsurface horizons containing an accumulation of organic matter and compounds of aluminum and iron. These soils are formed in acid coarse-textured materials in humid and cool or temperate climates under coniferous or mixed coniferous and deciduous forests.

Utisols (L. Ultimus, Last) - Soils of humid tropical areas characterized by subsurface horizons of clay accumulation or a cemented layer (fragipan). They are low in natural fertility due to a loss of bases through weathering and removal by leaching. These soils formed under wet-dry seasons and tropical forest vegetation.

Vertisols (L. Verto, Turn) - Clayey soils with high shrink-swell potential that have wide, deep cracks when dry. These soils have developed under widely varying climatic conditions, but usually with altering wet and dry seasons.

A comparison of the new soil classification system with approximate equivalents of the old system follows:

New (Order)	Old (Great Soil Groups)
1. Alfisols	Gray Brown Podzolic, Gray Wooded Soil, Non-Calcic Brown soils, Degraded Chernozem, and associated Planosols and some Half-Bog soils--Zonal order
2. Aridisols	Desert, Reddish Desert, Sierozem, Solonchak, some Brown and Reddish-Brown soils, and associated Solonetz--Zonal and Intrazonal orders
3. Entisols	Lithosols, Regosols and Alluvial soils with some Low-Humic Gley soils--Azonal and Intrazonal orders.
4. Histosols	Bog soils--Interzonal order
5. Inceptisols	Ando, Sol Brun Acide, some Brown Forest, Low-Humic Gley, and Humic Gley Soils--Zonal and Intrazonal orders.
6. Mollisols	Chestnut, Chernozem, Brunizem (Prairie, Renzina, some Brown, Brown Forest, and associated Solonetz and Humic Gley soils--Zonal and Intrazonal orders.

7. Oxisols	Laterite soils, Latosols--Zonal order
8. Spodosols	Podzols, Brown Podzolic soils, and Groundwater Podzols--Zonal and Intrazonal orders
9. Ultisols	Red Yellow Podzolic soils, Reddish-Brown Lateritic soils, and associated Planosols and Half-Bog soils--Zonal and Intrazonal orders
10. Vertisols	Grumusols (dark clay soils)--Intrazonal order

DESCRIPTION OF CHARACTERISTIC SOIL SERIES IN MAJOR BIOMES

Tables have been prepared for each biome or biological community except the subtropic community to assist those wishing to prepare more detailed analyses on specific areas. Some characteristics, uses, and limitations are given for each of the listed soil series. Specific items for each soil such as the unified classification of the subsoils for engineering uses and hydrologic groups are given as well as general information. Thus, the information may be used by engineers, hydrologists, and soil scientists as well as the general public to gain some knowledge of the soils. The listed soil series are not inclusive. They occur extensively in the region under which they are identified, but they must be viewed as examples. A detailed, on-site soil survey must be made before the total soil resource is known. More detailed information of the soils characteristics and limitations may be obtained from the soil survey reports listed in the selected references.

Definitions of Table Headings

Soil Name

Each soil series in the United States is given a name. The name identifies a specific soil just as names identify people. Soil names are correlated so that any one name applies only to a specific soil, regardless of occurrence.

Unified Classification (UC)

This is one of the two systems that classify soil material for engineering uses.

The unified soil classification system identifies soils according to their textural and plasticity qualities, and their grouping with respect to their performance as engineering construction materials. Soil materials are divided into 15 classes; eight classes are for coarse-grained material, six classes are for fine-grained material, and one class is for highly organic material. Soils that have characteristics of two classes are designated by symbols for both classes; for example, CL or ML. Each class is identified by a letter symbol. GP identifies poorly graded level and mixtures of gravel and sand with little or no fines. Soils in class SM are silty sands and mixtures of sand and silt. Soils in class ML are inorganic silts of low liquid limit that are mixed with sand and clay. Soils that are predominantly silts and clays that have a low liquid limit are in class CL. The symbol CH identifies inorganic clays that have a high liquid limit and plasticity.

The first letter of the class symbol indicates the grain size, for example, G stands for gravel, S for sand, M for silt, C for clay, and O for organic. The odifying terms indicated by second letter are P for poorly graded, W for well graded, M for silty, and C for clayey. The symbol L stands for low liquid limit and H for high liquid limit.

Available Water Capacity (AWC)

Available water capacity refers to the total quantity of water available for plant growth that is stored in the effective root zone of the upper 60 inches of the soil profile at field capacity. It is largely dependent upon the effective depth, texture, structure, porosity, organic matter content, and coarse fragment content. In general, profiles that contain 50 percent coarse fragments by volume will only have one-half the moisture holding capacity of a comparable soil that is free of coarse fragments.

Hydrologic Groups (HG)

Soils are placed in hydrologic groups according to their potential to yield run-off. This information is used in watershed planning. Various hydrologic groups range from (A), that shed almost no precipitation to (D), that shed nearly all the precipitation.

A - Very deep, coarse and moderately coarse textured soils that transmit water through their profile and substratum at a high rate. These soils have the lowest run-off potential.

B - Medium to fine-textured, moderately deep to very deep soils having a moderate rate of water transmission through the profile.

C - Fine-textured, deep and very deep soils that have a slow rate of water transmission through the subsoil.

D - Fine-textured, deep soils, and impervious material exposed or covered by a thin mantle of soil. These soils have the highest run-off potential.

Relief

Relief is expressed as a range in the slope percentage that each soil may have.

Appendix K. Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Northern Temperate Grassland

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
WILLIAMS	Montana Dawson Co.	CL	12	B	1-8	Crops	Cropland
Limitations - Slight to moderate erosion hazard.							
CHERRY	Montana Dawson Co.	CL	10-14	C	0-25	Crops Grasses	Cropland Rangeland
Limitations - Slight to moderate erosion hazard, poor road fill material.							
FARGO	Montana, Judith, Basin Area	CH	--	D	0-3	Sedges & Rushes	Pasture
Limitations - Poorly chained, calcareous clays, high water table, severe compaction hazard, slight erosion hazard, soil management is very difficult.							
SLICKSPOTS	Sedwick Co. Colorado	ML	2-4	B	0-5	Winter Grains	Dryland farming
Limitations - Pan exists of about 15 inches, severe erosion hazard.							
DUNE LAND	Morgan Co. Colorado	SP	3-6	A	5-25	Sparse Grass	Limited grazing
Limitations - Dunes are actively blowing, very severe wind erosion hazard.							

Appendix K (Northern Temperate Grassland Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
BAINVILLE	Sterrk Co. N. Dakota	CL	2	C	3-40	Crops & Grass	Cropland, rangeland
Limitations -	Severe wind and water erosion hazard, over clayey shale, low natural fertility.						
CRETE #1	Nebraska	CH	9-12	-	0-5	Row crops, hay & pasture short & reed grasses	Range, farming
Limitations -	Moderate erosion hazard, high in fertility, high shrink-swell potential.						
TILLMAN #2	Texas	CL, CH	9-12	-	1-3	Short grasses small grains	Range cultivated crops
Limitations -	High natural fertility, droughty, slight erosion hazard.						
BADLAND #2	Texas	--	--	D	2-12 to 20-75	Some short grasses	--
Limitations -	This land supports little vegetation. It is thoroughly dissected by large gullies and by bald ridges and knobs; high erosion hazard.						
PORT #3	Oklahoma	ML. CL	6-9	C	nearly level	Small grains hay, orchards, pasture	Farming
Limitations -	Flood plain, calcareous substratum, thick surface layers.						

Appendix K (Northern Temperate Grassland Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
RICHFIELD #4	Kansas	CL, CH	9-12	C	3	Small grains, mature grasses	Dry farming, range

Limitations - Table land, well drained, susceptible to wind and water erosion, natural fertility is high.

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Gage County, Nebraska, 76 pp, Illustrated 1964.

#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Foard County, Texas, 71 pp, Illustrated 1964.

#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Comanche County, Oklahoma, 58 pp, Illustrated 1967.

#4 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Wichita County, Kansas, 63 pp, Illustrated 1965.

Appendix K

Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Southern Temperate Grassland

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
REEVES #2	Texas	CL	3-6	C	0-20	Desert shrub, salt tolerant grasses	Range
Limitations - Salinity, high corrosion potential, calcareous outwash, gypsum in the subsoil.							
BREWSTER #3	Texas	GC, GM	0-3	D	6-60	Short grasses, mid grasses, desert shrub	Range wildlife, recreation
Limitations - Bedrock within 20 inches, stony.							
GOLIAD #3	Texas	CL	3-6	C	0-12	Short and mid grasses	Range, crops, wildlife
Limitations - High shrink-swell potential, severe building foundations problems, high corrosion potential, shallow to moderate depths over caliche.							
ECTOR #2	Texas	CL	0-3	D	0-3	Short & mid grasses	Range, crops, wildlife, recreation
Limitations - Bedrock or cemented caliche within 20 inch depth, stoniness, moderate, shrink-swell potential, high erosion hazard.							

Department of Ag. Communications, Texas A&M University, General Soil Map of Texas.
#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Howard County, Texas, 68 pp, Illustrated 1969.
#3 - USDA, SCS, Unpublished Soil Descriptions.

Appendix K

Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Palouse Prairie Grassland

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
CONDON	Oregon	CL	3-6	C	0-35	bb wheat, I fescue	Range, dry farmland
Limitations - Wind erosion hazard is medium to high.							
WALLA WALLA #1	Oregon	CL	6-9	B	0-35	bb wheat, I fescue	Range, dry farmland
Limitations - Wind erosion hazard is medium to high.							
WUNTHERN #1	Oregon	SM, ML	6-9	C	35-70	Idahofescue	Range
Limitations - Somewhat excessively drained, stony or rock north facing soil erosion hazard is severe, fertility is moderate.							
LICKSKILLET #1	Oregon	CL	2-5	D	7-70	bb wheat	Range
Limitations - Very to extremely stony, south facing uplands, natural fertility is low.							
QUINCY #2	Washington	SP	0-3	A	0-30	Sagebrush, grassland	Range
Limitations - Excessively drained soils in dunes, severe wind erosion hazard.							

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Sherman County, Oregon, pp 104, Illustrated 1964.
#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Benton County, Washington, pp 72, 1971.

Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the California Prairie Grassland

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
MERCED	California	CH, ML	12+	C/D	0-3	Crop plants, annual grasses	Row crops
Limitations -	Fine textured alluvium, most has been made land, alkaline and saline, pumping is done to remove water from soil.						
FRESNO	California	ML, CL	12+	C/D	0-3	Natural range	Field crops, irrigated pasture
Limitations -	Sandy alluvium, saline-alkalin, difficult to establish vegetative cover, high water table.						
HANFORD	California	ML, SM	9-12	B	0-3	Vegetable crops, etc.	Cultivated, irrigated
Limitations -	Sandy alluvium, water table 30-75 feet.						
POSITAS	California	CH	1-4	D	0-30	Annual grasses and forbs	Pasture or range
Limitations -	Gravelly, cobbly alluvium, water supplies are short, high erosion hazard.						

(California Prairie Grassland Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
VISTA	California	SM	1-4	C	3-70	Annual grasses and forbs	Range

Limitations - Shallow to moderately deep upland soils, water supply is limited, high erosion hazard.

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
CIBO	California	CH	5-8	D	3-70	Annual grasses and forbs	Range

Limitations - Clayey soils over igneous rock outcrops are common, water sources are limited.

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
AUBERRY	California	SC	5-8	D	3-70	Trees, grasses, and shrubs	Range, dry farmed, grain

Limitations - Moderately coarse textured soils on upper foothills, rock outcrops are common, erosion is moderate to severe.

USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Eastern Fresno Area, California, pp 323, 1971.

Appendix K

Some Characteristics, Uses, and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Hot Desert

<table>
<tr><th>Soil Name</th><th>Location</th><th>Unified Classification</th><th>Available Water Capacity (inches)</th><th>Hydrologic Group</th><th>Relief (%)</th><th>Vegetation</th><th>Major Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>ANTHONY #1</td><td>Arizona</td><td>SM</td><td>9-12</td><td>-</td><td>0-5</td><td>Annual grasses, shrubs and cacti</td><td>Range, irrigated crops, urban development</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - Alkaline and calcareous throughout, moderately rapid permeability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MOHAVE #1</td><td>Arizona</td><td>CL</td><td>9-11</td><td>-</td><td>0-3</td><td>Annual grasses, desert shrubs</td><td>Desert range, irrigated crops, urban development, wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - Calcareous throughout.</td></tr>
<tr><td>CAIRE #2</td><td>Arizona</td><td>SM</td><td>0-3</td><td>-</td><td>0-30</td><td>Annual grasses, desert shrubs</td><td>Range, wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - Calcareous, gravelly over a hardpan, natural fertility is low.</td></tr>
</table>

Appendix K (Hot Desert Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
CIONEHA #3	California	SM, GM	0-3	C	5-30	Annual grasses, small grains	Range, dryland farming, pasture, homesites
Limitations -	Somewhat excessively drained upland soils, high erosion hazard, tapid permeability.						
CHINO #3	California	CL	9-11	B-C	0-2	Annual grasses, weeds, small grains, grasses and legumes	Hay, pasture, dryland grain, homesites
Limitations -	Somewhat poorly drained to poorly drained floodplains, saline-alkali soils, slight erosion hazard, can be drained to improve salt content.						
ROCKLAND #3	California	--	0-3	D	15-75	Annual grasses,	Wildlife
Limitations -	Granite boulders and rock outcrops that cover 35 to 60 percent or more of the surface, high erosion hazard.						

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Tucson-Avra Valley Area, Arizona, pp 70, Illustrated, 1972.
#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Safford Area, Arizona, pp 57, Illustrated, 1970.
#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Western Riverside Area, California, pp 159, Illustrated, 1971.

Appendix K (Continued)

Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Cold Desert

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
BILLINGS	Utah	ML	6-10	C	0-10	Range, irrigated crops and grasses	Range, cropland
KENILWORTH	Utah	SM	3-5	B	0-20	Juniper-pinon	Range
Limitations - Shallow, droughty, calcareous, reseeding hazard, moderate erosion hazard, stony soil.							
JEKLEY	New Mexico	CL	2-6	C	3-40	Pine-grass	Forest, range
Limitations - Moderate to severe erosion hazard, shallow soil, cold soil temperatures, high fertility.							
HUMBOLT #1	Nevada	MH	9-12	D	0-3	Salt tolerant shrubs and grasses, irrigated crops	Irrigated crops
Limitations - Imperfectly drained along streams and shallow lakes, saline and alkali, slight erosion hazard.							

Appendix K (Cold Desert Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
QUINCY #1	Nevada	SP	0-3	A	3-12	Greasewood, rabbit brush, Indian grass	Range, some vegetation
Limitations - Excessively drained, wind blows verticals, rapid infiltration, natural fertility very low, severe erosion hazard, wind and water.							
PLACERITOS #1	Nevada	ML	9-12	C	0-3	Greasewood, saltbrush	Range, irrigated crops
Limitations - Imperfectly drained in alluvium, saline-alkali sacts, water table four to six feet, slight erosion hazard.							
VOLTAIRE #2	Nevada	CH, MH	9-12	D	0-3	Saltgrass, sedges, fescue	Pasture, hay, and grains
Limitations - Poorly drained in clay alluvium, fluctuating water table 20 to 36 inches, natural fertility is high.							
MOTTSVILLE	Nevada	SW, SM	3-6	A	3-45	Big sage, bitterbrush	Grazing
Limitations - Excessively drained, alluvial faces, erosion hazard slight to moderate, susceptible to wind erosion, natural fertility is low.							

<table>
<tr><th>Soil Name</th><th>Location</th><th>Unified Classification</th><th>Available Water Capaicty (inches)</th><th>Hydrologic Group</th><th>Relief (%)</th><th>Vegetation</th><th>Major Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>BAKEOVEN #3</td><td>Idaho</td><td>ML,
CL</td><td>0-3</td><td>D</td><td>0-80</td><td>Big sage, sandberg bluegrass</td><td>Grazing</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - Very shallow sacts on basalt, erosion hazard severe on steeper slopes, very strong throughout.</td></tr>
<tr><td>GEM #3</td><td>Idaho</td><td>CH,
MH</td><td>6-9</td><td>C</td><td>0-60</td><td>Big sage, bb wheat</td><td>Dryfarmed,
irrigated,
range</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - CaCo$_3$ below 15 feet, slight to severe erosion hazard.</td></tr>
<tr><td>DESCHUTES #4</td><td>Oregon</td><td>SM</td><td>3-6</td><td>C</td><td>0-20</td><td>Juniper, grassland</td><td>Range,
irrigation,
homesites</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - Somewhat excessively drained, high terraces, wind erosion is high, natural fertility is low.</td></tr>
<tr><td>DAY #4</td><td>Oregon</td><td>CH</td><td>3-6</td><td>D</td><td>6-40</td><td>Big sage, bb wheat</td><td>Range</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Limitations - High shrink-swell, cracks when dry, high water erosion hazard.</td></tr>
</table>

Appendix K (Cold Desert Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
SALISBURY #4	Oregon	CL	3-6	D	0-20	Big sage, Idaho fescue, bb wheat	Range dry farmed, small grains

Limitations - Well drained soils with silic-cemented pan, stony soils.

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Lovelock Area, Nevada, pp 87, Illustrated, 1965.

#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Carson Valley Area, Nevada, pp 129, Illustrated, 1971.

#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Gem County, Idaho, pp 188, Illustrated, 1965.

#4 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Prineville Area, Oregon, pp 89, Illustrated, 1966.

Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Woodland-Bushland Biome

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
ARNOLD #1	California	SP, SM	3-5	A	9-50	Annual grasses and shrubs	Range
Limitations -	Somewhat excessively drained sandy soils over soft sandstone, erosion hazard is moderate to severe, low fertility.						
CAMARILLO #1	California	SM	7-9	C	0-2	Salt tolerant grasses and shrubs	Vegetables, lemons, & homesites
Limitations -	Poorly drained sandy soils, where not drained water table is at two feet, subject to flooding, high fertility.						
DIABLO #1	California	CL	6-9	D	9-50	Annual grasses and oak	Range
Limitations -	Well drained clays in shale uplands, erosion hazard moderate to severe, high shrink-swell potential.						
GAVIOTA #1	California	SM	0.5-1	D	15-50	Annual grasses, brush and oaks	Range
Limitations -	Shallow well drained sandy soils over sandstone, erosion hazard is moderate to severe. Inherent fertility is low.						

Appendix K (Woodland-Bushland Biome Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
GAZOS #1	California	GM	3-6	C	15-75	Brush and annual grasses	Range and homesites
Limitations - Silty soils over fractured shale, erosion hazard is severe, natural fertility is high.							
LOS OSOS #1	California	CL	4-8	C	9-50	Annual grasses, forbs, birch, oak	Range, citrus field crops, homesites
Limitations - Clayey soils over shale, erosion hazard is severe, natural fertility is high.							
MOCHO #1	California	ML, CL	8-10	B/C	0-9	Annual grasses, forbs	Row crops, orchards, field crops, homesites
Limitations - Well drained loams on fans, no erosion hazard, fertility is medium.							

Appendix K (Woodland-Bushland Biome Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
SALINAS #1	California	CL, ML	10-11	C	0-9	Annual grasses, forbs	Row crops, field crops, orchards, range, homesites
Limitations - Clayey soils on plains, no erosion hazard, high in fertility.							
SANTA LUCIA #1	California	GC	3-5	C	15-75	Annual grasses, and brush	Orchards, range, homesites
Limitations - Shaley uplands, erosion hazard is moderate to severe. Inherent fertility is moderate.							
TULLHOWSE #2	California	SM	1-2	D	5-65	Scrub oak, brush and annual grasses	Range recreation
Limitations - Excessively drained shallow sandy soils from granite, erosion hazard moderate to high, fertility is low.							

Appendix K (Woodland-Bushland Biome Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
LAS POSAS #2	California	CH	4-6	C	2-65	Chaparral-oak, annual grasses	Field crops, row crops, orchards, range

Limitations - Sandy soils from basic igneous rocks, fertility is medium, erosion hazard is high to very high.

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
BOOMER #2	California	CL	7-10	B	15-75	Conifer forest, deciduous	Wood products

Limitations - Loams over metamophosed uplands, erosion hazard is very high, fertility is moderate.

#1 - USDA, SCS. Soil Survey, Ventura Area, California, pp 148, Illustrated, 1970.

#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, San Diego Area, California, Draft Manuscript, Portland, Oregon.

Appendix K

Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Montane Coniferous Forest

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
JUGHANDLE #1	Idaho	GM	6-9	B	12-65	Conifer forest, forage	Wood products, summer range
Limitations - Somewhat excessively drained, erosion hazard is severe to very severe, fertility is moderate to low.							
KLICKER #1	Idaho	GC	6-9	C	12-65	Conifer forest, forage	Wood products, summer range
Limitations - Erosion hazard severe to very severe, moderate fertility.							
MARIPOSA #2	California	ML, CL	0-3	C	9-85	Conifer forest	Wood products, range
Limitations - Shallow, rocky uplands, erosion hazard is very severe.							
JOSEPHINE #2	California	ML	6-9	B	3-71	Conifer forest, hardwood, brush	Wood products, range
Limitations - Gravelly or rocky soils, fertility is moderate, erosion hazard is moderate to severe.							

Appendix K (Woodland-Bushland Biome Continued)

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
AUBURN #2	California	ML, CL	3-6	C	3-71	Grass, oak, brush	Range, dry farmed, hay and grain
Limitations - Shallow foothills, moderate fertility, erosion hazard is moderate to very severe.							
WOODSIDE #3	Montana	SM, ML	3-6	A	5-35	Conifer forest	Wood products
Limitations - Somewhat excessively drained footslopes and terminal moraines, low natural fertility, erosion hazard is high.							
SLOCUM #3	Montana	ML	9-12	B	0-3	Deciduous forest and grasses	Pasture, hay, small grains
Limitations - Imperfectly to moderately well drained fans and terraces, most areas are sub-irrigated. Imperfectly drained areas are saline.							
STEEUM #4	Colorado	ML	0-3	D	0-70	Pinon-juniper, grasses	Range, watershed
Limitations - Erosion hazard is very high, rock outcrops are common, 20 to 40 percent gravel content, moderately low fertility, droughty soils.							

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
BROLLIAS #5	Arizona	CH	6-9	-	0-30	Pine-grass	Wood products, summer range
Limitations - Hilly uplands, 20 to 60 percent surface stones and cobbles, erosion hazard low.							
SPUNGELVILLA #5	Arizona	CH	6-9	D	0-20	Pine-juniper	Range
Limitations - High shrink-swell potential, cracks when dry, 30 to 50 percent surface stones, erosion hazard is moderate.							
ROCKSLIDES #6	Colorado	GP	--	A	10-100	Spruce, alpine fields, mostly barren	Recreation
Limitations - Accumulations of loam rocks from landslides, some slides are stable, some slides near faces of cliffs are unstable, no erosion hazard, springs are common at the toe slope.							

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Kooskia Area, Idaho, pp 96, Illustrated, 1971.
#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Amador Area, California, pp 160, Illustrated, 1965.
#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Bitterroot Valley Area, Montana, pp 128, Illustrated, 1959.
#4 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Trout Creek Watershed, Colorado, pp 48, Illustrated, 1961.
#5 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Beaver Creek Area, Arizona, pp 75, Illustrated, 1967.
#6 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Fraser Alpine Area, Colorado, pp 47, Illustrated, 1962.

Appendix K

Some Charactertistics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in the Northwest Coastal Coniferous Forest

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
HUGO #1	California	SC	4-8	B	6-60	Conifer forests, shrubs, grasses, and forbs	Forestry
Limitations - Very gravelly soils, very high erosion hazard.							
CLEAR LAKE #1	California	CH	8-10	D	0-3	Grasses, shrubs, and forbs	Hay, grain, orchards
Limitations - Shrink-swell potential is high, three to five feet to seasonal water table, surface cracks when dry, runoff is slow until surface is sealed then it is rapid, drainage improves productivity.							
YOLO #1	California	ML, CL	9-12	B	0-3	Annual and perennial crops	Cultivated crops & orchards
Limitations - Subject to flooding, well drained.							
ORFORD #2	Oregon	MH	9-12	C	3-60	Conifer forest	Woodcrops
Limitations - Severe erosion hazard.							
ACTIVE DUNE-LAND #2	Oregon	SP, SM	--	-	3-40	None	Recreation
Limitations - Unstable and subject to severe soil blowing, droughty, vegetation is difficult to establish.							

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
HEMBRE #3	Oregon	ML	9-12	B	12-60	Conifer forest	Wood products
Limitations -	High erosion hazard in cut banks, highly productive, stable mantles.						
NEHALEM #3	Oregon	ML, CL	12	B	3-12	Grass & legumes	Pasture
Limitations -	Alluvial bottoms, subject to flooding.						
AMITY #4	Oregon	ML, CL	9-12	C	0-3	Annual and perennial grasses	Pasture, grains, & seeds
Limitations -	Somewhat poorly drained terraces, compaction potential is high, water table.						
KINNEY #4	Oregon	ML	5-9	B	3-60	Conifer forest	Wood products
Limitations -	Well drained uplands, unstable on steep slopes, erosion hazard high on steep slopes, subject to frost heaving.						
CINEBAR #5	Washington	ML	12+	B	3-60	Conifer forests, annual and perennial grasses & legumes	Hay, pasture, & wood products
Limitations -	Well drained, terrace, erosion hazard on sutslopes and compacted areas are high.						

Soil Name	Location	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
PUYALLUP #5	Washington	SM	6-9	B	0-3	Row crops, hay, pasture, and orchards	Farming
GROVE #6	Washington	GP, GM	3-6	A	3-60	Conifer forest	Wood products, feed crops, homesites

Limitations - Glacial outwash plains, gravelly soils, soils are droughty and low in fertility.

#1 - USDA, FS & SCS, Soil Survey, Sonoma County, California, pp 188, Illustrated, 1972.

#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Curry Area, Oregon, pp 69, Illustrated, 1970.

#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Tillimook Area, Oregon, pp 75, Illustrated, 1969.

#4 - USDA, SCS. Soil Survey, Marion County, Oregon, pp 132, Illustrated, 1972.

#5 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Clark County, Washington, pp 113, Illustrated, 1972.

#6 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Mason County, Washington, pp 76, Illustrated, 1960.

Appendix K. Some Characteristics, Uses and Limitations of Dominant Soils Occurring in Interior Alaska in the Taiga Coniferous Biome

Soil Name	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
Beales #1	ML	.18-.23	A	0-30	White spruce, birch	Pasture, wood products wildlife
	SP to SM	.04-.06				
Limitations -	Moderate susceptibility to frost action; susceptible to erosion.					
Chena #1	SM	.09-.13	A	0-7	Hardwoods, white spruce	Grazing, wildlife, wood products
	GW	<.02				
Limitations -	Very rapid permeability; very low water holding capacity; moderate frost action.					
Ester #1	ML	.18-.23	D	12-45	Black spruce, alder, willow	Wildlife
	GM	.09-.13				
Limitations -	Poorly drained, high water table; permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action.					
Fairbanks #1	ML	.18-.23	B	3-45	White spruce, birch	Farming, pasture, hay, recreation, wildlife, wood products
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; susceptible to erosion; poor stability; subject to piping; high erodible.					
Gilmore #1	ML	.18-.23	D	7-45	Birch, aspen, white spruce	Wood products, wildlife
Limitations -	Bedrock at shallow depths; highly erodible; high to moderate frost action.					
Jarvis #1	ML	.12-.16	B	0-3	Birch, white spruce	Wood products, wildlife, farming
	GW	.02-.04				
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; low water holding capacity.					

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

Soil Name	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
Minto #1	ML	.18-.23	B	0-20	Birch, aspen, white spruce	Pasture, hay, farming, wildlife, wood products
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; poor stability; subject to piping, highly erodible, discontinuous permafrost below 6 feet.					
Nenana #1	ML SM	.18-.23 .04-.06	B	0-20	Birch, aspen, white spruce	Wildlife, farming, pasture, hay
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; poor stability; subject to piping; highly erodible.					
Richardson #1	ML GW	.18-.23 <.02	B	0-3	Birch, white spruce, black spruce	Wildlife, pasture, wood products
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; poor stability; highly erodible.					
Volkmar #1	ML SM	.18-.23 .02-.04	B	0-7	Birch, white spruce, black spruce	Wildlife, wood products farming
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; poor stability; subject to piping; highly erodible.					
Steese #1	ML	.18-.23	C	7-45	Birch, aspen, white spruce	Farming, wood products wildlife, recreation
Limitations -	High to moderate frost action; bedrock at 2.5 to 3.5 feet; subject to piping; highly erodible.					

<table>
<tr><th>Soil Name</th><th>Unified Classification</th><th>Available Water Capacity (inches)</th><th>Hydrologic Group</th><th>Relief (%)</th><th>Vegetation</th><th>Major Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>Tanana #1</td><td>ML
SM</td><td>.18-.23
.14-.18</td><td>C</td><td>0-3</td><td>Alder, black spruce, willow</td><td>Wildlife, hay, pasture, farming</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - High to moderate frost action; subject to piping; high water table; permafrost at shallow depths.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Batza #2</td><td>ML</td><td>.14-.18</td><td>C</td><td>3-30</td><td>Sedges, shrubs, black spruce, willow, alder</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Wet soil; high frost action; susceptible to heaving.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mc #2</td><td>GM</td><td>.12-.16</td><td>B</td><td>20-45</td><td>White spruce, aspen, dwarf birch, shrubs (low)</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Moderate frost action; steep slopes; moderate deep to bedrock.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Goldstream #2</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>D</td><td>3-7</td><td>Black spruce, dwarf birch, willow</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; frequently floods.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Saulich #2</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>D</td><td>3-30</td><td>Black spruce, dwarf birch</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; bedrock at varying depth below 20".</td></tr>
</table>

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

Soil Name	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
Hughes #3	ML, GM	.18-.23	C	3-45	White spruce, aspen, birch	Wood products, wildlife, farming (gentle slopes)
Limitations - Bedrock within 30"; poor stability.						
Ka #3	SM, GM	.06-.16	D	0-7	Willows, alders, birch, black spruce	Wildlife grazing (limited)
Limitations - Perched water table over permafrost; wet soils in narrow valleys.						
Koyukuk #3	ML	.18-.23	B/C	3-45	White spruce, birch, aspen (mosaic forest types)	Wood products, wildlife, farming (gentle slopes)
Limitations - Unstable when wet; susceptible to frost heaving and piping; erodible.						
McCloud #3	ML, GM	.18-.23	C	3-45	White spruce, birch, aspen	Wood products, wildlife, farming (gentle slopes)
Limitations - Shallow to bedrock (20"-30"); high seepage potential.						
Pincher #3	ML, SM	.10-.16	C	0-3	Hardwoods, white spruce	Wildlife, farming
Limitations - Seasonally high water table.						

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Soil Name</th><th>Unified Classification</th><th>Available Water Capacity (inches)</th><th>Hydrologic Group</th><th>Relief (%)</th><th>Vegetation</th><th>Major Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>Tazlina #3</td><td>ML, SP</td><td>.05-.20</td><td>A</td><td>0-3</td><td>White spruce, hardwoods</td><td>Wood products, wildlife, farming</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Subject to flooding; high water table; rapid permeability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Aleknagik #4</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>C</td><td>7-45</td><td>White spruce, birch, aspen, willows</td><td>Wood products, wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td>Susitna #4</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>C</td><td>0-3</td><td>Hardwoods, white spruce</td><td>Wildlife, wood products</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>SM</td><td>.10-.14</td><td>B</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>SP</td><td>.02-.04</td><td>A</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Stonyland #4</td><td>GM</td><td>- -</td><td>-</td><td>15-30</td><td>Black spruce, alder, birch</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bradway #5</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>C</td><td>0-3</td><td>Willows, sedges, black spruce</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>SM</td><td>.12-.16</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high water table; alluvial plains, very high frost action.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Kandik #5</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>B</td><td>0-45</td><td>White spruce, hardwoods</td><td>Wildlife, wood products</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Poor stability; highly erodible; high frost action.</td></tr>
</table>

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

Soil Name	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
Ke #5	ML	.18-.23	C	7-12	White spruce, birch	Wildlife
Limitations - Permafrost at moderate depths (24"); high frost action; poor stability; highly erodible.						
Rampart #5	ML	.18-.23	B	3-45	White spruce, hardwoods	Wildlife
Limitations - High frost action; poor stability; highly erodible.						
Salchaket #5	ML	.18-.23	B	0-3	White spruce, hardwoods	Wildlife, wood products
Limitations - Moderate to high frost action; occasional flooding; fair to poor stability.						
Yukon #5	ML	.18-.23	D	0-7	White spruce, hardwoods	Wildlife, wood products
Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; occasional flooding.						
Kh #6	ML, GP	.18-.23	C/D	0-3	Willows, birch (dwarf), shrubs	Wildlife
Limitations - High frost action; poor stability; erodible.						
Kuskokwim #6	ML	.18-.23	D	0-30	Black spruce, willows	Wildlife
Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; poor stability.						
McCally #6	ML, GM	.05-.23	C/D	12-45	Shrubs, sedges, grasses	Wildlife
Limitations - Shallow stony soil; bedrock at 15"+.						

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Soil Name</th><th>Unified Classification</th><th>Available Water Capacity (inches)</th><th>Hydrologic Group</th><th>Relief (%)</th><th>Vegetation</th><th>Major Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>Ro #6</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>D</td><td>0-3</td><td>Grasses, sedges, willows</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Usually wet; high frost action; permafrost; fair to poor stability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Takotna #6</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>C</td><td>0-3</td><td>Hardwoods, black spruce</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Periodically floods; high to medium frost action; fair to poor stability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cheshnina #7</td><td>GM</td><td>.10-.18</td><td>D</td><td>7-45</td><td>Willows, black spruce</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Shallow to bedrock; stony soil; difficult to vegetate.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ca #7</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>D</td><td>3-12</td><td>Aspen, white spruce birch</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high water table; frequent flooding.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Easley #7</td><td>ML</td><td>.18-.23</td><td>D</td><td>0-7</td><td>Shrubs, sedges, black spruce</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost; high frost action; high water table; poor stability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fp #7</td><td>ML</td><td>.16-.21</td><td>D</td><td>3-20</td><td>Black spruce, willows</td><td>Wildlife</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Permafrost in places; high frost action; poor stability; erodible.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fr #7</td><td>ML</td><td>.16-.23</td><td>D</td><td>7-45</td><td>White spruce, hardwoods</td><td>Wildlife, wood products</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Limitations - Shallow to bedrock (10"-20"); high frost action.</td></tr>
</table>

Appendix K. (Interior Alaska Continued)

Soil Name	Unified Classification	Available Water Capacity (inches)	Hydrologic Group	Relief (%)	Vegetation	Major Use
Kuslina #7	SM	.12-.16	D	0-3	White spruce, black spruce, birch, aspen	Wildlife
Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; perched water table.						
Ladue #7	ML	.11-.23	C	3-45	White spruce, aspen, birch	Wood products, wildlife
Limitations - Erodible silty substratum; high frost action.						
Nr #7	ML	.18-.23	D	3-45	White spruce, aspen, birch	Wood products, wildlife
Limitations - Shallow to bedrock (10" to 20" shattered); highly erodible.						
Te #7	ML	.18-.23	C	7-45	White spruce, aspen, birch	Wildlife, wood products
Limitations - Moderate depth to bedrock; sandy substratum; highly erodible; difficult to vegetate.						
Ya #7	ML	.18-.23	D	3-20	White and black spruce, aspen, birch	Wildlife
Limitations - Permafrost at shallow depths; high frost action; silty substratum; highly erodible.						

#1 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Salcha-Big Delta Area, Alaska 1973.
#2 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Eagle Summit Area, Alaska (Unpublished).
#3 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Manley Hot Springs Area, Alaska (Unpublished).
#4 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Red Devil Area, Alaska (Unpublished).
#5 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Circle Area, Alaska (Unpublished).
#6 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Kaltag Area, Alaska (Unpublished).
#7 - USDA, SCS, Soil Survey, Northway Junction Area, Alaska (Unpublished).

ANALYSIS OF BENEFICIAL AND ADVERSE EFFECTS OF FIRE PROGRAM MANAGEMENT

The following display provides additional data for analyzing and comparing the two fire program alternatives with the proposed action as discussed in Chapter VIII. Three supporting tables for fire protection costs, resource damages, and area burned for the five-year period 1969 to 1973 are included to show the data base for deriving the five-year averages and reflect substantial year-to-year variation in acres burned and resource losses. Most of these data are drawn from Public Land Statistics as shown in respective footnotes on the display.

Comparison of the Fire Control alternative (present program with partial implementation of NYFP) with the proposed action--Fire Management--shows that both alternatives would have average annual fire program costs of $29.5 million. The proposed action would have additional costs reflecting the difference between the present level of NYFP funding and full implementation of NYFP plus prescribed burning costs.

Full implementation of the proposed action would result in estimated reduction in acres burned from 1.4 million acres of NRL annually to 325 thousand acres, less than one-fourth of the current average annual burn. Reductions of a similar magnitude are estimated for resource damages. Application of an average per acre resource value to the estimated 325 thousand acres annual burn results in average annual losses of $6.7 million.

It is more difficult to quantify the adverse effects for the No Suppression alternative. It would be reasonable to project both acres burned and resource damages sustained substantially higher than our present fire program. At the same time, elimination of suppression costs would reduce fire program costs of this alternative to very minimal levels.

DISPLAY OF BENEFICIAL AND ADVERSE EFFECTS OF FIRE PROGRAM ALTERNATIVES

Alternatives	Effects							
	Beneficial				Adverse			
	Protection							
	NRL Acres[a] (Million)	Rural People[b] (Million)	Private Property[c] ($ Billion)	Fire Program Costs[d] ($ Million)	Fire Program Cost[e] ($ Million)	Acres Burned[f] (Thousand) NRL	Acres Burned[f] (Thousand) Non-Fed	Resource Damage[g] ($ Million) NRL
A. Fire Control (Present Program with Partial implementation of NYFP)	450	6	35.1		29.5	1,427	148	32.4
B. No Suppression (Let All Fires Burn)	None			29.5		High		High
C. Fire Management (Proposed Action -- Full implementation of NYFP with prescribed burning)	450	6	35.1		29.5 + (d)	325[h]		6.7[i]

---

a. U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management, Public Land Statistics, 1973, p. 127.
b. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, Statistical Abstract of the United States, 1974.
c. Values of Land and Buildings in Farms, 1969. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, County and City Data Book, 1972.
d. Cost (full implementation of NYFP - present level of NYFP funding) plus prescribed burning costs.
e. Five-year average presuppresion, contract and suppression costs, calendar years 1969-1973, Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974
f. Five-year average, calendar years 1969-1973, USDI, BLM, Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974.
g. Five-year average, calendar years 1969-1973, USDI, BLM, Public Land Statistics, 1973.
h. From Normal Year Fire Plan.
i. Based on five-year per acre average, calendar years 1969-1973 from Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974.

Area Burned, 1969-1973

Acres Burned (Thousands)

Calendar Year	Public Lands	Other Lands	Total
1969	3,998	274	4,272
1970	203	132	335
1971	1,425	66	1,491
1972	1,007	44	1,051
1973	503	222	725

Source: Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974.

Fire Protection Costs; 1969-1973

Calendar Year	Presuppression and Contract	Suppression	Total
1969	4,018,000	23,547,481	27,565,481
1970	5,960,483	24,225,331	30,185,814
1971	5,986,560	21,009,319	26,995,879
1972	7,491,000	29,431,000	36,922,000
1973	6,957,600	19,090,726	26,048,326

Source: Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974

Resources Damages, 1969-1973

Hundreds of Dollars

Calendar Year	Federal	Other	Total
1969	610,379	38,523	648,902
1970	203,488	131,863	335,351
1971	249,799	16,316	266,115
1972	175,541	12,458	187,999
1973	115,134	68,208	183,342

Source: Public Land Statistics, 1970-1974.

BLM Library
Denver Federal Center
Bldg. 50, OC-521
P.O. Box 25047
Denver, CO 80225